

MEDIEVAL LATIN SERIES • VOLUME 6

CHARLEMAGNE AND HIS HEIRS

NOTKER · NITHARD · EINHARD

Vita Karoli Magni
Historiarum Libri IIII
De Gestis Karoli Imperatoris

Charlemagne and His Heirs

*Einhard's Life of Charlemagne, Nithard's Histories,
and Notker's Deeds of Charlemagne*

with a word-for-word interlinear English translation
preserving the original word order

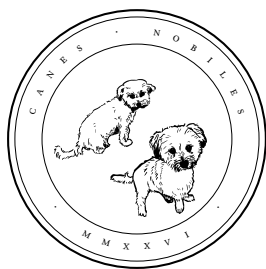


CANES NOBILES · MMXXVI

Copyright © 2026 Christopher Hench
All rights reserved

Published by Canes Nobiles

The source text is in the public domain



Volume 6 of the Canes Nobiles Medieval Latin interlinear texts

The Medieval Latin text follows Oswald Holder-Egger's edition
of Einhard (Hanover, 1911), Ernst Müller's of Nithard (Hanover, 1907),
and Philipp Jaffé's of Notker, the Monk of St Gall (Berlin, 1867)

Set from page scans of the editions

Translated and composed with AI, edited by Christopher Hench
Artwork by Esther Steves

CONTENTS

EINHARD

Walahfrid's Prologue	13
Einhard's Preface	17
I · The Last Merovingians	21
II · Charles Martel, Pippin, and Carloman	23
III · Charles Becomes King	25
IV · The Plan of the Work	27
V · The Aquitanian War	28
VI · The Lombard War	29
VII · The Saxon War	32
VIII · The Two Battles	35
IX · Roncesvalles	37
X · The Bretons and Benevento	39
XI · Tassilo of Bavaria	41
XII · The Wilzi	42
XIII · The Avar War	44
XIV · The Danes	46
XV · The Extent of the Kingdom	48
XVI · Friendships with Kings	50

EINHARD

(continued)

XVII · His Buildings	53
XVIII · His Family	55
XIX · His Children	58
XX · The Conspiracies	61
XXI · Foreigners	62
XXII · His Appearance	63
XXIII · His Dress	65
XXIV · Food, Sleep, and Business	67
XXV · His Learning	69
XXVI · His Religion	70
XXVII · Alms and Rome	72
XXVIII · Emperor	73
XXIX · Laws, Songs, and Names	75
XXX · Louis Crowned, and the Death of Charles	77
XXXI · His Burial	79
XXXII · Portents	80
XXXIII · The Will	83

NITHARD

BOOK I

Preface	93
I · Charles the Great	94
II · Louis the Pious	96
III · Lothar's First Rebellion	98
IV · Lothar's Second Rebellion	102

NITHARD

(continued)

BOOK I

(continued)

V · Chalon and the Peace with Lothar	106
VI · Charles's Kingdom	109
VII · The Partition at Worms	113
VIII · The Death of Louis the Pious	116

BOOK II

Preface	119
I · Lothar Claims the Empire	120
II · Charles's Embassy	122
III · Defections	125
IV · The Truce at Orléans	127
V · Bernard, the Bretons, and the Council	130
VI · The Crossing of the Seine	134
VII · Louis Driven into Bavaria	137
VIII · The Crown Arrives at Easter	139
IX · Louis and Charles Join Forces	143
X · The Battle of Fontenoy	147

BOOK III

Preface	155
I · After Fontenoy	156
II · The Victory Squandered	159
III · The Seine Rises	163
IV · Laon	168
V · The Oaths of Strasbourg	172

NITHARD

(continued)

BOOK III

(continued)

VI · The Two Kings	177
VII · Lothar Flees to the Rhône	179

BOOK IV

Preface	183
I · The Bishops Give the Kingdom	184
II · The Stellinga	187
III · Lothar Sues for Peace	190
IV · Mâcon and Metz	195
V · Koblenz and Nithard's Family	199
VI · Charles's Marriage	203
VII · The Elements Against Us	206

NOTKER

BOOK I

I · The Two Irish Scholars	211
II · Albinus	214
III · The Poor Boys and the Noble	215
IV · The Boy and the Bishopric	217
V · The New Cantor	220
VI · The Agile Bishop	224
VII · The Readings	225
VIII · The Wandering Cleric	227

NOTKER

(continued)

BOOK I

(continued)

IX · Albinus's Disciples	228
X · The Roman Chant	230
XI · The Lenten Dinner	235
XII · The Blessing	237
XIII · Counties and Abbeys	237
XIV · The Swept Bishopric	239
XV · The Cheese	240
XVI · The Spiced Mouse	243
XVII · The Golden Scepter	246
XVIII · The Bishop Who Preached	248
XIX · The Alleluia	253
XX · The Fox	254
XXI · The Bishop and the Devil	257
XXII · The Fallen Bishop	261
XXIII · The Larva	264
XXIV · The Devil as a Mule	266
XXV · The Priest and the Cold Spring	268
XXVI · Pope Leo and the Imperial Title	270
XXVII · The Way to Greece	276
XXVIII · The Abbot and the Basilica	277
XXIX · The Bellfounder	279
XXX · Public Works	281
XXXI · Liutfrid's Treasure	283
XXXII · The Spider	287

NOTKER

(continued)

BOOK I

(continued)

XXXIII · The Vanished Cleric	289
XXXIV · Frankish Dress	291

BOOK II

I · The Ring of the Huns	295
II · The Two Soldiers	298
III · The Drunken Guards	299
IV · The Two Bastards	300
V · The Emperor at Constantinople	301
VI · The Embassies to Constantinople	303
VII · Greek Antiphons and the Organ	310
VIII · The Persian Envoys	311
IX · Harun and the Dogs	318
X · The Prophecy of Louis	322
XI · Louis the German	326
XII · Measured by the Sword	329
XIII · Godfred	338
XIV · Charles Weeps at Narbonne	340
XV · Pippin the Short	343
XVI · Digressions	346
XVII · The Iron Charles	347
XVIII · The Northmen's Swords	358
XIX · The Northmen's Baptisms	360
XX · Louis the Pious and Anselm	363
XXI · Louis's Alms	364

EINHARD

Vita Karoli Magni

The Life of Charlemagne

WALAHFRID'S PROLOGUE

Walahfrid Strabo introduces the Life. Einhard, born in the Maingau and schooled at Fulda, Saint Boniface's monastery, is sent by Abbot Baugulf to the palace of Charles, who seeks out wise men above all kings. Small in stature, he rises so high in the king's confidence that few know more of his secrets, and he keeps his place through the troubles of Louis's reign. Walahfrid has added the chapter titles.

Gloriosissimi imperatoris Karoli vitam et gesta, quae
of-the-most-glorious of-the-emperor of-Charles the-life and the-deeds which
subiecta sunt, Einhartus, vir inter omnes huius temporis
set-below are Einhard a-man among all of-this of-time
palatinos non solum pro scientia, verum et pro universa
palace-officials not only for knowledge but also for the-whole
morum honestate laudis egregiae, descripsisse cognoscitur
of-character uprightness of-praise distinguished to-have-described is-known
et purissimae veritatis, utpote qui his paene omnibus
and of-the-purest of-truth inasmuch-as who these almost all
interfuerit, testimonio roborasse. Natus enim in Orientali
was-present-at by-testimony to-have-confirmed born for in Eastern
Francia, in pago qui dicitur Moingeuui, in Fuldensi
Francia in the-district which is-called Maingau in the-Fulda
coenobio sub pedagogio sancti Bonifacii martiris prima
monastery under the-tutelage of-saint Boniface martyr the-first
puerilis nutriturae rudimenta suscepit. Indeque potius
of-boyish nurture rudiments he-received and-from-there rather
propter singularitatem capacitatis et intelligentiae, quae
on-account-of the-singularity of-capacity and of-intelligence which
iam tum in illo magnum, quod postea claruit, specimen
already then in him a-great which afterward shone-forth sign
sapientiae promittebat, quam ob nobilitatis, quod in eo munus
of-wisdom promised than for of-nobility which in him gift

erat insigne, a Baugolfo abbate monasterii supradicti in
was distinguished by Baugulf the-abbot of-the-monastery above-mentioned into
 palatium Karoli translatus est; quippe qui omnium regum
the-palace of-Charles transferred was since who of-all kings
 avidissimus erat sapientes diligenter inquirere et, ut cum
the-most-eager was the-wise diligently to-seek-out and that with
 omni delectatione philosopharentur, excolere. Ideo regni
all delight they-might-philosophize to-cultivate therefore of-the-kingdom
 a Deo sibi commissi nebulosam et, ut ita dicam, paene
by God to-himself entrusted the-cloudy and as so I-may-say almost
 caecam latitudinem totius scientiae nova irradiatione et
blind breadth of-all knowledge by-a-new illumination and
 huic barbariei ante partim incognita luminosam reddidit
to-this barbarism before partly unknown luminous he-rendered
 Deo illustrante atque videntem. Nunc vero relabentibus in
God illuminating and seeing now but sliding-back into
 contraria studiis lumen sapientiae, quod minus diligitur,
the-contrary the-studies the-light of-wisdom which less is-loved
 rarescit in plurimis. Predictus itaque homuncio — nam statura
grows-rare in very-many the-aforesaid and-so little-man for in-stature
 despicibilis videbatur — in aula Karoli, amatoris sapientiae,
contemptible he-seemed in the-court of-Charles lover of-wisdom
 tantum gloriae incrementi merito prudentiae et probitatis est
so-much of-glory of-increase by-merit of-prudence and of-probity has
 assecutus, ut inter omnes maiestatis regiae ministros paene
attained that among all of-majesty royal ministers almost
 nullus haberetur, cui rex id temporis potentissimus et
none was-held to-whom the-king at-that time most-powerful and
 sapientissimus plura familiaritatis suae secreta committeret.
most-wise more of-intimacy his-own secrets would-entrust
 Et re vera non immerito, cum non modo ipsius Karoli
and in-reality true not undeservedly since not only of-the-very of-Charles

temporibus, sed et — quod maioris est miraculi — sub
in-the-times but also what of-greater is of-a-marvel under
 Ludowico imperatore, cum diversis et multis perturbationibus
Louis the-emperor when by-diverse and many disturbances
 Francorum res publica fluctuaret et in multis decideret,
of-the-Franks the-state public wavered and in many-things gave-way
 mira quadam et divinitus provisa libratione se ipsum
by-wonderful a-certain and divinely provided balance himself self
 Deo protegente custodierit, ut sublimitatis nomen, quod
God protecting be-guarded that of-eminence the-name which
 multis invidiam comparavit et casum, ipsum nec immature
for-many envy procured and the-fall him neither untimely
 deseruerit nec periculis irremediabilibus manciparit. Haec
it-abandoned nor to-dangers irremediable it-enslaved these-things
 dicimus, ut in dictis eius minus quisque habeat dubitationis,
we-say that in the-sayings of-him less each-one may-have of-doubt
 dum non ignoret eum et dilectioni provectoris sui
while not he-is-unaware him both to-the-love of-promoter his-own
 laudem precipuam et curiositati lectoris veritatem debere
praise special and to-the-curiosity of-the-reader truth to-owe
 perspicuam. Huic opusculo ego Strabus titulos et incisiones,
clear to-this little-work I Strabo titles and divisions
 prout visum est congruum, inserui, ut ad singula
as seemed it-has fitting inserted that to the-several-things
 facilius quaerenti quod placuerit elucescat accessus.
easier to-one-seeking what may-please may-shine-forth access

EINHARD'S PREFACE

Einhard explains why he writes. No one can tell Charles's life more truly than he, who saw it, and he owes the king his upbringing and lifelong friendship. He knows he is a barbarian little practiced in Latin, and that Cicero condemned writing without skill, but he would rather risk men's judgment than let so great a man's memory pass.

Vitam et conversationem et ex parte non modica res
the-life and the-manner-of-life and in part not small the-things
gestas domini et nutritoris mei Karoli, excellentissimi et
done of-lord and of-foster-father my of-Charles most-excellent and
merito famosissimi regis, postquam scribere animus tulit,
deservedly most-famous king after to-write the-mind brought
quanta potui brevitate complexus sum, operam inpendens,
with-as-much I-could brevity embraced I-have effort spending
ut de his quae ad meam notitiam pervenire potuerunt
that of these which to my notice to-come have-been-able
nihil omitterem neque prolixitate narrandi nova quaeque
nothing I-might-omit nor by-prolixity of-narrating new every-thing
fastidientium animos offenderem; si tamen hoc ullo modo
of-those-who-disdain the-minds I-might-offend if yet this by-any way
vitari potest, ut nova scriptione non offendantur qui
to-be-avoided can that by-a-new writing not are-offended who
vetera et a viris doctissimis atque disertissimis confecta
old-things even by men most-learned and most-eloquent composed
monumenta fastidiunt. Et quamquam plures esse non
monuments disdain and although many to-be not
ambigam, qui otio ac litteris dediti statum aevi
I-doubt who to-leisure and to-letters devoted the-state of-the-age
praesentis non arbitrentur ita neglegendum, ut omnia penitus
present not think so to-be-neglected that all utterly

quae nunc fiunt velut nulla memoria digna silentio atque
which now happen as-if of-no memory worthy to-silence and
 oblivioni tradantur, potiusque velint amore diuturnitatis
to-oblivion be-handed-over and-rather would-wish by-love of-lastingness
 inlecti aliorum praeclara facta qualibuscumque scriptis inserere
enticed of-others the-splendid deeds into-whatever writings to-insert
 quam sui nominis famam posteritatis memoriae nihil
than of-their-own of-name the-fame of-posterity from-the-memory nothing
 scribendo subtrahere, tamen ab huiusmodi scriptione non
by-writing to-withdraw yet from of-this-kind writing not
 existimavi temperandum, quando mihi conscius eram nullum
I-thought to-be-refrained since to-me conscious I-was no-one
 ea veracius quam me scribere posse, quibus ipse
these-things more-truly than me to-write to-be-able in-which myself
 interfui, quaeque praesens oculata, ut dicunt, fide cognovi
I-took-part and-which present eye as they-say by-witness I-learned
 et, utrum ab alio scriberentur necne, liquido scire
and whether by another they-were-being-written or-not clearly to-know
 non potui. Satiisque iudicavi eadem cum aliis velut
not I-could and-better I-judged the-same-things with others as-if
 communiter litteris mandata memoriae posterorum tradere
in-common to-letters entrusted to-the-memory of-posterity to-hand-down
 quam regis excellentissimi et omnium sua aetate maximi
than of-the-king most-excellent and of-all in-his age the-greatest
 clarissimam vitam et egregios atque moderni temporis
the-most-famous life and the-outstanding and of-modern time
 hominibus vix imitabiles actus pati oblivionis tenebris
by-men scarcely imitable acts to-allow of-oblivion by-the-darkness
 aboleri. Suberat et alia non inrationabilis, ut opinor,
to-be-blotted-out there-was-beneath also another not irrational as I-think
 causa, quae vel sola sufficere posset, ut me ad haec
cause which even alone to-suffice could that me to these-things

scribenda compelleret, nutrimentum videlicet in me inpensum
to-be-written might-compel the-nurture namely on me spent
 et perpetua, postquam in aula eius conversari coepi, cum
and the-lasting after in the-court of-him to-live I-began with
 ipso ac liberis eius amicitia; qua me ita sibi devinxit
himself and the-children of-him friendship by-which me so to-himself be-bound
 debitoremque tam vivo quam mortuo constituit, ut merito
and-a-debtor as-much living as dead made that deservedly
 ingratus videri et iudicari possem, si tot beneficiorum in
ungrateful to-seem and to-be-judged I-could if so-many of-benefits on
 me conlatorum inmemor clarissima et inlustrissima hominis
me conferred unmindful the-most-famous and most-illustrious of-a-man
 optime de me meriti gesta silentio praeterirem patererque
best of me having-deserved deeds in-silence I-should-pass-over and-should-allow
 vitam eius, quasi qui numquam vixerit, sine litteris ac debita
the-life of-him as-if who never lived without letters and due
 laude manere; cui scribendae atque explicandae non meum
praise to-remain to-which to-be-written and to-be-unfolded not my
 ingeniolum, quod exile et parvum, immo poene nullum est,
little-talent which slight and small nay almost nothing is
 sed Tullianam par erat desudare facundiam. En tibi librum
but Tullian fitting it-was to-sweat-over eloquence behold to-you a-book
 praeclarissimi et maximi viri memoriam continentem; in quo
of-a-most-illustrious and greatest man the-memory containing in which
 praeter illius facta non est quod admireris, nisi forte, quod
besides of-his deeds not is what you-may-wonder-at unless perhaps that
 homo barbarus et in Romana locutione perparum exercitatus
a-man barbarian and in Roman speech very-little practiced
 aliquid me decenter aut commode Latine scribere posse
anything me becomingly or suitably in-Latin to-write to-be-able
 putaverim atque in tantam inpudentiam proruperim,
I-should-have-thought and into such impudence should-have-burst-forth

ut illud Ciceronis putarem contemnendum, quod in primo
that that-saying of-Cicero I-should-think to-be-despised which in the-first
Tusculanarum libro, cum de Latinis scriptoribus loqueretur,
of-the-Tusculans book when of Latin writers he-was-speaking
ita dixisse legitur: Mandare quemquam, inquit, litteris
so to-have-said is-read to-entrust anyone he-says to-letters
cogitationes suas, qui eas nec disponere nec inlustrare
thoughts his-own who them neither to-arrange nor to-illuminate
possit nec delectatione aliqua adlicere lectorem, hominis est
can nor by-delight any to-allure the-reader of-a-man it-is
intemperanter abutentis et otio et litteris. Poterat quidem
immoderately abusing both leisure and letters could indeed
haec oratoris egregii sententia me a scribendo deterrere,
this of-the-orator outstanding opinion me from writing to-deter
nisi animo praemeditatum haberem hominum iudicia potius
unless in-mind premeditated I-bad of-men the-judgments rather
experiri et haec scribendo ingenioli mei periculum facere
to-test and this by-writing of-little-talent my the-risk to-make
quam tanti viri memoriam mihi parcendo praeterire.
than of-so-great a-man the-memory myself by-sparing to-pass-over

The Merovingian line ends with Childeric, deposed, shorn, and sent to a monastery at Pope Stephen's order, but it has long been powerless. The wealth and power of the kingdom lie with the mayors of the palace; the king has only his title, his long hair and beard, a throne from which he receives envoys and gives the answers he is taught, a small estate, and an ox cart driven by a herdsman to take him to the yearly assembly.

Gens Meroingorum, de qua Franci reges sibi creare
the-family of-the-Merovingians from which the-Franks kings for-themselves to-create
 soliti erant, usque in Hildricum regem, qui iussu
accustomed had-been up-to into Childeric the-king who by-the-order
 Stephani Romani pontificis depositus ac detonsus atque in
of-Stephen the-Roman pontiff deposed and shorn and into
 monasterium trusus est, durasse putatur. Quae licet in illo
a-monastery thrust was to-have-lasting is-thought which although in him
 finita possit videri, tamen iam dudum nullius vigoris erat,
ended may to-seem yet already long-since of-no vigor was
 nec quicquam in se clarum praeter inane regis vocabulum
nor anything in itself illustrious except the-empty of-king title
 praeferebat. Nam et opes et potentia regni penes
displayed for both the-wealth and the-power of-the-kingdom in-the-hands-of
 palatii praefectos, qui maiores domus dicebantur, et ad
of-the-palace the-prefects who mayors of-the-house were-called and to
 quos summa imperii pertinebat, tenebantur. Neque regi
whom the-supremacy of-rule belonged were-held nor to-the-king
 aliud relinquebatur, quam ut regio tantum nomine
anything-else was-left than that with-the-royal only name
 contentus crine profuso, barba summissa, solio resideret
content with-hair spread-out with-beard let-down on-the-throne he-should-sit
 ac speciem dominantis effingeret, legatos undecumque
and the-appearance of-one-ruling should-feign envoys from-whenever

venientes audiret eisque abeuntibus responsa, quae erat
coming should-hear and-to-them departing answers which he-had-been
 edoctus vel etiam iussus, ex sua velut potestate redderet;
taught or even ordered from his-own as-if power should-give
 cum praeter inutile regis nomen et precarium vitae
since besides the-useless of-king name and a-precarious of-life
 stipendium, quod ei praefectus aulae prout videbatur
stipend which to-him the-prefect of-the-court as it-seemed-good
 exhibebat, nihil aliud proprii possideret quam unam et eam
provided nothing else of-his-own he-possessed than one and that
 praeparvi redditus villam, in qua domum et ex qua famulos
of-very-small income estate on which a-house and from which servants
 sibi necessaria ministrantes atque obsequium exhibentes
to-himself necessities ministering and service rendering
 paucae numerositatis habebat. Quocumque eundum erat,
of-few number he-had wherever to-be-gone was
 carpento ibat, quod bubus iunctis et bubulco rustico more
in-a-carriage he-went which by-oxen yoked and a-herdsman in-rustic fashion
 agente trahebatur. Sic ad palatium, sic ad publicum populi
driving was-drawn so to the-palace so to the-public of-people
 sui conventum, qui annuatim ob regni utilitatem
his-own assembly which yearly for of-the-kingdom the-benefit
 celebrabatur, ire, sic domum redire solebat. At regni
was-celebrated to-go so home to-return he-was-accustomed but of-the-kingdom
 administrationem et omnia quae vel domi vel foris agenda
the-administration and all-things which either at-home or abroad to-be-done
 ac disponenda erant praefectus aulae procurabat.
and to-be-arranged were the-prefect of-the-court managed

Pippin holds the mayoralty as if by inheritance from his father Charles, who crushed the tyrants of Francia and twice defeated the Saracens, at Poitiers and on the Berre near Narbonne. Pippin and his brother Carloman share the office until Carloman, drawn to the contemplative life, goes to Rome, becomes a monk, and builds a monastery on Mount Soracte; pestered there by visiting Frankish nobles, he withdraws to Saint Benedict's monastery at Monte Cassino, where he ends his life.

Quo officio tum, cum Hildricus deponetur, Pippinus
which office then when Childeric was-being-deposed Pippin
 pater Karoli regis iam velut hereditario fungebatur. Nam
the-father of-Charles the-king already as-if hereditary was-discharging for
 pater eius Karolus, qui tyrannos per totam Franciam
the-father of-him Charles who the-tyrants through all Francia
 dominatum sibi vindicantes oppressit et Sarracenos
dominion for-themselves claiming crushed and the-Saracens
 Galliam occupare temptantes duobus magnis proeliis, uno in
Gaul to-occupy attempting in-two great battles one in
 Aquitania apud Pictavium civitatem, altero iuxta Narbonam
Aquitaine near Poitiers the-city the-other near Narbonne
 apud Birram fluvium, ita devicit, ut in Hispaniam eos
by the-Berre river so conquered that into Spain them
 redire compelleret, eundem magistratum a patre Pippino
to-return he-compelled the-same magistracy by father Pippin
 sibi dimissum egregie administravit. Qui honor non
to-himself handed-down outstandingly administered which honor not
 aliis a populo dari consueverat quam his qui et
to-others by the-people to-be-given had-been-customary than to-those who both
 claritate generis et opum amplitudine ceteris eminebant.
by-distinction of-family and of-wealth by-the-amplitude the-rest surpassed

Hunc cum Pippinus pater Karoli regis ab avo
this when Pippin the-father of-Charles the-king from grandfather
 et patre sibi et fratri Karlomanno relictum, summa
and father to-himself and to-brother Carloman left highest
 cum eo concordia divisum, aliquot annis velut sub rege
with him concord divided for-some years as-if under the-king
 memorato tenuisset, frater eius Karlomannus — incertum
mentioned had-held the-brother of-him Carloman uncertain
 quibus de causis, tamen videtur, quod amore conversationis
what for reasons yet it-seems that by-love of-the-manner-of-life
 contemplativae succensus—, operosa temporalis regni
contemplative inflamed the-laborious of-temporal of-the-kingdom
 administratione relicta, Romam se in otium contulit,
administration left-behind to-Rome himself into leisure betook
 ibique habitu permutato monachus factus in monte Soracte
and-there with-habit changed a-monk made on the-mount Soracte
 apud ecclesiam beati Silvestri constructo monasterio cum
near the-church of-blessed Sylvester built a-monastery with
 fratribus secum ad hoc venientibus per aliquot annos
the-brothers with-himself to this coming for some years
 optata quiete perfruitur. Sed cum ex Francia multi
the-wished-for quiet enjoys but when from Francia many
 nobilium ob vota solvenda Romam sollemniter commearent
of-the-nobles for vows to-be-fulfilled to-Rome solemnly traveled
 et eum velut dominum quondam suum praeterire nollent,
and him as-if lord formerly their-own to-pass-by were-unwilling
 otium, quo maxime delectabatur, crebra salutatione
the-leisure in-which chiefly he-was-delighted by-frequent greeting
 interrumpentes locum mutare compellunt. Nam huiuscemodi
interrupting the-place to-change they-compel for of-this-kind
 frequentiam cum suo proposito officere vidisset, relicto
the-crowding when his-own purpose to-binder he-had-seen left-behind

monte in Samnium provinciam ad monasterium sancti
the-mount into Samnium the-province to the-monastery of-saint
 Benedicti situm in castro Casino secessit et ibi quod
Benedict situated in the-fort Casino he-withdrew and there what
 reliquum erat temporalis vitae religiose conversando conplevit.
remaining was of-temporal life religiously living completed

III · CHARLES BECOMES KING

Pippin, made king by the pope's authority, rules alone for fifteen years and more, and dies of dropsy at Paris after nine years of war in Aquitaine against Duke Waifar. The Franks make his sons Charles and Carloman joint kings and divide the kingdom between them. The peace between the brothers holds with difficulty. When Carloman dies after two years, his widow flees with her sons to the Lombard king Desiderius, and the Franks make Charles king of all.

Pippinus autem per auctoritatem Romani pontificis ex
Pippin moreover through the-authority of-the-Roman pontiff from
 praefecto palatii rex constitutus, cum per annos XV aut
prefect of-the-palace king established when through years fifteen or
 eo amplius Francis solus imperaret, finito Aquitanico
than-that more over-the-Franks alone he-ruled finished the-Aquitanian
 bello, quod contra Waifarum ducem Aquitaniae ab eo
war which against Waifar the-duke of-Aquitaine by him
 susceptum per continuos novem annos gerebatur, apud
undertaken through continuous nine years was-waged at
 Parisios morbo aquae intercutis diem obiit, superstitibus
Paris by-the-disease of-water under-the-skin his-day met surviving
 liberis Karlo et Karlomanno, ad quos successio regni
the-children Charles and Carloman to whom the-succession of-the-kingdom
 divino nutu pervenerat. Franci siquidem facto sollemniter
by-divine will had-come the-Franks indeed held solemnly

generali conventu ambos sibi reges constituunt, ea
a-general assembly both for-themselves kings establish that
 conditione praemissa, ut totum regni corpus ex aequo
condition laid-down-first that the-whole of-the-kingdom body on equal-terms
 partirentur, et Karolus eam partem, quam pater eorum
they-should-divide and Charles that part which the-father of-them
 Pippinus tenuerat, Karlomannus vero eam, cui patruus
Pippin had-held Carloman but that over-which the-uncle
 eorum Karlomannus praeerat, regendi gratia susceperet.
of-them Carloman ruled of-ruling for-the-sake should-take-up
 Susceptae sunt utrimque conditiones, et pars regni divisi
accepted were on-both-sides the-conditions and the-part of-the-kingdom divided
 iuxta modum sibi propositum ab utroque recepta est.
according-to the-manner to-himself proposed by each received was
 Mansitque ista, quamvis cum summa difficultate, concordia,
and-remained that although with the-greatest difficulty concord
 multis ex parte Karlomanni societatem separare molientibus,
many from the-side of-Carloman the-partnership to-sever striving
 adeo ut quidam eos etiam bello committere sint meditati.
so that some them even in-war to-engage have planned
 Sed in hoc plus suspecti quam periculi fuisse ipse rerum
but in this more of-suspicion than of-danger to-have-been itself of-things
 exitus adprobavit, cum defuncto Karlomanno uxor eius
the-outcome proved when having-died Carloman the-wife of-him
 et filii cum quibusdam, qui ex optimatum eius numero
and the-sons with certain-men who from of-the-nobles of-him the-number
 primores erant, Italiam fuga petiit et nullis existentibus
the-chief-men were Italy in-flight sought and no existing
 causis, spreto mariti fratre, sub Desiderii regis
reasons scorned of-the-husband the-brother under of-Desiderius king
 Langobardorum patrocinium se cum liberis suis contulit.
of-the-Lombards protection herself with children her-own betook

Et Karlomannus quidem post administratum communiter
and Carloman indeed after administered in-common
 biennio regnum morbo decessit; Karolus autem fratre
for-two-years the-kingdom by-disease died Charles moreover the-brother
 defuncto consensu omnium Francorum rex constituitur.
having-died by-the-consent of-all of-the-Franks king is-established

IV · THE PLAN OF THE WORK

Since nothing is written of Charles's birth, infancy, or boyhood, and no one living remembers them, Einhard passes over what is unknown. He will tell first Charles's deeds at home and abroad, then his character and pursuits, and then his government and his death, omitting nothing worth knowing.

De cuius nativitate atque infantia vel etiam pueritia quia neque
of whose birth and infancy or even boyhood because neither
 scriptis usquam aliquid declaratum est, neque quisquam modo
in-writings anywhere anything declared has-been nor anyone now
 superesse invenitur, qui horum se dicat habere notitiam,
to-survive is-found who of-these-things himself may-say to-have knowledge
 scribere ineptum iudicans ad actus et mores ceterasque
to-write unfitting judging to the-acts and the-character and-the-other
 vitae illius partes explicandas ac demonstrandas, omissis
of-life of-his parts to-be-unfolded and to-be-shown omitted
 incognitis, transire disposui; ita tamen, ut primo res
the-unknown-things to-pass-over I-have-arranged so yet that first the-things
 gestas et domi et foris, deinde mores et studia eius, tum
done both at-home and abroad then the-character and pursuits of-him then
 de regni administratione et fine narrando, nihil de
about of-the-kingdom the-administration and the-end by-narrating nothing of
 his quae cognitu vel digna vel necessaria sunt praetermittam.
these which to-be-known either worthy or necessary are I-may-pass-over

Charles's first war finishes his father's in Aquitaine. Carloman promises help and fails him, but Charles presses on and will not stop until the work is done. He drives Hunold, who has tried to revive the war, out of Aquitaine into Gascony, then crosses the Garonne and demands him of Lupus, duke of the Gascons, on threat of war. Lupus surrenders Hunold and submits himself and his province to Charles.

Omnium bellorum, quae gessit, primo Aquitanicum, a patre
of-all the-wars which he-waged first the-Aquitanian by the-father
inchoatum, sed nondum finitum, quia cito peragi
begun but not-yet finished because quickly to-be-accomplished
posse videbatur, fratre adhuc vivo, etiam et auxilium
to-be-able it-seemed with-the-brother still living even also help
ferre rogato, suscepit. Et licet eum frater promisso
to-bring asked he-undertook and although him the-brother with-promised
frustrasset auxilio, susceptam expeditionem strenuissime
had-cheated help the-undertaken expedition most-vigorously
exsecutus non prius incepto desistere aut semel
having-pursued not sooner from-the-thing-begun to-desist or once
suscepto labori cedere voluit, quam hoc, quod efficere
to-the-undertaken labor to-yield he-wished than this which to-effect
moliebatur, perseverantia quadam ac iugitate perfecto fine
he-was-striving by-perseverance a-certain and continuity with-completed end
concluderet. Nam et Hunoldum, qui post Waifarum mortem
he-should-conclude for both Hunold who after of-Waifar the-death
Aquitaniam occupare bellumque iam poene peractum reparare
Aquitaine to-occupy and-the-war already almost finished to-renew
temptaverat, Aquitaniam relinquere et Wasconiam petere
had-attempted Aquitaine to-leave and Gascony to-seek
coegit. Quem tamen ibi consistere non sustinens, transmisso
be-forced whom yet there to-stay not bearing crossed

amne Garonna, Lupo Wasconum duci per legatos
the-river Garonne to-Lupus of-the-Gascons the-duke through envoys
 mandat, ut perfugam reddat; quod ni festinato faciat,
he-commands that the-fugitive he-should-return which unless in-haste he-does
 bello se eum expostulaturum. Sed Lupus saniori usus
by-war himself him about-to-demand but Lupus sounder having-used
 consilio non solum Hunoldum reddidit, sed etiam se
counsel not only Hunold returned but even himself
 ipsum cum provincia cui praeerat eius potestati permisit.
self with the-province which he-ruled of-him to-the-power entrusted

VI • THE LOMBARD WAR

At Pope Hadrian's request Charles makes war on the Lombards. His father ended his war on Aistulf quickly at Pavia, but Charles does not stop until he has taken Desiderius and exiled him for life, driven his son Adalgis from Italy, put down Hrodgaud of Friuli, made his own son Pippin king of all Italy, and restored to Hadrian the lands the Lombards had taken.

Conpositis in Aquitania rebus eoque bello finito, regni
settled in Aquitaine the-affairs and-that war finished of-the-kingdom
 quoque socio iam rebus humanis exempto, rogatu et
also the-partner already from-affairs human removed by-the-request and
 precibus Hadriani Romanae urbis episcopi exoratus bellum
prayers of-Hadrian of-the-Roman city bishop prevailed-upon a-war
 contra Langobardos suscepit. Quod prius quidem et a patre
against the-Lombards he-undertook which earlier indeed also by the-father
 eius, Stephano papa supplicante, cum magna difficultate
of-him Stephen the-pope entreating with great difficulty
 susceptum est; quia quidam e primoribus Francorum, cum
undertaken was because certain-men from the-chief-men of-the-Franks with

quibus consultare solebat, adeo voluntati eius renisi
whom to-consult he-was-accustomed so the-will of-him resisted
 sunt, ut se regem deserturos domumque redituros
have that themselves the-king about-to-desert and-home about-to-return
 libera voce proclamarent. Susceptum tamen est tunc contra
with-free voice they-proclaimed undertaken yet it-was then against
 Haistulfum regem et celerrime completum. Sed licet sibi
Aistulf the-king and most-swiftly completed but although to-himself
 et patri belli suscipiendi similis ac potius eadem causa
and to-the-father of-the-war to-be-undertaken similar and rather the-same cause
 subesse videretur, haud simili tamen et labore certatum
to-underlie seemed by-no-means similar yet both with-labor it-was-fought
 et fine constat esse completum. Pippinus siquidem
and with-end it-is-agreed to-have-been completed Pippin indeed
 Haistulfum regem paucorum dierum obsidione apud Ticenum
Aistulf the-king of-few days by-a-siege at Pavia
 compulit et obsides dare et erepta Romanis oppida atque
compelled both hostages to-give and taken-from the-Romans towns and
 castella restituere atque, ut reddita non repeterentur,
fortresses to-restore and that returned not they-should-be-sought-again
 sacramento fidem facere; Karolus vero post inchoatum a se
by-oath assurance to-make Charles but after begun by himself
 bellum non prius destitit, quam et Desiderium regem, quem
the-war not sooner desisted than both Desiderius the-king whom
 longa obsidione fatigaverat, in deditionem susciperet, filium
by-long siege he-had-wearied into surrender he-received the-son
 eius Adalgisum, in quem spes omnium inclinatae videbantur,
of-him Adalgis on whom the-hopes of-all inclined seemed
 non solum regno, sed etiam Italia excedere compelleret,
not only from-the-kingdom but even from-Italy to-depart he-compelled
 omnia Romanis erepta restitueret, Hruodgausum Foroiuliani
all-things from-the-Romans taken he-restored Hrodgaud of-the-Friulian

ducatus praefectum res novas molientem opprimeret totamque
duchy the-prefect affairs new plotting he-crushed and-all
 Italiam suae ditioni subiugaret subactaeque filium suum
Italy to-his-own dominion subjected and-on-the-subdued the-son his-own
 Pippinum regem inponeret. Italiam intranti quam difficilis
Pippin king set-over Italy to-the-one-entering how difficult
 Alpium transitus fuerit, quantoque Francorum labore
of-the-Alps the-crossing was and-with-how-great of-the-Franks labor
 invia montium iuga et eminentes in caelum scopuli
the-trackless of-the-mountains ridges and towering into the-sky the-crag
 atque asperae cautes superatae sint, hoc loco describerem,
and rough rocks overcome were in-this place I-would-describe
 nisi vitae illius modum potius quam bellorum, quae gessit,
unless of-the-life of-him the-manner rather than of-the-wars which he-waged
 eventus memoriae mandare praesenti opere animo esset
the-outcomes to-memory to-entrust in-the-present work to-mind it-were
 propositum. Finis tamen huius belli fuit subacta Italia et
proposed the-end yet of-this war was subdued Italy and
 rex Desiderius perpetuo exilio deportatus et filius eius
the-king Desiderius in-perpetual exile deported and the-son of-him
 Adalgisus Italia pulsus et res a Langobardorum regibus
Adalgis from-Italy driven and the-things by of-the-Lombards the-kings
 ereptae Hadriano Romanae ecclesiae rectori restitutae.
taken to-Hadrian of-the-Roman church ruler restored

The Saxon war is the longest and fiercest the Franks fight: thirty-three years against a pagan people whose border runs mostly over open plain, where killings and burnings never stop. The Saxons often surrender and promise to become Christians, and as often rebel. At last Charles carries off ten thousand of them from the Elbe and scatters them through Gaul and Germany, and the war ends with their conversion.

Post cuius finem Saxonicum, quod quasi intermissum
 after whose end the-Saxon which as-if interrupted
 videbatur, repetitum est. Quo nullum neque prolixius
 seemed renewed was than-which none neither more-prolonged
 neque atrocius Francorumque populo laboriosius susceptum
 nor more-savage and-of-the-Franks for-the-people more-laborious undertaken
 est; quia Saxones, sicut omnes fere Germaniam incolentes
 was because the-Saxons as all almost Germany inhabiting
 nationes, et natura feroces et cultui daemonum dediti
 nations both by-nature fierce and to-the-worship of-demons devoted
 nostraeque religioni contrarii neque divina neque humana
 and-to-our religion hostile neither divine nor human
 iura vel polluere vel transgredi inhonestum arbitrabantur.
 laws either to-pollute or to-transgress dishonorable thought
 Suberant et causae, quae cotidie pacem conturbare
 there-were-beneath also causes which daily the-peace to-disturb
 poterant, termini videlicet nostri et illorum poene ubique
 could the-borders namely ours and theirs almost everywhere
 in plano contigui, praeter pauca loca, in quibus vel
 in the-plain adjoining except few places in which either
 silvae maiores vel montium iuga interiecta utrorumque
 forests greater or of-mountains ridges set-between of-both
 agros certo limite disternant, in quibus caedes
 the-fields with-a-certain boundary divide in which slaughters

et rapinae et incendia vicissim fieri non cessabant.
and plunderings and burnings in-turn to-happen not ceased
 Quibus adeo Franci sunt irritati, ut non iam vicissitudinem
by-which so the-Franks were irritated that not now retaliation
 reddere, sed apertum contra eos bellum suscipere dignum
to-return but open against them war to-undertake worthy
 iudicaret. Susceptum est igitur adversus eos bellum, quod
they-judged undertaken was therefore against them a-war which
 magna utrimque animositate, tamen maiore Saxonum
with-great on-both-sides animosity yet with-greater of-the-Saxons
 quam Francorum damno, per continuos triginta tres annos
than of-the-Franks loss through continuous thirty three years
 gerebatur. Poterat siquidem citius finiri, si Saxonum hoc
was-waged it-could indeed sooner to-be-ended if of-the-Saxons this
 perfidia pateretur. Difficile dictu est, quoties superati
the-faithlessness allowed difficult to-say it-is how-often overcome
 ac supplices regi se dediderunt, imperata facturos
and suppliant to-the-king themselves they-surrendered things-ordered about-to-do
 polliciti sunt, obsides qui imperabantur absque dilatione
promised they-have hostages who were-demanded without delay
 dederunt, legatos qui mittebantur susceperunt, aliquoties ita
they-gave envoys who were-sent they-received sometimes so
 domiti et emolliti, ut etiam cultum daemonum dimittere
tamed and softened that even the-worship of-demons to-abandon
 et Christianae religioni se subdere velle promitterent.
and to-the-Christian religion themselves to-submit to-wish they-promised
 Sed sicut ad haec facienda aliquoties proni, sic ad
but as to these-things to-be-done sometimes inclined so to
 eadem pervertenda semper fuere praecipites, non sit ut
the-same-things to-be-overtaken always they-were headlong not it-is that
 satis aestimare, ad utrum horum faciliores verius dici
enough to-judge to which of-these readier more-truly to-be-said

possint; quippe cum post inchoatum cum eis bellum vix
they-could since when after begun with them the-war scarcely
 ullus annus exactus sit, quo non ab eis huiuscemodi facta
any year completed was in-which not by them of-this-kind made
 sit permutatio. Sed magnanimitas regis ac perpetua tam
was a-change but the-magnanimity of-the-king and the-perpetual as-much
 in adversis quam in prosperis mentis constantia nulla eorum
in adversities as in prosperities of-mind constancy by-no of-them
 mutabilitate vel vinci poterat vel ab his quae agere
changeableness either to-be-conquered could or from these-things which to-do
 coeperat defatigari. Nam numquam eos huiuscemodi aliquid
he-had-begun to-be-weariied for never them of-this-kind anything
 perpetrantes inpune ferre passus est, quin aut ipse per
perpetrating unpunished to-carry suffered he-has but-that either himself by
 se ducto aut per comites suos misso exercitu perfidiam
himself led or through counts his-own sent an-army the-faithlessness
 ulcisceretur et dignam ab eis poenam exigeret, usque dum,
he-should-avenge and a-worthy from them penalty should-exact up-to until
 omnibus qui resistere solebant profligatis et in suam
all who to-resist were-accustomed routed and into his-own
 potestatem redactis, decem milia hominum ex his qui
power reduced ten thousand of-men from those who
 utrasque ripas Albis fluminis incolebant cum uxoribus et
both banks of-the-Elbe river inhabited with wives and
 parvulis sublatis transtulit et huc atque illuc per Galliam
little-children removed he-transferred and hither and thither through Gaul
 et Germaniam multimoda divisione distribuit. Eaque
and Germany by-manifold division distributed and-on-that
 conditione a rege proposita et ab illis suscepta tractum
condition by the-king proposed and by them accepted dragged-out
 per tot annos bellum constat esse finitum, ut,
through so-many years the-war it-is-agreed to-have-been ended that

abiecto daemonum cultu et relictis patriis caerimoniis,
cast-off of-demons the-worship and abandoned the-ancestral ceremonies
 Christianae fidei atque religionis sacramenta suscipere et
of-the-Christian faith and religion the-sacraments they-should-receive and
 Francis adunati unus cum eis populus efficerentur.
with-the-Franks united one with them people should-be-made

VIII · THE TWO BATTLES

Charles himself meets the Saxons in battle only twice, at Osning by Detmold and on the Hase, within one month; after that they dare not face him except behind fortifications. Many noblemen of both peoples die before the war ends in its thirty-third year. Meanwhile Charles fights many other wars at once, so that one may wonder whether to admire his endurance or his good fortune more; he neither refuses toil nor shrinks from danger.

Hoc bello, licet per multum temporis spatium traheretur,
in-this war although through much of-time a-space it-was-dragged-out
 ipse non amplius cum hoste quam bis acie confluxit,
he-himself not more with the-enemy than twice in-battle clashed
 semel iuxta montem qui Osneggi dicitur in loco Theotmelli
once near the-mount which Osning is-called in the-place Detmold
 nominato et iterum apud Hasa fluvium, et hoc uno mense,
named and again at the-Hase river and this in-one month
 paucis quoque interpositis diebus. His duobus proeliis hostes
few also intervening days in-these two battles the-enemies
 adeo profligati ac devicti sunt, ut ulterius regem neque
so routed and conquered were that further the-king neither
 provocare neque venienti resistere, nisi aliqua loci munitione
to-provoke nor to-him-coming to-resist unless by-some of-place fortification
 defensi, auderent. Plures tamen eo bello tam ex nobilitate
defended they-dared more yet in-that war as-much from the-nobility

Francorum quam Saxonum et functi summis honoribus
of-the-Franks as of-the-Saxons and having-discharged the-highest offices
 viri consumpti sunt. Tandemque anno tricesimo tertio
men consumed were and-at-last in-the-year thirtieth third
 finitum est, cum interim tot ac tanta in diversis terrarum
ended it-was when meanwhile so-many and so-great in diverse of-the-lands
 partibus bella contra Francos et exorta sint et sollertia regis
parts wars against the-Franks both arisen were and by-the-skill of-the-king
 administrata, ut merito intuentibus in dubium venire possit,
administered that deservedly to-those-looking into doubt to-come can
 utrum in eo aut laborum patientiam aut felicitatem potius
whether in him either of-labors the-endurance or the-good-fortune rather
 mirari conveniat. Nam biennio ante Italicum hoc bellum
to-wonder-at it-is-fitting for two-years before the-Italian this war
 sumpsit exordium, et cum sine intermissione gereretur,
took beginning and when without intermission it-was-waged
 nihil tamen ex his quae aliubi erant gerenda dimissum
nothing yet of these-things which elsewhere were to-be-waged let-go
 aut ulla in parte ab aequae operoso certamine cessatum
or any in part from equally laborious struggle ceased
 est. Nam rex, omnium qui sua aetate gentibus
was for the-king of-all who in-their-own age over-the-peoples
 dominabantur et prudentia maximus et animi magnitudine
ruled both in-prudence greatest and of-mind in-greatness
 praestantissimus, nihil in his quae vel suscipienda erant
most-outstanding nothing in these-things which either to-be-undertaken were
 vel exsequenda aut propter laborem detraxit aut propter
or to-be-carried-out either on-account-of labor refused or on-account-of
 periculum exhorruit, verum unumquodque secundum suam
danger shrank-from but each-thing according-to its-own

qualitatem et subire et ferre doctus nec in adversis cedere
quality both to-undergo and to-bear taught neither in adversities to-yield
 nec in prosperis falso blandienti fortunae adsentiri solebat.
nor in prosperities falsely to-flattering fortune to-assent was-accustomed

IX · RONCESVALLES

During the Saxon war Charles invades Spain, takes the towns he comes to, and returns safe, except in the Pyrenees. As the army passes in a long column through the narrows, the Gascons ambush the rearguard from the wooded heights, kill them to the last man, and scatter by night. Eggihard the steward, Anselm the count of the palace, and Roland of the Breton march fall there.

Cum enim assiduo ac poene continuo cum Saxonibus
when for with-unremitting and almost continuous with the-Saxons
 bello certaretur, dispositis per congrua confiniorum loca
war it-was-fought placed through suitable of-the-frontiers places
 praesidiis, Hispaniam quam maximo poterat belli apparatu
garrisons Spain as with-the-greatest he-could of-war preparation
 adgreditur; saltuque Pyrinei superato, omnibus, quae
he-attacks and-the-pass of-the-Pyrenees crossed all which
 adierat, oppidis atque castellis in deditionem acceptis,
he-had-approached towns and fortresses into surrender received
 salvo et incolomi exercitu revertitur; praeter quod in ipso
with-safe and unharmed army he-returns except that in the-very
 Pyrinei iugo Wasconicam perfidiam parumper in redeundo
of-the-Pyrenees ridge the-Gascon faithlessness for-a-little-while in returning
 contigit experiri. Nam cum agmine longo, ut loci et
it-happened to-experience for when in-a-column long as of-the-place and
 angustiarum situs permittebat, porrectus iret exercitus,
of-the-narrows the-position allowed stretched-out was-going the-army

Wascones in summi montis vertice positus insidiis — est
the-Gascons on of-the-highest mountain the-top placed an-ambush is
 enim locus ex opacitate silvarum, quarum ibi maxima
for the-place from the-darkness of-the-woods of-which there very-great
 est copia, insidiis ponendis oportunus — extremam
is abundance for-ambushes to-be-laid suitable the-last
 impedimentorum partem et eos qui novissimi agminis
of-the-baggage part and those who of-the-rear-most column
 incedentes subsidio praecedentes tuebantur desuper incursantes
marching as-a-support the-ones-going-before protected from-above attacking
 in subiectam vallem deiciunt, consertoque cum eis proelio
into lying-below the-valley they-hurl-down and-joined with them battle
 usque ad unum omnes interficiunt, ac direptis impedimentis,
all-the-way to one all they-kill and plundered the-baggage
 noctis beneficio, quae iam instabat, protecti summa cum
of-night by-the-favor which already was-pressing protected the-greatest with
 celeritate in diversa disperguntur. Adiuuabat in hoc facto
speed in different-directions are-scattered was-helping in this deed
 Wascones et levitas armorum et loci, in quo res
the-Gascons both the-lightness of-arms and of-the-place in which the-affair
 gerebatur, situs, e contra Francos et armorum gravitas
was-carried-on the-position on-the-other-hand the-Franks both of-arms the-weight
 et loci iniquitas per omnia Wasconibus reddidit impares.
and of-the-place the-unevenness in all-things to-the-Gascons rendered unequal
 In quo proelio Eggihardus regiae mensae praepositus,
in which battle Eggibard of-the-royal table the-steward
 Anselmus comes palatii [et Hruodlandus Britannici limitis
Anselm count of-the-palace and Roland of-the-Breton march
 praefectus] cum aliis conpluribus interficiuntur. Neque hoc
the-prefect with others very-many are-killed nor this
 factum ad praesens vindicari poterat, quia hostis re
deed for the-present to-be-avenged could because the-enemy the-thing

perpetrata ita dispersus est, ut ne fama quidem remaneret,
 perpetrated so dispersed was that not a-report even remained
 ubinam gentium quaeri potuisset.
 where-in-the-world of-the-nations to-be-sought it-could-have

X · THE BRETONS AND BENEVENTO

Charles subdues the Bretons. Then he marches through Rome to Capua and threatens Benevento. Duke Arichis sends his sons with treasure and offers to obey in everything but appearing in person. Charles, considering the people's good, accepts, keeps the younger son as a hostage, sends envoys to take the Beneventans' oaths, and returns to Gaul after some days at the holy places of Rome.

Domuit et Brittones, qui ad occidentem in extrema quadam
 he-subdued also the-Bretons who to the-west in the-farthest a-certain
 parte Galliae super litus oceani residentes dicto audientes
 part of-Gaul upon the-shore of-the-ocean dwelling to-the-word obedient
 non erant, missa in eos expeditione, qua et obsides
 not were sent against them an-expedition by-which both hostages
 dare et quae imperarentur se facturos polliceri coacti
 to-give and what-things might-be-ordered themselves about-to-do to-promise compelled
 sunt. Ipse postea cum exercitu Italiam ingressus ac
 they-were he-himself afterward with an-army Italy having-entered and
 per Romam iter agens Capuam Campaniae urbem accessit
 through Rome journey making Capua of-Campania the-city approached
 atque ibi positis castris bellum Beneventanis, ni dederentur,
 and there pitched the-camp war on-the-Beneventans unless they-surrendered
 comminatus est. Praevenit hoc dux gentis Aragisus: filios
 threatened he-has forestalled this the-duke of-the-people Arichis the-sons
 suos Rumoldum et Grimoldum cum magna pecunia obviam
 his-own Romuald and Grimoald with great money to-meet

regi mittens rogat, ut filios obsides suscipiat, seque
the-king sending he-asks that the-sons as-hostages he-may-receive and-himself
 cum gente imperata facturum pollicetur, praeter hoc solum,
with the-people things-ordered about-to-do he-promises except this alone
 si ipse ad conspectum venire cogeretur. Rex, utilitate
if he-himself to the-sight to-come should-be-compelled the-king the-benefit
 gentis magis quam animi eius obstinatione considerata,
of-the-people more than of-the-mind of-him the-obstinacy considered
 et oblatos sibi obsides suscepit eique, ut ad conspectum
both the-offered to-himself hostages received and-to-him that to the-sight
 venire non cogeretur, pro magno munere concessit;
to-come not he-should-be-compelled for a-great gift granted
 unoque, ex filiis, qui minor erat, obsidatus gratia retento,
and-one of the-sons who younger was of-hostageship for-the-sake kept
 maiorem patri remisit; legatisque ob sacramenta fidelitatis
the-elder to-the-father sent-back and-envoys for the-oaths of-fidelity
 a Beneventanis exigenda atque suscipienda cum Aragiso
from the-Beneventans to-be-exacted and to-be-received with Arichis
 dimissis Romam redit, consumptisque ibi in sanctorum
sent-off to-Rome he-returns and-spent there in of-the-holy
 veneratione locorum aliquot diebus in Galliam revertitur.
veneration places some days into Gaul he-returns

The Bavarian war begins suddenly and ends quickly. Duke Tassilo, urged by his wife, Desiderius's daughter, allies with the Huns and defies Charles. Charles comes with a great army to the Lech, the boundary between the Bavarians and the Alamanni. Tassilo submits without a fight and gives hostages, among them his son Theodo. Later he is summoned to the king and not allowed to return, and Bavaria is entrusted no longer to a duke but to counts.

Baioaricum deinde bellum et repente ortum et celeri fine
the-Bavarian then war both suddenly arisen and with-a-swift end
 completum est. Quod superbia simul ac socordia Tassilonis
completed was which the-pride together and the-sloth of-Tassilo
 ducis excitavit; qui hortatu uxoris, quae filia Desiderii
the-duke stirred-up who at-the-urging of-his-wife who the-daughter of-Desiderius
 regis erat ac patris exilium per maritum ulcisci posse
the-king was and of-the-father the-exile through the-husband to-avenge to-be-able
 putabat, iuncto foedere cum Hunis, qui Baioariis sunt ab
thought joined a-treaty with the-Huns who to-the-Bavarians are on-the
 oriente contermini, non solum imperata non facere, sed bello
east bordering not only things-ordered not to-do but in-war
 regem provocare temptabat. Cuius contumaciam, quia nimia
the-king to-provoke attempted whose defiance because excessive
 videbatur, animositas regis ferre nequiverat, ac proinde
it-seemed the-spirit of-the-king to-bear had-been-unable and accordingly
 copiis undique contractis Baioariam petiturus ipse ad
with-forces from-all-sides drawn-together Bavaria about-to-seek he-himself to
 Lechum amnem cum magno venit exercitu. Is fluvius Baioarios
the-Lech river with a-great came army this river the-Bavarians
 ab Alamannis dividit. Cuius in ripa castris conlocatis,
from the-Alamanni divides whose on bank the-camp placed
 priusquam provinciam intraret, animum ducis per legatos
before the-province he-should-enter the-mind of-the-duke through envoys

statuit experiri. Sed nec ille pertinaciter agere vel sibi vel
he-decided to-test but neither he obstinately to-act either for-himself or
genti utile ratus supplex se regi permisit, obsides
for-the-people useful having-judged suppliant himself to-the-king entrusted hostages
qui imperabantur dedit, inter quos et filium suum Theodonem,
who were-demanded he-gave among whom also the-son his-own Theodo
data insuper fide cum iuramento, quod ab illius potestate ad
given moreover a-pledge with an-oath that from his power to
defectionem nemini suadenti adsentire deberet. Sicque bello,
revolt to-no-one persuading to-assent he-ought and-so on-the-war
quod quasi maximum futurum videbatur, celerrimus est finis
which as-if the-greatest about-to-be seemed most-swift was an-end
inpositus. Tassilo tamen postmodum ad regem evocatus
imposed Tassilo yet afterward to the-king summoned
neque redire permissus, neque provincia, quam tenebat,
neither to-return permitted nor the-province which he-held
ulterius duci, sed comitibus ad regendum commissa est.
further to-a-duke but to-counts for ruling entrusted was

XII • THE WILZI

Charles next makes war on the Slavs called Wilzi, or Welatabi in their own tongue, who harass the Obodrites, allies of the Franks. Einhard describes the Baltic, a gulf of unknown length and no more than a hundred miles wide, with the Danes and Swedes on its northern shore and the Slavs and Aisti on its southern. Charles crushes the Welatabi in a single campaign, so that they never again refuse his orders.

His motibus ita conpositis, Sclavis, qui nostra consuetudine
these disturbances so settled on-the-Slavs who in-our custom
Wilzi, proprie vero, id est sua locutione, Welatabi
Wilzi properly but that is in-their-own speech Welatabi

dicuntur, bellum inlatum est. In quo et Saxones velut
are-called war brought was in which also the-Saxons as-if
 auxiliares inter ceteras nationes, quae regis signa
auxiliaries among the-other nations which of-the-king the-standards
 iussae sequebantur, quamquam ficta et minus devota
ordered followed although with-feigned and less devoted
 oboedientia, militabant. Causa belli erat, quod Abodritos,
obedience served the-cause of-the-war was that the-Obodrites
 qui cum Francis olim foederati erant, adsidua incursione
who with the-Franks once allied were with-constant raiding
 lacessebant nec iussionibus coerceri poterant. Sinus quidam
they-harassed nor by-commands to-be-restrained could a-gulf a-certain
 ab occidentali oceano orientem versus porrigitur, longitudinis
from the-western ocean the-east toward stretches of-length
 quidem inconperta, latitudinis vero quae nusquam centum
indeed unascertained of-breadth but which nowhere a-hundred
 milia passuum excedat, cum in multis locis contractior
thousand of-paces exceeds since in many places narrower
 inveniatur. Hunc multae circumsedent nationes; Dani
it-is-found this many surround nations the-Danes
 siquidem ac Sueones, quos Nordmannos vocamus, et
indeed and Swedes whom Northmen we-call both
 septentrionale litus et omnes in eo insulas tenent. At litus
the-northern shore and all in it the-islands hold but the-shore
 australe Sclavi et Aisti et aliae diversae incolunt nationes;
southern the-Slavs and the-Aisti and other diverse inhabit nations
 inter quos vel praecipui sunt, quibus tunc a rege bellum
among whom even chief are on-whom then by the-king war
 inferebatur, Welatabi. Quos ille una tantum et quam per
was-being-brought the-Welatabi whom he one only and which by

se gesserat expeditione ita contudit ac domuit, ut
 himself he-had-waged expedition so crushed and subdued that
 ulterius imperata facere minime rennuendum iudicarent.
 further things-ordered to-do by-no-means to-be-refused they-judged

XIII • THE AVAR WAR

The greatest war after the Saxon is against the Avars, or Huns, and ends in its eighth year. Pannonia is emptied of people, the khagan's palace leaves no trace, and the Avars' long-boarded treasure makes the Franks rich. Only two Frankish leaders die, Eric of Friuli in an ambush and Gerold of Bavaria drawing up his line. The Bohemian and Linonian wars end quickly.

Maximum omnium, quae ab illo gesta sunt, bellorum praeter
 the-greatest of-all which by him waged were of-the-wars except
 Saxonicum huic bello successit, illud videlicet, quod contra
 the-Saxon to-this war succeeded that namely which against
 Avars sive Hunos susceptum est. Quod ille et animosius
 the-Avars or Huns undertaken was which he both more-spiritedly
 quam cetera et longe maiori apparatu administravit. Unam
 than the-others and far with-greater preparation administered one
 tamen per se in Pannoniam — nam hanc provinciam ea
 yet by himself into Pannonia for this province that
 gens tum incolebat — expeditionem fecit, cetera filio suo
 people then inhabited expedition he-made the-others to-the-son his-own
 Pippino ac praefectis provinciarum, comitibus etiam atque
 Pippin and to-the-prefects of-the-provinces to-the-counts even and
 legatis perficienda commisit. Quod cum ab his strenuissime
 to-envoys to-be-completed entrusted which when by these most-vigorously
 fuisset administratum, octavo tandem anno completum est.
 had-been administered in-the-eighth at-last year completed it-was

Quot proelia in eo gesta, quantum sanguinis effusum sit,
how-many battles in it waged how-much of-blood shed was
 testatur vacua omni habitatore Pannonia et locus, in quo
bears-witness empty of-every inhabitant Pannonia and the-place in which
 regia kagani erat, ita desertus, ut ne vestigium quidem in
the-palace of-the-khagan was so deserted that not a-trace even in
 eo humanae habitationis appareat. Tota in hoc bello Hunorum
it of-human habitation appears all in this war of-the-Huns
 nobilitas periit, tota gloria decedit. Omnis pecunia et congesti
the-nobility perished all the-glory fell all the-money and gathered
 ex longo tempore thesauri direpti sunt. Neque ullum bellum
from long time the-treasures plundered were nor any war
 contra Francos exortum humana potest memoria recordari,
against the-Franks arisen human can memory to-recall
 quo illi magis ditati et opibus aucti sint. Quippe cum
in-which they more enriched and with-wealth increased were since when
 usque in id temporis poene pauperes viderentur, tantum
up-to into that of-time almost poor they-seemed so-much
 auri et argenti in regia repertum, tot spolia pretiosa
of-gold and of-silver in the-palace found so-many spoils precious
 in proeliis sublata, ut merito credi possit hoc Francos
in battles carried-off that deservedly to-be-believed it-could this the-Franks
 Hunis iuste eripuisse, quod Huni prius aliis gentibus
from-the-Huns justly to-have-taken which the-Huns before from-other peoples
 iniuste eripuerunt. Duo tantum ex proceribus Francorum eo
unjustly took two only of the-nobles of-the-Franks in-that
 bello perierunt: Ericus dux Foroiulanus in Liburnia iuxta
war perished Eric the-duke of-Friuli in Liburnia near
 Tharsaticam maritimam civitatem insidiis oppidanorum
Tarsatica the-maritime city by-the-ambushes of-the-townsmen
 interceptus, et Geroldus Baioariae praefectus in Pannonia, cum
caught and Gerold of-Bavaria the-prefect in Pannonia when

contra Hunos proeliaturus aciem strueret, incertum a
against the-Huns about-to-fight the-battle-line he-was-drawing-up uncertain by
 quo, cum duobus tantum, qui eum obequitantem ac singulos
whom with two only who him riding-about and each-one
 hortantem comitabantur, interfectus est. Ceterum incruentum
exhorting accompanied killed was for-the-rest bloodless
 poene Francis hoc bellum fuit et prosperrimum exitum
almost for-the-Franks this war was and the-most-prosperous outcome
 habuit, tametsi diutius sui magnitudine traheretur. Post
had although longer of-itself by-the-greatness it-was-dragged-out after
 quod et Saxonicum suae prolixitati convenientem finem
which also the-Saxon for-its-own prolixity suitable an-end
 accepit. Boemanicum quoque et Linonicum, quae postea
received the-Bohemian also and the-Linonian which afterward
 exorta sunt, diu durare non potuerunt. Quorum utrumque
arisen were long to-last not could of-which each
 ductu Karoli iunioris celeri fine conpletum est.
under-the-leadership of-Charles the-younger with-a-swift end completed was

XIV • THE DANES

Charles's last war is against the Northmen called Danes, first pirates, then raiders of the coasts of Gaul and Germany with larger fleets. Their king Godfred, puffed up with vain hope, claims Frisia and Saxony, has made the Obodrites his tributaries, and boasts that he will soon come to Aachen with a great army. He might have tried it, but one of his own retainers murders him, ending his life and his war together.

Ultimum contra Nordmannos, qui Dani vocantur, primo
the-last against the-Northmen who Danes are-called at-first
 pyriticam exercentes, deinde maiori classe litora Galliae
piracy practicing then with-a-greater fleet the-shores of-Gaul

atque Germaniae vastantes, bellum susceptum est. Quorum
and of-Germany laying-waste war undertaken was of-whom
 rex Godofridus adeo vana spe inflatus erat, ut sibi
the-king Godfred so with-vain hope puffed-up was that to-himself
 totius Germaniae promitteret potestatem. Frisiam quoque
of-all Germany he-promised the-power Frisia also
 atque Saxoniam haud aliter atque suas provincias
and Saxony by-no-means otherwise than his-own provinces
 aestimabat. Iam Abodritos, vicinos suos, in suam ditionem
he-reckoned already the-Obodrites neighbors bis-own into bis-own dominion
 redegerat, iam eos sibi vectigales fecerat. Iactabat etiam
he-had-reduced already them to-himself tributaries he-had-made he-boasted also
 se brevi Aquasgrani, ubi regis comitatus erat, cum
himself shortly to-Aachen where of-the-king the-retinue was with
 maximis copiis adventurum. Nec dictis eius, quamvis
the-greatest forces about-to-come nor to-the-sayings of-him although
 vanissimis, omnino fides abnuebatur, quin potius putaretur
most-vain entirely belief was-refused nay rather it-was-thought
 tale aliquid inchoaturus, nisi festinata fuisset morte
such something about-to-begin unless by-bastened he-had-been death
 praeventus. Nam a proprio satellite interfectus et suae
forestalled for by his-own attendant killed both of-his-own
 vitae et belli a se inchoati finem acceleravit.
life and of-the-war by himself begun the-end he-bastened

In forty-seven years of war Charles nearly doubles the kingdom he inherited, which held only part of Gaul and part of Germany. He adds Aquitaine and Gascony, the Pyrenees to the Ebro, all Italy from Aosta to lower Calabria, Saxony, both Pannonias, Dacia, Istria, Liburnia, and Dalmatia (except the coastal cities he leaves to the emperor at Constantinople), and makes tributary the barbarous peoples between the Rhine and the Vistula, chief among them the Welatabi, Sorbs, Obodrites, and Bohemians.

Haec sunt bella, quae rex potentissimus per annos XLVII
these are the-wars which the-king most-powerful through years forty-seven
 — tot enim annis regnaverat — in diversis terrarum
so-many for years he-had-reigned in diverse of-the-lands
 partibus summa prudentia atque felicitate gessit. Quibus
parts with-the-biggest prudence and good-fortune waged by-which
 regnum Francorum, quod post patrem Pippinum magnum
the-kingdom of-the-Franks which after father Pippin great
 quidem et forte suscepit, ita nobiliter ampliavit, ut poene
indeed and strong he-had-received so nobly he-enlarged that almost
 duplum illi adiecerit. Nam cum prius non amplius quam ea
double to-it he-added for when before not more than that
 pars Galliae, quae inter Rhenum et Ligerem oceanumque
part of-Gaul which between the-Rhine and the-Loire and-the-ocean
 ac mare Balearicum iacet, et pars Germaniae, quae inter
and the-sea Balearic lies and the-part of-Germany which between
 Saxoniam et Danubium Rhenumque ac Salam fluvium, qui
Saxony and the-Danube and-the-Rhine and the-Saale river which
 Thuringos et Sorabos dividit, posita a Francis qui Orientales
the-Thuringians and the-Sorbs divides situated by the-Franks who Eastern
 dicuntur incolitur, et praeter haec Alamanni atque Baioarii
are-called is-inhabited and besides these the-Alamanni and the-Bavarians

ad regni Francorum potestatem pertinerent: ipse per
to of-the-kingdom of-the-Franks the-power belonged he-himself through
 bella memorata primo Aquitaniam et Wasconiam totumque
the-wars mentioned first Aquitaine and Gascony and-the-whole
 Pyrinei montis iugum et usque ad Hiberum amnem, qui
of-the-Pyrenees mountain ridge and all-the-way to the-Ebro river which
 apud Navarros ortus et fertilissimos Hispaniae agros secans
among the-Navarrese having-arisen and the-most-fertile of-Spain fields cutting
 sub Dertosae civitatis moenia Balearico mari miscetur; deinde
under of-Tortosa city the-walls with-the-Balearic sea is-mingled then
 Italiam totam, quae ab Augusta Praetoria usque in Calabriam
Italy whole which from Augusta Praetoria up-to into Calabria
 inferiorem, in qua Graecorum ac Beneventanorum constat esse
lower in which of-the-Greeks and of-the-Beneventans it-is-agreed to-be
 confinia, decies centum et eo amplius passuum milibus
the-borders ten-times a-hundred and than-that more of-paces by-thousands
 longitudine porrigitur; tum Saxoniam, quae quidem Germaniae
in-length stretches then Saxony which indeed of-Germany
 pars non modica est et eius quae a Francis incolitur duplum
a-part not small is and of-that which by the-Franks is-inhabited double
 in lato habere putatur, cum ei longitudine possit esse
in breadth to-have is-thought though to-it in-length it-may to-be
 consimilis; post quam utramque Pannoniam et adpositam in
very-similar after which both Pannonias and lying-beside on
 altera Danubii ripa Daciam, Histriam quoque et Liburniam
the-other of-the-Danube bank Dacia Istria also and Liburnia
 atque Dalmaciam, exceptis maritimis civitatibus, quas ob
and Dalmatia excepted the-maritime cities which for
 amicitiam et iunctum cum eo foedus Constantinopolitanum
friendship and joined with him treaty the-Constantinopolitan
 imperatorem habere permisit; deinde omnes barbaras ac feras
emperor to-hold be-permitted then all the-barbarous and wild

nationes, quae inter Rhenum ac Visulam fluvios oceanumque
nations which between the-Rhine and the-Vistula rivers and-the-ocean
 ac Danubium positae, lingua quidem poene similes, moribus
and the-Danube situated in-language indeed almost similar in-customs
 vero atque habitu valde dissimiles, Germaniam incolunt, ita
but and in-dress very dissimilar Germany inhabit so
 perdomuit, ut eas tributarias efficeret; inter quas fere
thoroughly-subdued that them tributary he-made among whom almost
 praecipuae sunt Welatabi, Sorabi, Abodriti, Boemani —
chief are the-Welatabi the-Sorbs the-Obodrites the-Bobemians
 cum his namque bello confligit—; ceteras, quarum multo
with these for in-war he-clashed the-others of-which much
 maior est numerus, in deditionem suscepit.
greater is the-number into surrender he-received

XVI · FRIENDSHIPS WITH KINGS

Charles wins other rulers' friendship. Alfonso of Galicia calls himself his man, and the Irish kings his subjects. Harun, the Persian king, who once sent his only elephant, places the Holy Sepulcher under his authority and sends rich gifts. The emperors at Constantinople seek his friendship, though suspicious of his title. Hence the Greek proverb: have the Frank for a friend, not for a neighbor.

Auxit etiam gloriam regni sui quibusdam regibus ac
he-increased also the-glory of-kingdom his-own certain kings and
 gentibus per amicitiam sibi conciliatis. Adeo namque
peoples through friendship to-himself won-over so for
 Hade fonsum Galleciae atque Asturicae regem sibi societate
Alfonso of-Galicia and of-Asturias the-king to-himself by-alliance
 devinxit, ut is, cum ad eum vel litteras vel legatos
he-bound that he when to him either letters or envoys

mitteret, non aliter se apud illum quam proprium suum
he-sent not otherwise himself to him than own-man his
 appellari iuberet. Scottorum quoque reges sic habuit ad
to-be-called ordered of-the-Irish also the-kings so he-had to
 suam voluntatem per munificentiam inclinatos, ut eum
his-own will through munificence inclined that him
 numquam aliter nisi dominum seque subditos et servos
never otherwise except lord and-themselves subjects and servants
 eius pronuntiarent. Extant epistolae ab eis ad illum missae,
of-him they-declared there-exist letters by them to him sent
 quibus huiusmodi affectus eorum erga illum indicatur. Cum
in-which of-this-kind the-affection of-them toward him is-shown with
 Aaron rege Persarum, qui excepta India totum poene tenebat
Harun the-king of-the-Persians who excepted India the-whole almost held
 orientem, talem habuit in amicitia concordiam, ut is gratiam
the-east such he-had in friendship concord that he the-favor
 eius omnium, qui in toto orbe terrarum erant, regum ac
of-him of-all who in the-whole circle of-the-lands were of-kings and
 principum amicitiae praeponeret solumque illum honore
of-princes to-the-friendship put-before and-alone him with-honor
 ac munificentia sibi colendum iudicaret. Ac proinde, cum
and munificence by-himself to-be-courted judged and accordingly when
 legati eius, quos cum donariis ad sacratissimum Domini
the-envoys of-him whom with offerings to the-most-sacred of-the-Lord
 ac salvatoris nostri sepulchrum locumque resurrectionis
and savior our sepulcher and-the-place of-the-resurrection
 miserat, ad eum venissent et ei domini sui voluntatem
he-had-sent to him had-come and to-him of-the-lord their-own the-will
 indicassent, non solum quae petebantur fieri permisit,
had-indicated not only what-things were-asked to-be-done he-permitted
 sed etiam sacrum illum et salutarem locum, ut illius
but even holy that and saving place that of-him

potestati adscriberetur, concessit; et revertentibus legatis suos
to-the-power it-should-be-assigned be-granted and to-the-returning envoys his-own
 adiungens inter vestes et aromata et ceteras orientalium
joining among robes and spices and the-other of-the-eastern
 terrarum opes ingentia illi dona direxit, cum ei ante
lands riches huge to-him gifts be-dispatched since to-him before
 paucos annos eum, quem tunc solum habebat, roganti
few years him whom then alone he-had asking
 mitteret elefantum. Imperatores etiam Constantinopolitani,
be-sent the-elephant the-emperors also Constantinopolitan
 Niciforus, Michahel et Leo, ultro amicitiam et
Nicephorus Michael and Leo of-their-own-accord the-friendship and
 societatem eius expetentes complures ad eum misere legatos.
alliance of-him seeking very-many to him sent envoys
 Cum quibus tamen propter susceptum a se imperatoris
with whom yet on-account-of assumed by himself of-emperor
 nomen et ob hoc [eis], quasi qui imperium eis
the-name and for this to-them as-if one-who the-empire from-them
 eripere vellet, valde suspectum foedus firmissimum statuit,
to-snatch wished very suspected a-treaty most-firm he-established
 ut nulla inter partes cuiuslibet scandali remaneret occasio.
that no between the-parties of-any-sort of-offense might-remain occasion
 Erat enim semper Romanis et Grecis Francorum suspecta
it-was for always to-the-Romans and Greeks of-the-Franks suspected
 potentia. Unde et illud Grecum extat proverbium: ΤΟΝ
the-power whence also that Greek exists proverb the
 ΦΡΑΝΚΟΝ ΦΙΛΟΝ ΕΧΙΣ, ΓΙΤΟΝΑ ΟΥΚ ΕΧΙΣ.
Frank as-friend you-have as-neighbor not you-have

Amid his wars Charles begins many works: the basilica of the Mother of God at Aachen, a wooden bridge over the Rhine at Mainz, which burns the year before his death, and palaces at Ingelheim and Nijmegen. He has decayed churches restored, builds fleets against the Northmen, and guards the ports and river mouths against them and the southern coasts against the Moors.

Qui cum tantus in ampliando regno et subigendis exteris
who although so-great in enlarging the-kingdom and in-subduing foreign
 nationibus existeret et in eiusmodi occupationibus assidue
nations he-stood-out and in of-this-kind occupations constantly
 versaretur, opera tamen plurima ad regni decorem et
was-engaged works yet very-many to of-the-kingdom the-adornment and
 commoditatem pertinentia diversis in locis inchoavit, quaedam
convenience pertaining diverse in places he-began certain-ones
 etiam consummavit. Inter quae praecipua [fere] non inmerito
even he-finished among which chief almost not undeservedly
 videri possunt basilica sanctae Dei genitricis Aquisgrani
to-seem can the-basilica of-the-holy of-God mother at-Aachen
 opere mirabili constructa et pons apud Mogontiacum in
with-work wonderful constructed and the-bridge at Mainz on
 Rheno quingentorum passuum longitudinis — nam tanta est
the-Rhine of-five-hundred paces of-length for so-great is
 ibi fluminis latitudo—; qui tamen uno, antequam decederet,
there of-the-river the-breadth which yet one before he-died
 anno incendio conflagravit, nec refici potuit propter
year by-fire burned-down nor to-be-rebuilt could on-account-of
 festinatum illius decessum, quamquam in ea meditatione esset,
the-hastened his death although in that intention he-was
 ut pro ligneo lapideum restitueret. Inchoavit et palatia
that instead-of the-wooden a-stone-one he-might-restore he-began also palaces

operis egregii, unum haud longe a Mogontiaci civitate,
of-work outstanding one not far from Mainz the-city
 iuxta villam cui vocabulum est Ingilenheim, alterum
near the-estate to-which the-name is Ingelheim the-other
 Noviomagi super Vahalem fluvium, qui Batavorum insulam a
at-Nijmegen on the-Waal river which of-the-Batavians the-island on
 parte meridiana praeterfluit. Praecipue tamen aedes sacras
the-side southern flows-past chiefly yet the-buildings sacred
 ubicumque in toto regno suo vetustate conlapsas conperit,
wherever in the-whole kingdom his-own by-age collapsed he-found
 pontificibus et patribus, ad quorum curam pertinebant, ut
to-the-bishops and fathers to whose care they-belonged that
 restaurarentur, imperavit, adhibens curam per legatos, ut
they-should-be-restored he-ordered applying care through envoys that
 imperata perficerent. Molitus est et classem contra
the-things-ordered they-should-complete built has also a-fleet against
 bellum Nordmannicum, aedificatis ad hoc navibus iuxta
the-war Northman built for this ships near
 flumina, quae et de Gallia et de Germania septentrionalem
the-rivers which both from Gaul and from Germany into-the-northern
 influunt oceanum. Et quia Nordmanni Gallicum litus atque
flow ocean and because the-Northmen the-Gallic shore and
 Germanicum assidua infestatione vastabant, per omnes
German with-constant harassment were-laying-waste through all
 portus et ostia fluminum, qua naves recipi posse
the-ports and mouths of-rivers where ships to-be-received to-be-able
 videbantur, stationibus et excubiis dispositis, ne qua
seemed with-stations and watches placed lest anywhere
 hostis exire potuisset, tali munitione prohibuit. Fecit
the-enemy to-go-out could by-such fortification he-prevented he-did
 idem a parte meridiana in litore provinciae Narbonensis
the-same on the-side southern on the-shore of-the-province of-Narbonne

ac Septimaniae, toto etiam Italiae litore usque Romam
and of-Septimania on-the-whole also of-Italy shore up-to Rome
 contra Mauros nuper pyriticam exercere adgressos; ac per
against the-Moors lately piracy to-practice having-begun and through
 hoc nullo gravi damno vel a Mauris Italia vel Gallia atque
this by-no serious loss either by the-Moors Italy or Gaul and
 Germania a Nordmannis diebus suis adfecta est, praeter
Germany by the-Northmen in-days his-own afflicted was except
 quod Centumcellae civitas Etruriae per proditionem a
that Centumcellae a-city of-Etruria through betrayal by
 Mauris capta atque vastata est, et in Frisia quaedam insulae
the-Moors taken and laid-waste was and in Frisia certain islands
 Germanico litori contiguae a Nordmannis depraedatae sunt.
to-the-German shore adjoining by the-Northmen plundered were

XVIII • HIS FAMILY

Charles bears his brother's jealousy patiently. At his mother's urging he marries a daughter of Desiderius, repudiates her after a year, and marries Hildegard, by whom he has three sons and three daughters. Fastrada bears him two daughters; after her he marries Liutgard, then has concubines, by whom he has further children. His mother Bertrada lives with him in honor, quarreling only over the divorce, and he honors his sister Gisela, a nun.

Talem eum in tuendo et ampliando simulque ornando
such him in defending and enlarging and-at-the-same-time adorning
 regno fuisse constat. Cuius animi dotes et
the-kingdom to-have-been it-is-agreed of-whose mind the-endowments and
 summam in qualicumque et prospero et adverso eventu
the-highest in whatever both prosperous and adverse event

constantiam ceteraque ad interiorem atque domesticam
constancy and-the-other-things to the-inner and domestic
 vitam pertinentia iam abhinc dicere exordiar.
life pertaining now from-here to-tell I-shall-begin
 Post mortem patris cum fratre regnum partitus tanta
after the-death of-the-father with the-brother the-kingdom having-divided with-such
 patientia simulates et invidiam eius tulit, ut omnibus
patience the-quarrels and envy of-him he-bore that to-all
 mirum videretur, quod ne ad iracundiam quidem ab eo
wonderful it-seemed that not to anger even by him
 provocari potuisset. Deinde cum matris hortatu filiam
to-be-provoked he-could-have then when of-the-mother at-the-urging the-daughter
 Desiderii regis Langobardorum duxisset uxorem, incertum
of-Desiderius king of-the-Lombards he-had-married as-wife uncertain
 qua de causa, post annum eam repudiavit et Hildigardam
what for cause after a-year her he-repudiated and Hildigard
 de gente Suavorum praecipuae nobilitatis feminam in
from the-people of-the-Swabians of-outstanding nobility a-woman in
 matrimonium accepit; de qua tres filios, Karolum videlicet,
marriage received of whom three sons Charles namely
 Pippinum et Hludowicum, totidemque filias, Hruodtrudem
Pippin and Louis and-as-many daughters Hrotrud
 et Berhtam et Gislam, genuit. Habuit et alias tres filias,
and Bertha and Gisela he-begot he-had also other three daughters
 Theoderadam et Hiltrudem et Hruodhaidem, duas de
Theoderada and Hiltrud and Rothaid two of
 Fastrada uxore, quae de Orientalium Francorum, Germanorum
Fastrada the-wife who from of-the-Eastern Franks of-the-Germans
 videlicet, gente erat, tertiam de concubina quadam, cuius
namely the-people was the-third of a-concubine a-certain whose
 nomen modo memoriae non occurrit. Defuncta Fastrada
name now to-memory not occurs having-died Fastrada

Liutgardam Alamannam duxit, de qua nihil liberorum
Liutgard the-Alamannian he-married of whom nothing of-children
 tulit. Post cuius mortem tres habuit concubinas, Gersuindam
he-had after whose death three he-had concubines Gersuinda
 Saxonici generis, de qua ei filia nomine Adaltrud nata
of-Saxon stock of whom to-him a-daughter by-name Adaltrud born
 est, et Reginam, quae ei Drogonem et Hugum genuit,
was and Regina who to-him Drogo and Hugh bore
 et Adallindem, ex qua Theodericum procreavit. Mater
and Adallinda from whom Theoderic he-begot the-mother
 quoque eius Berhtrada in magno apud eum honore consenuit.
also of-him Bertrada in great with him honor grew-old
 Colebat enim eam cum summa reverentia, ita ut nulla
he-honored for her with the-highest reverence so that no
 umquam invicem sit exorta discordia, praeter in divortio
ever between-them has arisen discord except in the-divorce
 filiae Desiderii regis, quam illa suadente acceperat.
of-the-daughter of-Desiderius the-king whom she persuading he-had-taken
 Decessit tandem post mortem Hildigardae, cum iam tres
she-died at-last after the-death of-Hildegard when already three
 nepotes suos totidemque neptes in filii domo vidisset.
grandsons her-own and-as-many granddaughters in of-the-son the-house she-had-seen
 Quam ille in eadem basilica, qua pater situs est, apud
whom he in the-same basilica in-which the-father laid is at
 Sanctum Dionisium, magno cum honore fecit humari.
Saint Denis great with honor caused to-be-buried
 Erat ei unica soror nomine Gisla, a puellaribus annis
there-was to-him an-only sister by-name Gisela from girlish years
 religiosae conversationi mancipata, quam similiter ut matrem
to-the-religious manner-of-life given-over whom similarly as the-mother

magna coluit pietate. Quae etiam paucis ante obitum illius
with-great he-honored devotion who also few before the-death of-him
 annis in eo, quo conversata est, monasterio decessit.
years in that in-which lived has monastery died

XIX • HIS CHILDREN

Charles has his children taught the liberal arts, his sons riding and hunting, his daughters wool-work. He weeps for the two sons and the daughter he loses, and for Pope Hadrian. He never dines or travels without his children. He will give none of his daughters in marriage, saying he cannot bear to be without them, and so suffers misfortune, though he behaves as if no rumor had arisen.

Liberos suos ita censuit instituendos, ut tam filii quam
children his-own so he-judged to-be-instructed that as-much sons as
 filiae primo liberalibus studiis, quibus et ipse operam
daughters first in-the-liberal studies to-which also he-himself effort
 dabat, erudirentur. Tum filios, cum primum aetas patiebatur,
gave should-be-educated then the-sons when first age allowed
 more Francorum equitare, armis ac venatibus exerceri
in-the-manner of-the-Franks to-ride with-arms and in-hunting to-be-exercised
 fecit, filias vero lanificio adsuescere colloque ac
he-caused the-daughters but to-wool-working to-grow-used and-to-distaff and
 fuso, ne per otium torperent, operam impendere atque
spindle lest through idleness they-grow-sluggish effort to-apply and
 ad omnem honestatem erudiri iussit.
to all honorable-conduct to-be-educated he-ordered

Ex his omnibus duos tantum filios et unam filiam, priusquam
from these all two only sons and one daughter before
 moreretur, amisit, Karolum, qui natus maior erat, et
he-died he-lost Charles who by-birth elder was and

Pippinum, quem regem Italiae praefecerat, et Hruodtrudem,
Pippin whom as-king over-Italy he-had-set and Hrotrud
 quae filiarum eius primogenita et a Constantino Grecorum
who of-the-daughters of-him the-first-born and by Constantine of-the-Greeks
 imperatore desponsata erat. Quorum Pippinus unum filium
emperor betrothed was of-whom Pippin one son
 suum Bernhardum, filias autem quinque, Adalhaidem, Atulam,
his-own Bernard daughters moreover five Adelaide Atula
 Gundradam, Berthaidem ac Theoderadam, superstites reliquit.
Gundrada Bertbaid and Theoderada surviving left
 In quibus rex pietatis suae praecipuum documentum
in whom the-king of-devotion his-own a-special proof
 ostendit, cum filio defuncto nepotem patri succedere
showed when the-son having-died the-grandson to-the-father to-succeed
 et neptes inter filias suas educari fecisset.
and the-granddaughters among daughters his-own to-be-brought-up he-had-caused
 Mortes filiorum ac filiae pro magnanimitate, qua
the-deaths of-the-sons and of-the-daughter for the-magnanimity in-which
 excellebat, minus patienter tulit, pietate videlicet, qua non
he-excelled less patiently he-bore by-devotion namely in-which not
 minus insignis erat, compulsus ad lacrimas. Nuntiato etiam
less distinguished he-was compelled to tears announced also
 sibi Hadriani Romani pontificis obitu, quem in amicis
to-himself of-Hadrian the-Roman pontiff the-death whom among friends
 praecipuum habebat, sic flevit, acsi fratrem aut carissimum
chief he-held so he-wept as-if a-brother or a-most-dear
 filium amisisset. Erat enim in amicitiiis optime temperatus,
son he-had-lost he-was for in friendships best tempered
 ut eas et facile admitteret et constantissime retineret,
so-that them both easily he-admitted and most-constantly retained
 colebatque sanctissime quoscumque hac adfinitate sibi
and-he-cherished most-devoutly whomever by-this tie to-himself

coniunxerat. Filiorum ac filiarum tantam in educando
be-had-joined of-the-sons and of-the-daughters such in educating
 curam habuit, ut numquam domi positus sine ipsis caenaret,
care be-had that never at-home placed without them be-dined
 numquam iter sine illis faceret. Adequitabant ei filii,
never a-journey without them be-made rode-beside him the-sons
 filiae vero pone sequebantur, quarum agmen extremum
the-daughters but behind followed of-whom the-column the-rear-most
 ex satellitum numero ad hoc ordinati tuebantur. Quae
from of-the-guards the-number for this appointed protected who
 cum pulcherrimae essent et ab eo plurimum diligerentur,
though most-beautiful they-were and by him very-much were-loved
 mirum dictu, quod nullam earum cuiquam aut suorum aut
wonderful to-say that none of-them to-anyone either of-his-own or
 exterorum nuptum dare voluit, sed omnes secum usque
of-foreigners in-marriage to-give he-wished but all with-himself all-the-way
 ad obitum suum in domo sua retinuit, dicens se earum
to the-death his-own in house his-own he-kept saying himself of-them
 contubernio carere non posse. Ac propter hoc, licet
company to-be-without not to-be-able and on-account-of this although
 alias felix, adversae fortunae malignitatem expertus est.
otherwise fortunate of-adverse fortune the-malignity experienced has
 Quod tamen ita dissimulavit, acsi de eis nulla umquam
which yet so he-dissembled as-if about them no ever
 alicuius probri suspicio exorta vel fama dispersa fuisset.
of-any disgrace suspicion arisen or report spread had-been

Pippin, Charles's son by a concubine, handsome but hunchbacked, conspires with some Frankish nobles while his father is wintering in Bavaria; when the plot is detected he is shorn and allowed the monastic life at Prüm. An earlier conspiracy in Germany ended with its leaders blinded or exiled, and only three killed, who resisted arrest. Queen Fastrada's cruelty is believed to have caused both. Otherwise Charles lives so beloved that no one ever charges him with unjust cruelty.

Erat ei filius nomine Pippinus ex concubina editus,
there-was to-him a-son by-name Pippin from a-concubine born
 cuius inter ceteros mentionem facere distuli, facie quidem
of-whom among the-others mention to-make I-have-postponed in-face indeed
 pulcher, sed gibbo deformis. Is, cum pater bello contra
handsome but by-a-hump deformed he when the-father the-war against
 Hunos suscepto in Baioaria hiemaret, aegritudine simulata,
the-Huns undertaken in Bavaria was-wintering with-sickness feigned
 cum quibusdam e primoribus Francorum, qui eum vana
with certain-men from the-chief-men of-the-Franks who him with-the-vain
 regni promissione inlexerant, adversus patrem coniuravit.
of-the-kingdom promise had-enticed against the-father conspired
 Quem post fraudem detectam et damnationem coniuratorum
whom after the-fraud detected and the-condemnation of-the-conspirators
 detonsum in coenobio Prumia religiosae vitae iamque volentem
shorn in the-monastery of-Prüm to-the-religious life and-now wishing
 vacare permisit. Facta est et alia prius contra eum in
to-devote-himself he-permitted made was also another earlier against him in
 Germania valida coniuratio. Cuius auctores partim luminibus
Germany powerful conspiracy whose authors partly of-their-eyes
 orbati, partim membris incolomes, omnes tamen exilio deportati
deprived partly in-limbs unharmed all yet in-exile deported
 sunt; neque ullus ex eis est interfectus nisi tres tantum; qui
were nor any of them was killed except three only who

cum se, ne comprehenderentur, strictis gladiis defenderent,
when themselves lest they-should-be-seized with-drawn swords they-were-defending
 aliquos etiam occidissent, quia aliter coerceri non poterant,
some even had-killed because otherwise to-be-restrained not they-could
 interempti sunt. Harum tamen coniurationum Fastradae reginae
slain were of-these yet conspiracies of-Fastrada the-queen
 crudelitas causa et origo extitisse creditur. Et idcirco in
the-cruelty the-cause and origin to-have-been is-believed and for-that-reason in
 ambabus contra regem conspiratum est, quia uxoris crudelitati
both against the-king conspired it-was because of-the-wife to-the-cruelty
 consentiens a suae naturae benignitate ac solita
consenting from of-his-own nature the-kindness and accustomed
 mansuetudine inmaniter exorbitasse videbatur. Ceterum per
gentleness monstrously to-have-swerved he-seemed for-the-rest through
 omne vitae suae tempus ita cum summo omnium amore atque
all of-life his-own the-time so with the-biggest of-all love and
 favore et domi et foris conversatus est, ut numquam ei
favor both at-home and abroad lived he-has that never to-him
 vel minima iniustae crudelitatis nota a quoquam fuisset obiecta.
even the-least of-unjust cruelty mark by anyone had-been charged

XXI • FOREIGNERS

Charles loves foreigners and takes great care to receive them, so that their numbers burden both the palace and the kingdom. He does not mind the weight, for the praise of his liberality and his good name repay the cost.

Amabat peregrinos et in eis suscipiendis magnam habebat
he-loved foreigners and in them receiving great he-had
 curam, adeo ut eorum multitudo non solum palatio,
care so that their multitude not only to-the-palace

verum etiam regno non inmerito videretur onerosa.
but also to-the-kingdom not undeservedly seemed burdensome
 Ipse tamen prae magnitudine animi huiuscemodi
he-himself yet because-of the-greatness of-mind of-this-kind
 pondere minime gravabatur, cum etiam ingentia incommoda
by-the-weight by-no-means was-burdened since even huge inconveniences
 laude liberalitatis ac bonae famae mercede compensaret.
with-the-praise of-liberality and of-good repute by-the-reward he-compensated

XXII · HIS APPEARANCE

Charles is big and tall, seven of his own feet, with a round head, big lively eyes, a long nose, white hair, and a glad face; his thick neck and belly are hidden by his proportions. His voice is clear but unsuited to his body. In his last years he has fevers, limps, and spurns doctors. He loves riding, hunting, and swimming in the hot springs at Aachen.

Corpore fuit amplo atque robusto, statura eminenti, quae
in-body he-was large and robust in-stature towering which
 tamen iustam non excederet — nam septem suorum
yet the-just-measure not exceeded for seven of-his-own
 pedum proceritatem eius constat habuisse mensuram—,
feet the-height of-him it-is-agreed to-have-had the-measure
 apice capitis rotundo, oculis praegrandibus ac vegetis,
with-the-top of-the-head round with-eyes very-large and lively
 naso paululum mediocritatem excedenti, canitie pulchra,
with-nose a-little the-middle-size exceeding with-gray-hair handsome
 facie laeta et hilari. Unde formae auctoritas ac dignitas
with-face glad and cheerful whence of-form authority and dignity
 tam stanti quam sedenti plurima adquirebatur;
as-much to-him-standing as to-him-sitting very-much was-acquired

quamquam cervix obesa et brevior venterque proiectior
although the-neck fat and rather-short and-the-belly rather-protruding
 videretur, tamen haec ceterorum membrorum celabat aequalitas.

seemed yet these of-the-other limbs concealed the-proportion

Incessu firmo totaque corporis habitudine virili; voce
in-gait firm and-in-the-whole of-the-body bearing manly in-voice
 clara quidem, sed quae minus corporis formae conveniret.

clear indeed but which less of-the-body to-the-form was-suited

Valitudine prospera, praeter quod, antequam decederet, per
in-health prosperous except that before he-died through
 quatuor annos crebro febribus corripiebatur, ad extremum

four years frequently by-fevers he-was-seized at the-last

etiam uno pede claudicaret. Et tunc quidem plura suo
even in-one foot he-limped and then indeed more-things by-bis-own
 arbitratu quam medicorum consilio faciebat, quos poene

judgment than of-the-physicians by-the-counsel he-did whom almost

exosos habebat, quod ei in cibis assa, quibus assuetus
bated he-held because to-him in foods the-roasts to-which accustomed
 erat, dimittere et elixis adsuescere suadebant.

he-was to-give-up and to-boiled-things to-grow-used they-urged

Exercebatur assidue equitando ac venando; quod illi
he-was-exercised constantly in-riding and hunting which to-him
 gentilicium erat, quia vix ulla in terris natio invenitur,

native was because scarcely any on earth nation is-found

quae in hac arte Francis possit aequari. Delectabatur
which in this art to-the-Franks can to-be-equaled he-was-delighted
 etiam vaporibus aquarum naturaliter calentium, frequenti

also by-the-steam of-waters naturally hot with-frequent

natatu corpus exercens; cuius adeo peritus fuit, ut nullus
swimming the-body exercising of-which so skilled he-was that no-one
 ei iuste valeat anteferri. Ob hoc etiam Aquisgrani

to-him justly may to-be-preferred for this also at-Aachen

regiam exstruxit ibique extremis vitae annis usque ad
a-palace he-built and-there in-the-last of-life years all-the-way to
 obitum perpetim habitavit. Et non solum filios ad balneum,
the-death continually lived and not only the-sons to the-bath
 verum optimates et amicos, aliquando etiam satellitum et
but the-nobles and friends sometimes even of-the-guards and
 custodum corporis turbam invitavit, ita ut nonnumquam
of-the-keepers of-the-body the-crowd he-invited so that sometimes
 centum vel eo amplius homines una lavarentur.
a-hundred or than-that more men together bathed

XXIII • HIS DRESS

Charles wears Frankish dress: a linen shirt and drawers, a silk-edged tunic, leggings, an otter or marten jerkin in winter, a blue cloak, and always a sword. He refuses foreign clothes, except at Rome, when Hadrian and then Leo persuade him to wear the long tunic and Roman shoes. On festivals he wears cloth of gold and a diadem; on other days his dress is a commoner's.

Vestitu patrio, id est Francico, utebatur. Ad corpus camisam
dress ancestral that is Frankish he-used next-to the-body a-shirt
 lineam, et feminalibus lineis induebatur, deinde tunicam, quae
linen and with-drawers linen he-was-clothed then a-tunic which
 limbo serico ambiebatur, et tibialia; tum fasciolis crura et
with-a-border silk was-edged and leggings then with-bands the-shins and
 pedes calciamentis constringebat et ex pellibus lutrinis vel
the-feet with-shoes he-bound and from skins of-otter or
 murinis thorace confecto umeros ac pectus hieme muniebat,
of-marten with-a-jerkin made the-shoulders and chest in-winter he-protected
 sago veneto amictus et gladio semper accinctus, cuius
with-a-cloak blue wrapped and with-a-sword always girded whose

capulus ac balteus aut aureus aut argenteus erat. Aliquoties
bilt and belt either gold or silver was sometimes
 et gemmato ense utebatur, quod tamen nonnisi in praecipuis
also a-jeweled sword he-used which yet only on chief
 festivitibus vel si quando exterarum gentium legati venissent.
festivals or if ever of-foreign peoples envoys had-come
 Peregrina vero indumenta, quamvis pulcherrima, respuebat
foreign but garments although most-beautiful he-rejected
 nec umquam eis indui patiebatur, excepto quod Romae
nor ever in-them to-be-clothed allowed except that at-Rome
 semel Hadriano pontifice petente et iterum Leone successore
once Hadrian the-pontiff asking and again Leo the-successor
 eius supplicante longa tunica et clamide amictus, calceis
of-him entreating with-a-long tunic and cloak wrapped with-shoes
 quoque Romano more formatis induebatur. In festivitibus
also in-Roman fashion shaped he-was-clothed on festivals
 veste auro texta et calciamentis gemmatis et fibula
in-a-garment with-gold woven and with-shoes jeweled and with-a-brooch
 aurea sagum adstringente, diademate quoque ex auro et
golden the-cloak fastening with-a-diadem also from gold and
 gemmis ornatus incedebat. Aliis autem diebus habitus eius
jewels adorned he-went-forth on-other but days the-dress of-him
 parum a communi ac plebeio abhorrebat.
little from the-common and plebeian differed

Charles is temperate in food and still more in drink, though he complains that fasting harms him. His dinner has four courses besides the roast he loves, and he listens meanwhile to histories or to Augustine's City of God. He rarely drinks more than three times at a meal, rests after the midday meal in summer, and bears lawsuits while being dressed.

In cibo et potu temperans, sed in potu temperantior, quippe
in food and drink temperate but in drink more-temperate since
qui ebrietatem in qualicumque homine, nedum in se
who drunkenness in any man much-less in himself
ac suis, plurimum abhominabatur. Cibo enim non adeo
and his-own very-much abhorred from-food for not so
abstinere poterat, ut saepe quereretur noxia corpori suo
to-abstain he-could that often he-complained harmful to-body his-own
esse ieiunia. Convivabatur rarissime, et hoc praecipuis tantum
to-be fasts he-feasted very-rarely and this on-chief only
festivitatibus, tunc tamen cum magno hominum numero.
festivals then yet with great of-men number
Caena cotidiana quaternis tantum ferculis praebebatur, praeter
the-dinner daily with-four only courses was-served besides
assam, quam venatores veribus inferre solebant, qua ille
the-roast which the-hunters on-spits to-bring-in were-accustomed which he
libentius quam ullo alio cibo vescebatur. Inter caenandum
more-gladly than any other food ate during dining
aut aliquod acroama aut lectorem audiebat. Legebantur
either some entertainment or a-reader he-heard there-were-read
ei historiae et antiquorum res gestae. Delectabatur et
to-him histories and of-the-ancients the-things done he-was-delighted also
libris sancti Augustini, praecipueque his qui de civitate
by-the-books of-saint Augustine and-especially by-these which on the-city

Dei praetitulati sunt. Vini et omnis potus adeo parcus in
of-God titled are of-wine and of-all drink so sparing in
 bibendo erat, ut super caenam raro plus quam ter biberet.
drinking he-was that over dinner rarely more than three-times he-drank
 Aestate post cibum meridianum pomorum aliquid sumens ac
in-summer after the-food midday of-fruits something taking and
 semel bibens, depositis vestibus et calciamentis, velut noctu
once drinking taken-off the-clothes and shoes as at-night
 solitus erat, duabus aut tribus horis quiescebat. Noctibus
accustomed he-was for-two or three hours he-rested at-night
 sic dormiebat, ut somnum quater aut quinques non solum
so he-slept that the-sleep four-times or five-times not only
 expergescendo, sed etiam desurgendo interromperet. Cum
by-waking but even by-getting-up he-interrupted when
 calciaretur et amicaretur, non tantum amicos admittebat,
he-was-being-shod and dressed not only friends he-admitted
 verum etiam, si comes palatii litem aliquam esse diceret,
but also if the-count of-the-palace lawsuit some to-be said
 quae sine eius iussu definiri non posset, statim litigantes
which without his order to-be-settled not could at-once the-litigants
 introducere iussit et, velut pro tribunali sederet, lite
to-bring-in he-ordered and as-if before the-tribunal he-were-sitting the-suit
 cognita sententiam dixit; nec hoc tantum eo tempore,
heard sentence he-pronounced nor this only at-that time
 sed etiam quicquid ea die cuiuslibet officii agendum aut
but even whatever on-that day of-any office to-be-done or
 cuiquam ministrorum iniungendum erat expediebat.
to-any of-the-ministers to-be-enjoined was he-dispatched

Charles speaks fluently, even talkatively. He prays in Latin as readily as in his own language and understands Greek better than he speaks it. He learns grammar from Peter of Pisa and the other arts from Albinus, called Alcuin, a Saxon from Britain, spending most effort on astronomy and on computing the courses of the stars. He tries to write, keeping tablets under his pillow, but begins too late and makes little progress.

Erat eloquentia copiosus et exuberans poteratque quicquid
he-was in-eloquence copious and overflowing and-he-could whatever
 vellet apertissime exprimere. Nec patrio tantum sermone
he-wished most-clearly to-express nor with-ancestral only speech
 contentus, etiam peregrinis linguis ediscendis operam
content even to-foreign languages to-be-learned effort
 impendit. In quibus Latinam ita didicit, ut aequè
he-applied among which Latin so he-learned that equally
 illa ac patria lingua orare sit solitus, Grecam vero
in-it as-in ancestral language to-pray he-was accustomed Greek but
 melius intellegere quam pronuntiare poterat. Adeo quidem
better to-understand than to-pronounce he-could so indeed
 facundus erat, ut etiam dicaculus appareret. Artes liberales
fluent he-was that even rather-talkative he-appeared the-arts liberal
 studiosissime coluit, earumque doctores plurimum veneratus
most-zealously he-cultivated and-of-them the-teachers very-much having-revered
 magnis adiciebat honoribus. In discenda grammatica Petrum
with-great he-endowed honors in learning grammar Peter
 Pisanum diaconem senem audivit, in ceteris disciplinis
of-Pisa the-deacon an-old-man he-heard in the-other disciplines
 Albinum cognomento Alcuinum, item diaconem, de Brittania
Albinus by-surname Alcuin likewise a-deacon from Britain
 Saxonici generis hominem, virum undecumque doctissimum,
of-Saxon stock a-man a-man in-every-respect most-learned

praeceptorem habuit, apud quem et rethoricae et dialecticae,
as-teacher he-had with whom both to-rhetoric and to-dialectic
 praecipue tamen astronomiae ediscendae plurimum et
especially yet to-astronomy to-be-learned very-much both
 temporis et laboris impertivit. Discebat artem computandi
of-time and of-labor he-imparted he-learned the-art of-computing
 et intentione sagaci siderum cursum curiosissime rimabatur.
and with-attention sbrewd of-the-stars the-course most-curiously he-searched-out
 Temptabat et scribere tabulasque et codicellos ad hoc
he-attempted also to-write and-tablets and notebooks for this
 in lecto sub cervicalibus circumferre solebat, ut, cum
in bed under the-pillows to-carry-about he-was-accustomed that when
 vacuum tempus esset, manum litteris effigiendis adsuesceret,
free time there-was the-hand to-letters to-be-formed he-might-accustom
 sed parum successit labor praeposterus ac sero inchoatus.
but little succeeded the-labor misplaced and late begun

XXVI • HIS RELIGION

Charles practices the Christian religion devoutly. He builds the basilica at Aachen with columns and marble brought from Rome and Ravenna and adorns it with gold, silver, and bronze. He attends church morning, evening, and at night, provides sacred vessels and vestments in abundance, and reforms the reading and chanting, in which he is learned, though he sings only softly.

Religionem Christianam, qua ab infantia fuerat inbutus,
the-religion Christian with-which from infancy he-had-been imbued
 sanctissime et cum summa pietate coluit, ac propter hoc
most-devoutly and with the-highest piety he-cultivated and on-account-of this
 plurimae pulchritudinis basilicam Aquisgrani exstruxit auroque
of-very-great beauty a-basilica at-Aachen he-built and-with-gold

et argento et luminaribus atque ex aere solido cancellis
and silver and with-lamps and from bronze solid with-railings
 et ianuis adornavit. Ad cuius structuram cum columnas et
and doors be-adorned for whose construction when columns and
 marmora aliunde habere non posset, Roma atque Ravenna
marbles from-elsewhere to-have not be-could from-Rome and Ravenna
 devehenda curavit. Ecclesiam et mane et vespere, item
to-be-brought he-took-care the-church both morning and evening likewise
 nocturnis horis et sacrificii tempore, quoad eum validudo
in-the-night hours and of-the-sacrifice at-the-time as-far-as him health
 permiserat, inpigre frequentabat, curabatque magnopere, ut
had-permitted untiringly be-frequented and-he-took-care greatly that
 omnia quae in ea gerebantur cum qua maxima fierent
all-things which in it were-done with as greatest-possible might-be-done
 honestate, aedituos creberrime commonens, ne quid indecens
honor the-sacristans very-often admonishing lest anything unseemly
 aut sordidum aut inferri aut in ea remanere permetterent.
or filthy either to-be-brought-in or in it to-remain they-should-allow
 Sacrorum vasorum ex auro et argento vestimentorumque
of-sacred vessels from gold and silver and-of-vestments
 sacerdotalium tantam in ea copiam procuravit, ut in sacrificiis
priestly such in it abundance he-provided that in sacrifices
 celebrandis ne ianitoribus quidem, qui ultimi ecclesiastici
to-be-celebrated not for-the-doorkeepers even who the-last of-the-ecclesiastical
 ordinis sunt, privato habitu ministrare necesse fuisset.
order are in-private dress to-minister necessary would-have-been
 Legendi atque psallendi disciplinam diligentissime emendavit.
of-reading and of-chanting the-discipline most-diligently he-amended
 Erat enim utriusque admodum eruditus, quamquam ipse nec
he-was for in-both very learned although he-himself neither
 publice legeret nec nisi submissim et in commune cantaret.
publicly read nor except in-a-low-voice and in common sang

Charles gives alms generously, not only in his own kingdom but to the Christians of Syria, Egypt, Africa, Jerusalem, Alexandria, and Carthage, and seeks the friendship of foreign kings chiefly to relieve the Christians under their rule. He loves above all the church of Saint Peter at Rome, which he enriches with gold, silver, and jewels, and wishes Rome restored to its old authority. Yet in forty-seven years he goes there only four times.

Circa pauperes sustentandos et gratuitam liberalitatem, quam
about the-poor to-be-supported and free liberality which
 Greci eleimosinam vocant, devotissimus, ut qui non in
the-Greeks alms call most-devoted as one-who not in
 patria solum et in suo regno id facere curaverit,
the-homeland only and in his-own kingdom this to-do took-care
 verum trans maria in Syriam et Aegyptum atque Africam,
but across the-seas into Syria and Egypt and Africa
 Hierosolimis, Alexandriae atque Cartagini, ubi Christianos in
at-Jerusalem at-Alexandria and at-Carthage where the-Christians in
 paupertate vivere conpererat, penuriae illorum conpatiens
poverty to-live he-had-learned with-the-poverty of-them sympathizing
 pecuniam mittere solebat; ob hoc maxime transmarinorum
money to-send he-was-accustomed for this chiefly of-overseas
 regum amicitias expetens, ut Christianis sub eorum dominatu
kings the-friendships seeking that to-the-Christians under their dominion
 degentibus refrigerium aliquod ac relevatio proveniret.
living refreshment some and relief might-come
 Colebat prae ceteris sacris et venerabilibus locis apud Romam
be-honored before the-other sacred and venerable places at Rome
 ecclesiam beati Petri apostoli; in cuius donaria magna
the-church of-blessed Peter the-apostle into whose treasury a-great
 vis pecuniae tam in auro quam in argento necnon et
amount of-money as-much in gold as in silver and-also also

gemmis ab illo congesta est. Multa et innumera pontificibus
in-jewels by him gathered was many and countless to-the-pontiffs
 munera missa. Neque ille toto regni sui tempore
gifts sent nor he in-the-whole of-reign his-own time
 quicquam duxit antiquius, quam ut urbs Roma sua
anything held more-important than that the-city Rome by-his-own
 opera suoque labore vetere polleret auctoritate, et
effort and-by-his-own labor with-ancient should-be-strong authority and
 ecclesia sancti Petri per illum non solum tuta ac defensa,
the-church of-saint Peter through him not only safe and defended
 sed etiam suis opibus prae omnibus ecclesiis esset ornata
but even by-his-own wealth before all churches should-be adorned
 atque ditata. Quam cum tanti penderet, tamen intra XLVII
and enriched which though so-much he-valued yet within forty-seven
 annorum, quibus regnaverat, spatium quater tantum illo
of-years in-which he-had-reigned the-space four-times only thither
 votorum solvendorum ac supplicandi causa profectus est.
of-vows to-be-fulfilled and of-supplicating for-the-sake set-out he-has

XXVIII · EMPEROR

Charles's last visit to Rome comes after the Romans have attacked Pope Leo, putting out his eyes and cutting out his tongue. Charles spends the winter restoring order and receives the titles of emperor and augustus, which he dislikes so much that he says he would not have entered the church had he known the pope's plan. He bears the eastern emperors' resentment patiently.

Ultimi adventus sui non solum hae fuere causae, verum
of-the-last coming his-own not only these were the-causes but
 etiam quod Romani Leonem pontificem multis affectum
also that the-Romans Leo the-pontiff with-many afflicted

iniuriis, erutis scilicet oculis linguaque amputata, fidem
injuries torn-out namely the-eyes and-the-tongue cut-off the-protection
 regis implorare compulerunt. Idcirco Romam veniens propter
of-the-king to-implore they-compelled therefore to-Rome coming for
 reparandum, qui nimis conturbatus erat, ecclesiae statum
restoring which too-much disturbed was of-the-church the-state
 ibi totum hiemis tempus extraxit. Quo tempore imperatoris
there the-whole of-winter the-time he-drew-out at-which time of-emperor
 et augusti nomen accepit. Quod primo in tantum aversatus
and of-augustus the-name he-received which at-first to such-a-degree loathed
 est, ut affirmaret se eo die, quamvis praecipua festivitas
he-has that he-affirmed himself on-that day although a-chief festival
 esset, ecclesiam non intraturum, si pontificis consilium
it-was the-church not about-to-enter if of-the-pontiff the-plan
 praescire potuisset. Invidiam tamen suscepti nominis,
to-foreknow he-had-been-able the-odium yet of-the-assumed name
 Romanis imperatoribus super hoc indignantibus, magna tulit
the-Roman emperors over this being-indignant with-great he-bore
 patientia. Vicitque eorum contumaciam magnanimitate,
patience and-he-overcame their defiance by-the-magnanimity
 qua eis procul dubio longe praestantior erat, mittendo
in-which to-them far from-doubt far more-outstanding he-was by-sending
 ad eos crebras legationes et in epistolis fratres eos appellando.
to them frequent embassies and in letters brothers them calling

As emperor Charles plans to reconcile and correct the Franks' two codes of law, but only adds a few incomplete chapters; he has the unwritten laws of his peoples written down. He has the ancient songs of the old kings' wars written down and begins a grammar of his native tongue. He gives the months and the twelve winds Frankish names, which Einhard lists.

Post susceptum imperiale nomen, cum adverteret multa
 after assumed the-imperial name when he-noticed many-things
 legibus populi sui deesse — nam Franci duas habent
 from-the-laws of-people his-own to-be-lacking for the-Franks two have
 leges, in plurimis locis valde diversas — cogitavit quae
 laws in very-many places very different he-planned what-things
 deerant addere et discrepantia unire, prava quoque ac
 were-lacking to-add and the-discrepant to-unite the-wrong also and
 perperam prolata corrigere, sed de his nihil aliud ab eo factum
 wrongly brought-forth to-correct but of these nothing else by him done
 est, nisi quod pauca capitula, et ea imperfecta, legibus addidit.
 was except that few chapters and those imperfect to-the-laws be-added
 Omnium tamen nationum, quae sub eius dominatu erant,
 of-all yet of-the-nations which under his dominion were
 iura quae scripta non erant describere ac litteris mandari
 the-laws which written not were to-write-down and to-letters to-be-entrusted
 fecit. Item barbara et antiquissima carmina, quibus veterum
 he-caused likewise the-barbarous and most-ancient songs in-which of-the-old
 regum actus et bella canebantur, scripsit memoriaeque
 kings the-acts and wars were-sung he-wrote-down and-to-memory
 mandavit. Inchoavit et grammaticam patrii sermonis.
 entrusted he-began also a-grammar of-the-ancestral speech

Mensibus etiam iuxta propriam linguam vocabula inposuit,
on-the-months also according-to their-own language names he-imposed
 cum ante id temporis apud Francos partim Latinis,
since before that of-time among the-Franks partly by-Latin
 partim barbaris nominibus pronuntiarentur. Item ventos
partly by-barbarous names they-were-called likewise the-winds
 duodecim propriis appellationibus insignivit, cum prius
twelve with-their-own names he-marked since before
 non amplius quam vix quattuor ventorum vocabula possent
not more than scarcely four of-winds names could
 inveniri. Et de mensibus quidem Ianuarius Wintarmanoth,
to-be-found and of the-months indeed January Winter-month
 Februarium Hornung, Martium Lentzinmanoth, Aprilem
February Hornung March Spring-month April
 Ostarmanoth, Maium Winnemanoth, Iunium Brachmanoth,
Easter-month May Pasture-month June Fallow-month
 Iulium Heuuimanoth, Augustum Aranmanoth, Septembrem
July Hay-month August Harvest-month September
 Witumanoth, Octobrem Windumemanoth, Novembrem
Wood-month October Vintage-month November
 Herbistmanoth, Decembrem Heilagmanoth appellavit. Ventis
Autumn-month December Holy-month he-called on-the-winds
 vero hoc modo nomina inposuit, ut subsolanum vocaret
but in-this way names he-imposed that the-subsolanus he-should-call
 ostroniwint, eurum ostsundroni, euroastrum sundostroni,
east-wind the-eurus east-south-wind the-euroauster south-east-wind
 austrum sundroni, austroafricanum sundwestroni, africanum
the-auster south-wind the-austroafrican south-west-wind the-african
 westsundroni, zefyrum westroni, chorum westnordroni, circium
west-south-wind the-zephyr west-wind the-corus west-north-wind the-circius

nordwestroni, septentrionem nordroni, aquilonem nordostroni,
north-west-wind the-septentrio north-wind the-aquilo north-east-wind
 vulturnum ostnordroni
the-vulturnus east-north-wind

XXX · LOUIS CROWNED, AND THE DEATH OF CHARLES

Old and ill, Charles summons his son Louis, king of Aquitaine, and before the nobles makes him partner in the kingdom and heir to the imperial title, setting the diadem on his head. Then he goes hunting near Aachen. In January he takes to his bed with a fever, and pleurisy follows. On the seventh day, having received communion, he dies, in his seventy-second year.

Extremo vitae tempore, cum iam et morbo et senectute
in-the-last of-life time when already both by-disease and by-old-age
 premeretur, evocatum ad se Hludowicum filium, Aquitaniae
he-was-pressed summoned to himself Louis the-son of-Aquitaine
 regem, qui solus filiorum Hildigardae supererat, congregatis
the-king who alone of-the-sons of-Hildegard survived gathered
 sollemniter de toto regno Francorum primoribus, cunctorum
solemnly from the-whole kingdom of-the-Franks the-chief-men of-all
 consilio consortem sibi totius regni et imperialis
by-the-counsel partner to-himself of-the-whole kingdom and of-the-imperial
 nominis heredem constituit, inpositoque capiti eius diadematē
name heir he-established and-placed on-the-head of-him the-diadem
 imperatorem et augustum iussit appellari. Susceptum est
emperor and augustus he-ordered to-be-called received was
 hoc eius consilium ab omnibus qui aderant magno cum
this his plan by all who were-present great with
 favore; nam divinitus ei propter regni utilitatem
favor for divinely to-him for of-the-kingdom the-benefit

videbatur inspiratum. Auxitque maiestatem eius hoc factum
it-seemed inspired and-it-increased the-majesty of-him this deed
et exteris nationibus non minimum terroris incussit. Dimisso
and on-foreign nations not the-least of-terror struck sent-off
deinde in Aquitaniam filio, ipse more solito, quamvis
then into Aquitaine the-son he-himself in-the-manner accustomed although
senectute confectus, non longe a regia Aquensi venatum
by-old-age worn-out not far from the-palace at-Aachen to-hunt
proficiscitur, exactoque in huiuscemodi negotio quod reliquum
sets-out and-spent in of-this-kind business what remaining
erat autumnī, circa Kalendas Novembris Aquasgrani revertitur.
was of-autumn about the-Kalends of-November to-Aachen he-returns
Cumque ibi hiemaret, mense Ianuario febre valida
and-when there he-was-wintering in-the-month of-January by-a-fever strong
correptus decubuit. Qui statim, ut in febris solebat,
seized he-took-to-bed who at-once as in fevers he-was-accustomed
cibi sibi abstinentiam indixit, arbitratus hac continentia
of-food on-himself abstinence imposed having-judged by-this continence
morbum posse depelli vel certe mitigari. Sed accedente
the-disease to-be-able to-be-driven-off or at-least to-be-mitigated but coming-on
ad febrem lateris dolore, quem Greci pleuresin dicunt,
to the-fever of-the-side a-pain which the-Greeks pleurisy call
illoque adhuc inedia retinente neque corpus aliter quam
and-he still fasting keeping nor the-body otherwise than
rarissimo potu sustentante, septimo, postquam decubuit,
by-very-rare drink sustaining on-the-seventh after he-took-to-bed
die, sacra communione percepta, decessit, anno aetatis
day the-holy communion received he-died in-the-year of-age
suae septuagesimo secundo et ex quo regnare coeperat
his-own seventieth second and from when to-reign he-had-begun

quadragésimo septimo, V. Kal. Februarii, hora
fortieth seventh on-the-fifth Kalends of-February at-the-hour
 diei tertia.
of-the-day third

XXXI · HIS BURIAL

Charles's body is washed and borne to the church amid great mourning. With no word from him on it, all choose the basilica he built at Aachen, and he is buried there that day. A gilded arch with his image and an inscription rises over the tomb, calling him great and orthodox, who enlarged the kingdom of the Franks, and dating his death to 814.

Corpus more sollemni lotum et curatum et maximo
the-body in-the-manner solemn washed and cared-for and with-the-greatest
 totius populi luctu ecclesiae inlatum atque humatum
of-the-whole people grief into-the-church carried and buried
 est. Dubitatum est primo, ubi reponi deberet, eo quod
was doubted it-was at-first where to-be-laid it-ought for-this that
 ipse vivus de hoc nihil praecepisset. Tandem omnium
he-himself living about this nothing had-directed at-last of-all
 animis sedit nusquam eum honestius tumulari posse
in-the-minds it-settled nowhere him more-honorably to-be-entombed to-be-able
 quam in ea basilica, quam ipse propter amorem Dei
than in that basilica which he-himself on-account-of the-love of-God
 et domini nostri Iesu Christi et ob honorem sanctae et
and of-the-Lord our Jesus Christ and for the-honor of-the-holy and
 aeternae virginis, genetricis eius, proprio sumptu in eodem
eternal virgin the-mother of-him at-his-own expense in the-same
 vico construxit. In hac sepultus est eadem die, qua
town built in this buried he-was on-the-same day on-which

defunctus est, arcusque supra tumulum deauratus cum imagine
died has and-an-arch over the-tomb gilded with an-image
et titulo exstructus. Titulus ille hoc modo descriptus
and inscription built-up the-inscription that in-this manner written
est: SUB HOC CONDITORIO SITUM EST CORPUS
was under this tomb laid is the-body
KAROLI MAGNI ATQUE ORTHODOXI IMPERATORIS,
of-Charles the-Great and orthodox emperor
QUI REGNUM FRANCORUM NOBILITER AMPLIAVIT
who the-kingdom of-the-Franks nobly enlarged
ET PER ANNOS XLVII FELICITER REXIT. DECESSIT
and through years forty-seven prosperously ruled he-died
SEPTUAGENARIUS ANNO [DOMINI DCCCXIII],
a-seventy-year-old in-the-year of-the-Lord eight-hundred-fourteen
INDICTIONE [VII], V. KAL. FEBR.
in-the-indiction seventh on-the-fifth Kalends of-February

XXXII • PORTENTS

Many portents foretell his death: eclipses for three years, the collapse of the portico at Aachen, the burning of the Rhine bridge at Mainz, and a meteor on his last campaign, after which his horse falls and throws him. The palace shakes, lightning strikes the basilica, and the word “princeps” fades from an inscription naming him. Charles ignores them all.

Adpropinquantis finis conplura fuere prodigia, ut non
of-the-approaching end very-many there-were portents so-that not
solum alii, sed etiam ipse hoc minitari sentiret. Per tres
only others but even he-himself this to-threaten felt through three
continuos vitaeque termino proximos annos et solis et
continuous and-of-life to-the-end nearest years both of-the-sun and

lunae creberrima defectio et in sole macula quaedam atri
of-the-moon a-very-frequent eclipse and on the-sun a-spot a-certain of-black
 coloris septem dierum spatio visa. Porticus, quam inter
color of-seven days for-the-space seen the-portico which between
 basilicam et regiam operosa mole construxerat, die
the-basilica and the-palace with-laborious mass he-had-built on-the-day
 ascensionis Domini subita ruina usque ad fundamenta
of-the-ascension of-the-Lord in-sudden collapse all-the-way to the-foundations
 conlapsa. Item pons Rheni apud Mogontiacum, quem
fallen likewise the-bridge of-the-Rhine at Mainz which
 ipse per decem annos ingenti labore et opere mirabili
he-himself through ten years with-huge labor and with-work wonderful
 de ligno ita construxit, ut perenniter durare posse videretur,
of wood so built that perpetually to-last to-be-able it-seemed
 ita tribus horis fortuitu incendio conflagravit, ut, praeter
so in-three hours by-accidental fire burned-down that except
 quod aqua tegebatur, ne una quidem astula ex eo remaneret.
what by-water was-covered not one even splinter of it remained
 Ipse quoque, cum ultimam in Saxoniam expeditionem
he-himself also when the-last into Saxony expedition
 contra Godofridum regem Danorum ageret, quadam die,
against Godfred king of-the-Danes he-was-conducting on-a-certain day
 cum ante exortum solis castris egressus iter agere
when before the-rising of-the-sun from-the-camp having-gone-out journey to-make
 coepisset, vidit repente delapsam caelitus cum ingenti lumine
he-had-begun he-saw suddenly fallen from-heaven with huge light
 facem a dextra in sinistram per serenum aera transcurrere.
a-torch from the-right to the-left through the-clear air to-run-across
 Cunctisque hoc signum, quid portenderet, ammirantibus,
and-all this sign what it-might-portend wondering
 subito equus, quem sedebat, capite deorsum merso decedit
suddenly the-horse which he-sat-on with-head downward plunged fell

eumque tam graviter ad terram elisit, ut, fibula sagi
and-him so heavily to the-ground dashed that the-brooch of-the-cloak
 rupta balteoque gladii dissipato, a festinantibus qui aderant
broken and-the-belt of-the-sword torn-apart by the-hastening who were-present
 ministris exarmatus et sine amiculo levaretur. Iaculum etiam,
attendants disarmed and without cloak he-was-lifted the-javelin also
 quod tunc forte manu tenebat, ita elapsum est, ut viginti
which then by-chance in-hand he-was-holding so slipped was that twenty
 vel eo amplius pedum spatio longe iaceret. Accessit
or than-that more of-feet for-the-space far-off it-lay there-was-added
 ad hoc creber Aquensis palatii tremor et in domibus, ubi
to this frequent of-the-Aachen palace trembling and in the-houses where
 conversabatur, assiduus laqueariorum crepitus. Tacta etiam de
he-lived constant of-the-ceilings creaking struck also from
 caelo, in qua postea sepultus est, basilica, malumque aureum,
heaven in which afterward buried he-was the-basilica and-the-apple golden
 quo tecti culmen erat ornatum, ictu fulminis
with-which of-the-roof the-top was adorned by-the-stroke of-lightning
 dissipatum et supra domum pontificis, quae basilicae
shattered and over the-house of-the-bishop which to-the-basilica
 contigua erat, proiectum est. Erat in eadem basilica in
adjoining was thrown was there-was in the-same basilica on
 margine coronae, quae inter superiores et inferiores arcus
the-edge of-the-cornice which between the-upper and lower arches
 interiorem aedis partem ambiebat, epigramma sinopide
the-inner of-the-building part went-around an-inscription in-red-ochre
 scriptum, continens, quis auctor esset eiusdem templi, cuius
written containing who the-author was of-the-same temple of-which
 in extremo versu legebatur: KAROLUS PRINCEPS. Notatum
in the-last line was-read Charles prince noted
 est a quibusdam eodem, quo decessit, anno paucis
it-was by certain-men in-the-same in-which he-died year few

ante mortem mensibus eas, quae PRINCEPS exprimebant,
before the-death months those which prince expressed
 litteras ita esse deletas, ut penitus non apparerent. Sed
letters so to-have-been effaced that utterly not they-appeared but
 superiora omnia sic aut dissimulavit aut spreuit, acsi nihil
the-above all so either be-dissembled or scorned as-if nothing
 horum ad res suas quolibet modo pertineret.
of-these to affairs his-own in-any way pertained

XXXIII · THE WILL

Charles begins wills too late to finish them. Three years before his death he divides his treasure before witnesses, and Einhard copies the record of 811. Two thirds go as alms to the twenty-one metropolitan sees; a third serves him for life, then is divided four ways. His books are sold for the poor, two silver tables go to Rome and Ravenna, and Louis fulfills it all.

Testamenta facere instituit, quibus filias et ex
wills to-make he-undertook by-which the-daughters and from
 concubinis liberos ex aliqua parte sibi heredes faceret,
concubines the-children in some part to-himself heirs he-might-make
 sed tarde inchoata perfici non poterant. Divisionem
but late begun to-be-completed not they-could the-division
 tamen thesaurorum et pecuniae ac vestium aliaque
yet of-the-treasures and of-the-money and of-the-garments and-of-the-other
 suppellectilis coram amicis et ministris suis annis tribus,
furnishings before friends and attendants his-own years three
 antequam decederet, fecit, contestatus eos, ut post
before he-died he-made having-called-to-witness them that after
 obitum suum a se facta distributio per illorum suffragium
the-death his-own by himself made the-distribution through their support

rata permaneret. Quidque ex his quae diviserat fieri
ratified might-remain and-what of these-things which he-had-divided to-be-done
 vellet, breviario comprehendit; cuius ratio ac textus talis est:
he-wished in-a-summary he-comprised whose plan and text such is
 IN NOMINE DOMINI DEI OMNIPOTENTIS, PATRIS
in the-name of-the-Lord God almighty of-the-Father
 ET FILII ET SPIRITUS SANCTI. Descriptio atque divisio,
and of-the-Son and of-the-Spirit Holy the-description and division
 quae facta est a gloriosissimo atque piissimo domno Karolo
which made was by the-most-glorious and most-pious lord Charles
 imperatore augusto anno ab incarnatione domini nostri
emperor augustus in-the-year from the-incarnation of-the-Lord our
 Iesu Christi DCCC^oXI^o, anno vero regni eius in
Jesus Christ eight-hundred-eleventh in-the-year but of-the-reign of-him in
 Francia XL^oIII^o et in Italia XXX^oVI^o, imperii autem XI^o,
Francia forty-third and in Italy thirty-sixth of-the-empire moreover eleventh
 indictione IIII^a, quam pia et prudenti consideratione facere
in-the-indiction fourth which with-pious and prudent consideration to-make
 decrevit et Domino annuente perfecit de thesauris suis atque
he-decided and the-Lord assenting completed of treasures his-own and
 pecunia, quae in illa die in camera eius inventa est. In qua
money which on that day in the-chamber of-him found was in which
 illud praecipue praecavere voluit, ut non solum eleemosinarum
this especially to-provide he-wished that not only of-als
 largitio, quae sollemniter apud Christianos de possessionibus
the-bestowal which solemnly among Christians from the-posessions
 eorum agitur, pro se quoque de sua pecunia ordine
of-them is-done for himself also from his-own money in-order
 atque ratione perficeretur, sed etiam ut heredes sui omni
and by-plan should-be-completed but also that the-heirs his-own all
 ambiguitate remota, quid ad se pertinere deberet, liquido
ambiguity removed what to themselves to-belong ought clearly

cognoscere et sine lite atque contentione sua inter
to-know and without lawsuit and contention their-own-things among
 se competenti partitione dividere potuissent.
themselves by-fitting division to-divide might-be-able
 Hac igitur intentione atque proposito omnem substantiam
with-this therefore intention and purpose all the-substance
 atque suppellectilem suam, quae in auro et argento gemmisque
and furnishings his-own which in gold and silver and-jewels
 et ornatu regio in illa, ut dictum est, die in camera eius
and adornment royal on that as said it-has-been day in the-chamber of-him
 poterat inveniri, primo quidem trina divisione partitus est.
could to-be-found first indeed in-a-threelfold division divided he-has
 Deinde easdem partes subdividendo de duabus partibus XX
then the-same parts by-subdividing of two parts twenty
 et unam partem fecit, tertiam integram reservavit. Et duarum
and one parts he-made the-third whole he-reserved and of-the-two
 quidem partium in XX et unam partem facta divisio
indeed parts into twenty and one parts made the-division
 tali ratione consistit, ut, quia in regno illius metropolitanae
in-such way consists that because in kingdom his metropolitan
 civitates XX et una esse noscuntur, unaquaeque illarum
cities twenty and one to-be are-known each of-those
 partium ad unamquamque metropolim per manus heredum
parts to each metropolis through the-hands of-heirs
 et amicorum suorum eleimosinae nomine perveniat, et
and of-friends his-own of-alms in-the-name may-come and
 archiepiscopus, qui tunc illius ecclesiae rector extiterit, partem
the-archbishop who then of-that church ruler shall-have-been the-part
 quae ad suam ecclesiam data est suscipiens cum suis
which to his-own church given has-been receiving with his-own
 suffraganeis partiatur, eo scilicet modo, ut pars tertia suae
suffragans may-divide in-that namely way that a-part third his-own

sit ecclesiae, duae vero partes inter suffraganeos dividantur.
may-be church's two but parts among the-suffragans may-be-divided
 Harum divisionum, quae ex duabus primis partibus factae
of-these divisions which from the-two first parts made
 sunt et iuxta metropoleorum civitatum numerum XX
are and according-to of-the-metropolitan cities the-number twenty
 et una esse noscuntur, unaquaeque ab altera sequestrata
and one to-be are-known each from the-other separated
 semotim in suo repositoio cum superscriptione civitatis, ad
apart in its-own repository with the-superscription of-the-city to
 quam perferenda est, recondita iacet. Nomina metropoleorum,
which to-be-carried it-is stored lies the-names of-the-metropolises
 ad quas eadem eleimosina sive largitio facienda est, haec
to which the-same alms or bestowal to-be-made is these
 sunt: Roma, Ravenna, Mediolanum, Forum Iulii, Gradus,
are Rome Ravenna Milan Forum Iulii Grado
 Colonia, Mogontiacus, Iuvavum quae et Salzburc, Treveri,
Cologne Mainz Juvavum which also Salzburg Trier
 Senones, Vesontio, Lugdunum, Ratumagus, Remi, Arelas,
Sens Besançon Lyon Rouen Reims Arles
 Vienna, Darantasia, Ebrodunum, Burdigala, Turones, Bituriges.
Vienne Moutiers Embrun Bordeaux Tours Bourges
 Unius autem partis, quam integram reservari voluit, talis est
of-the-one moreover part which whole to-be-reserved he-wished such is
 ratio, ut, illis duabus in supradictas divisiones distributis
the-plan that those two into the-above-mentioned divisions distributed
 et sub sigillo reconditis, haec tertia in usu cotidiano
and under seal stored this third in use daily
 versaretur, velut res, quam nulla voti obligatione a
should-be-employed as a-thing which by-no of-vow obligation from
 dominio possidentis alienatam esse constaret, et hoc tamdiu,
the-ownership of-the-possessor alienated to-be it-was-agreed and this so-long

quoadusque vel ille mansisset in corpore vel usum
until-such-time-as either he should-have-remained in the-body or the-use
 eius sibi necessarium iudicaret. Post obitum vero suum
of-it to-himself necessary should-judge after the-death but his-own
 aut voluntariam saecularium rerum carentiam eadem pars
or voluntary of-secular things renunciation the-same part
 quattuor subdivisionibus secaretur, et una quidem earum
into-four subdivisions should-be-cut and one indeed of-them
 supradictis XX et unae partibus adderetur, altera a
to-the-above-mentioned twenty and one parts should-be-added the-second by
 filiis ac filiabus suis filiisque ac filiabus filiorum suorum
the-sons and daughters his-own and-the-sons and daughters of-the-sons his-own
 adsumpta iusta et rationabili inter eos partitione divideretur,
taken-up by-just and reasonable among them division should-be-divided
 tertia vero consueto Christianis more in usum pauperum
the-third but in-the-accustomed for-Christians manner to the-use of-the-poor
 fuisset erogata, quarta simili modo nomine eleimosinae
should-have-been paid-out the-fourth in-similar way in-the-name of-alsms
 in servorum et ancillarum usibus palatii famulantium
for of-the-servants and of-the-maidservants to-the-uses of-the-palace serving
 sustentationem distributa veniret. Ad hanc tertiam totius
the-sustenance distributed should-come to this third of-the-whole
 summae portionem, quae similiter ut ceterae ex auro et
sum portion which likewise as the-others from gold and
 argento constat, adiungi voluit omnia ex aere et ferro
silver consists to-be-joined he-wished all of bronze and iron
 aliisque metallis vasa atque utensilia cum armis et vestibus
and-other metals vessels and utensils with arms and garments
 alioque aut pretioso aut vili ad varios usus facto suppellectili,
and-other either precious or cheap for various uses made furnishings
 ut sunt cortinae, stragula, tapetia, filtra, coria, sagmata, et
as are curtains coverlets carpets felts hides pack-saddles and

quicquid in camera atque vestiario eius eo die fuisset
whatever in the-chamber and wardrobe of-him on-that day should-have-been
 inventum, ut ex hoc maiores illius partis divisiones fierent
found that from this greater of-that part the-divisions might-be-made
 et erogatio eleemosinae ad plures pervenire potuisset.
and the-paying-out of-alms to more to-reach might-be-able
 Capellam, id est ecclesiasticum ministerium, tam id quod
the-chapel that is the-church service as-much that which
 ipse fecit atque congregavit, quam quod ad eum ex paterna
he-himself made and gathered as what to him from paternal
 hereditate pervenit, ut integrum esset neque ulla divisione
inheritance came that whole it-should-be nor by-any division
 scinderetur, ordinavit. Si qua autem invenirentur aut vasa aut
be-cut be-ordained if any moreover should-be-found either vessels or
 libri aut alia ornamenta, quae liquido constaret eidem capellae
books or other ornaments which clearly it-was-agreed to-the-same chapel
 ab eo conlata non fuisse, haec qui habere vellet dato iustae
by him conferred not to-have-been these who to-have might-wish given of-a-just
 aestimationis pretio emeret et haberet. Similiter et de libris,
valuation the-price should-buy and have likewise also about the-books
 quorum magnam in bibliotheca sua copiam congregavit,
of-which a-great in library his-own abundance he-gathered
 statuit, ut ab his qui eos habere vellent iusto pretio
be-decreed that by these who them to-have might-wish at-a-just price
 fuissent redempti, pretiumque in pauperibus erogatum.
they-should-have-been bought-back and-the-price on the-poor paid-out
 Inter ceteros thesauros atque pecuniam tres mensas argenteas
among the-other treasures and money three tables silver
 et auream unam praecipuae magnitudinis et ponderis
and golden one of-special size and weight
 esse constat. De quibus statuit atque decrevit, ut una
to-be it-is-agreed of which he-decreed and determined that one

ex his, quae forma quadrangula descriptionem urbis
of these which in-form square a-description of-the-city
 Constantinopolitanae continet, inter cetera donaria, quae ad
of-Constantinople contains among the-other gifts which for
 hoc deputata sunt, Romam ad basilicam beati Petri apostoli
this designated are to-Rome to the-basilica of-blessed Peter the-apostle
 deferatur, et altera, quae forma rotunda Romanae urbis
should-be-carried and the-second which in-form round of-the-Roman city
 effigie figurata est, episcopo Ravennatis ecclesiae
with-an-image figured is to-the-bishop's-house of-the-Ravenna church
 conferatur. Tertiam, quae ceteris et operis pulchritudine et
should-be-conferred the-third which the-others both of-work in-beauty and
 ponderis gravitate multum excellit, quae ex tribus orbibus
of-weight in-heaviness much excels which from three circles
 conexa totius mundi descriptionem subtili ac minuta
joined of-the-whole world a-description in-fine and minute
 figuratione conplectitur, et auream illam, quae quarta esse
figuring embraces and the-golden that-one which fourth to-be
 dicta est, in tertiae illius et inter heredes suos atque
said has-been in of-the-third that and among heirs his-own and
 in eleimosinam dividendae partis augmento esse constituit.
into alms to-be-divided part as-increase to-be be-established
 Hanc constitutionem atque ordinationem coram episcopis,
this constitution and ordinance before bishops
 abbatibus comitibusque, qui tunc praesentes esse potuerunt,
abbots and-counts who then present to-be could
 quorumque hic nomina descripta sunt, fecit atque constituit.
and-whose here names written-down are he-made and established
 Episcopi: Hildibaldus, Richolfus, Arn, Wolfarius, Bernoinus,
the-bishops Hildebald Richolf Arn Wolfar Bernoin
 Laidradus, Iohannes, Theodulfus, Iesse, Heito, Waltgaudus.
Leidrad Job Theodulf Jesse Heito Waltgaud

Abbates: Fridugisus, Adalungus, Engilbertus, Irmino. Comites:

the-abbots Fridugis Adalung Angilbert Irmino the-counts

Walah, Meginheri, Otulfus, Stephanus, Unruocus, Burchardus,

Wala Meginber Otulf Stephen Unruoch Burchard

Meginhardus, Hatto, Rihwinus, Edo, Ercangarius, Geroldus,

Meginbard Hatto Rihwin Edo Ercangar Gerold

Bero, Hildigernus, Hroccolfus.

Bero Hildigern Hroccolf

Haec omnia filius eius Hludowicus, qui ei divina

these-things all the-son of-him Louis who to-him by-divine

iussione successit, inspecto eodem breviario, quam celerrime

command succeeded examined the-same summary as most-quickly

poterat post obitum eius summa devotione adimplere

he-could after the-death of-him with-the-highest devotion to-fulfill

curavit.

took-care

NITHARD

Historiarum Libri IIII

The Histories

BOOK I

PREFACE

Nithard addresses Charles, who ordered him, before they entered Châlons, to record the events of his reign while Lothar's persecution was in its second year. He asks pardon for any roughness, since he has written amid the same storm as his lord. He had meant to pass over the reign of Charles's father, but the truth of the brothers' quarrels will be clearer if he touches on it first, and he will begin with the venerable memory of their grandfather.

Cum, ut optime, mi domine, nosti, iam poene annis
since as best my lord you-know already almost for-two
duobus illatam a fratre vestro persecutionem vos vestrique
years brought by brother your persecution you and-yours
haudquaquam meriti pateremini, antequam Cadhellonicam
by-no-means having-deserved were-suffering before Châlons
introissemus civitatem, precepistis, ut res vestris temporibus
we-had-entered the-city you-commanded that the-things in-your times
gestas stili officio memoriae traderem. Oportuna
done of-the-pen by-the-service to-memory I-should-hand-down timely
quidem placidaque res, fateor, fuerat praecepta, si otium
indeed and-pleasant the-thing I-confess had-been commanded if leisure
tanti negotii, ut digne exsequeretur, fuisset concessum;
for-so-great a-task that worthily it-might-be-carried-out had-been granted
nunc autem, si quid minus vel incultius, quam oportuerit
now moreover if anything less or more-unpolished than it-ought
pro rerum magnitudine, huic operi inveneritis insertum,
for of-the-things the-greatness into-this work you-shall-find inserted
tanto facilius venia a vobis vestrisque mihi debetur,
so-much easier pardon from you and-yours to-me is-owed
quanto me nostis eodem turbine, quo et vos, dum hoc
by-as-much-as me you-know by-the-same whirlwind by-which also you while this

opus peregerim, esse agitatum. Praeterire autem ea
work I-was-completing to-have-been tossed to-pass-over moreover those-things
 quae temporibus pii patris vestri gesta sunt disposueram, sed
which in-the-times of-pious father your done were I-had-decided but
 facilius cuilibet legenti altercationum vestrarum veritas patebit,
more-easily to-anyone reading of-the-quarrels your the-truth will-be-clear
 si quaedam, que suo in tempore contigisse novimus,
if certain-things which their-own in time to-have-happened we-know
 summotenus praelibavero. Avi quoque insuper
at-the-surface I-shall-have-touched-on-first of-grandfather also moreover
 vestri venerandam memoriam per omnia obmittere ratum
your the-venerable memory in all to-omit judged
 minime videtur; ac per hoc textus hinc sumat exordium.
by-no-means it-seems and through this the-text from-here may-take beginning

I • CHARLES THE GREAT

Charles, rightly called the Great by all nations, dies in a good old age at about the third hour of the day, leaving all Europe filled with good. He so surpasses the men of his time in wisdom and virtue that he seems to all at once terrible, lovable, and admirable. By moderate terror alone he tames the fierce, iron hearts of Franks and barbarians, which even Roman power could not. He reigns thirty-two years and holds the empire fourteen.

Karolus bone memoriae et merito Magnus imperator ab
Charles of-good memory and deservedly Great emperor by
 universis nationibus vocatus, hora videlicet plus minus
all nations called at-the-hour namely more less
 diei tertia, in senectute bona decedens omnem Europem
of-the-day third in old-age good dying all Europe
 omni bonitate repletam reliquit, vir quippe omni sapientia et
with-all goodness filled left a-man indeed in-all wisdom and

omni virtute humanum genus suo in tempore adeo prae cellens,
in-all virtue the-human race his-own in time so surpassing
 ut omnibus orbem inhabitantibus terribilis, amabilis pariterque
that to-all the-world inhabiting fearsome lovable and-equally
 et admirabilis videretur, ac per hoc omne imperium
also admirable he-seemed and through this the-whole empire
 omnibus modis, ut cunctis manifeste claruit, honestum et
in-all ways as to-all plainly it-was-clear honorable and
 utile effecit. Nam super omne, quod ammirabile fateor fore,
useful be-made for above all which wonderful I-confess to-be
 Francorum barbarorumque ferocia ac ferrea corda, quae nec
of-the-Franks and-of-the-barbarians the-ferocity and iron hearts which not-even
 Romana potentia domare valuit, hic solus moderato terrore ita
the-Roman power to-tame was-able he alone with-moderate terror so
 repressit, ut nihil in imperio moliri, praeter quod publicae
repressed that nothing in the-empire to-attempt except what with-the-public
 utilitati congruebat, manifeste auderent. Regnavit feliciter per
benefit agreed openly they-dared he-reigned prosperously through
 annos duos et XXX^{ta} imperiique gubernacula nihilominus
years two and thirty and-of-the-empire the-helm nonetheless
 cum omni felicitate per annos quattuordecim possedit.
with all good-fortune through years fourteen held

Louis, Charles's only surviving legitimate son, comes from Aquitaine to Aachen and takes the empire unopposed. He divides his father's treasure, sends his sisters to their convents, and raises his young half-brothers. When his nephew Bernard, king of Italy, rebels and is blinded and dies, Louis tonsures them. He divides the empire among his sons and, a widower, marries Judith, who bears him Charles.

Heres autem tante sublimitatis Lodhuwicus, filiorum eius
the-heir moreover of-so-great eminence Louis of-the-sons of-him
 iusto matrimonio susceptorum novissimus, ceteris decedentibus
in-lawful marriage begotten the-last the-others dying
 successit. Qui ut pro certo patrem obisse comperit,
succeeded who as-soon-as for certain the-father to-have-died he-learned
 Aquis ab Aquitania protinus venit; quo undique ad se
to-Aachen from Aquitaine at-once came where from-all-sides to himself
 venientem populum absque quolibet impedimento suae
coming the-people without any hindrance to-his-own
 ditioni addixit, de ceteris, qui sibi creduli videbantur,
dominion he-bound about the-others who to-himself trustworthy seemed
 deliberaturus. Initio quidem imperii suscepti pecuniam
about-to-deliberate at-the-beginning indeed of-the-empire taken-up the-money
 ingenti numero a patre relictam trifariam dividere iussit
in-huge number by the-father left in-three to-divide he-ordered
 et unam partem causa funeris expendit, duas vero inter
and one part for-the-sake of-the-funeral he-spent two but between
 se et sorores suas a patre iusto matrimonio susceptas
himself and sisters his-own by the-father in-lawful marriage begotten
 divisit, quas et instanter a palatio ad sua monasteria
he-divided whom also urgently from the-palace to their-own monasteries
 abire praecepit. Fratres quoque adhuc tenera aetate,
to-go-away he-commanded the-brothers also still of-tender age

Drugonem, Hugonem et Teodericum, participes mensae effecit,
Drogo Hugh and Theoderic sharers of-his-table he-made
 quos et in palatio una secum nutriri praecepit, et
whom also in the-palace together with-himself to-be-brought-up he-commanded and
 Bernardo nepoti suo, filio Pippini, regnum Italiae concessit.
to-Bernard nephew his-own the-son of-Pippin the-kingdom of-Italy he-granted
 Qui quoniam ab eo paulo post defecit, capitur et a
who since from him a-little afterward revolted is-captured and by
 Bertmundo Lugdunensis provinciae praefecto luminibus et
Bertmund of-the-Lyon province the-prefect of-his-eyes and
 vita pariter privatur. Hinc autem metuens, ne post dicti
life alike is-deprived from-this moreover fearing lest afterward the-said
 fratres populo sollicitato eadem facerent, ad conventum
brothers the-people stirred-up the-same-things might-do to the-assembly
 publicum eos venire praecepit, totondit ac per monasteria
public them to-come he-commanded he-tonsured and through monasteries
 sub libera custodia commendavit. Quo peracto filios suos
under free custody entrusted which done the-sons his-own
 iusto matrimonio iunxit et universum imperium inter eos ita
in-lawful marriage he-joined and the-whole empire among them so
 divisit, ut Pippinus quidem Aquitaniam, Lodhuwicus autem
divided that Pippin indeed Aquitaine Louis moreover
 Baioariam, Lodharius vero post discessum eius universum
Bavaria Lotbar but after the-departure of-him the-whole
 imperium haberet, cui et una secum imperatoris
empire should-have to-whom also together with-himself of-emperor
 nomen habere concessit. Interea Irmengardis regina materque
the-name to-have he-granted meanwhile Ermengard the-queen and-mother
 illorum decessit, ac paulo post Lodhuwicus imperator
of-them died and a-little afterward Louis the-emperor
 Iudith in matrimonium sumpsit, ex qua Karolus creatur.
Judith in marriage took from whom Charles is-born

With the empire divided, the emperor does not know what to give his newborn son Charles. Lothar swears to defend Charles's share, then repents. Once Bernard is chamberlain and Charles has Alamannia, the brothers seize their father at Compiègne and veil the queen. Pippin and Louis restore him and Lothar goes to Italy, but Gundobald and Bernard vie to be second, Pippin and Louis to be first.

Karolo quidem nato, quoniam omne imperium inter reliquos
Charles indeed born since the-whole empire among the-remaining
 filios pater diviserat, quid huic faceret, ignorabat.
sons the-father had-divided what for-this-one he-should-do he-did-not-know
 Cumque anxius pater pro filio filios rogaret, tandem
and-when anxious the-father for the-son the-sons was-asking at-last
 Lodharius consensit ac sacramento testatus est, ut portionem
Lothar consented and by-oath witnessed has that the-portion
 regni quam vellet eidem pater daret, tutoremque
of-the-kingdom which he-wished to-the-same the-father should-give and-guardian
 ac defensorem illius se fore contra omnes inimicos eius
and defender of-him himself about-to-be against all enemies of-him
 in futuro iurando firmavit. Instigante autem Hugone, cuius
in the-future by-swearing he-confirmed at-the-instigation moreover of-Hugh whose
 filiam in matrimonium Lodharius duxerat, ac Mathfrido
daughter in marriage Lothar had-married and of-Matfrid
 ceterisque, sero se hoc fecisse penituit et, quemadmodum
and-the-others late himself this to-have-done he-repented and how
 illud quod fecerat annullare posset, querebat. Quod
that which he-had-done to-annul he-might-be-able he-sought which
 patrem matremque minime latuit; ac per hoc hinc
the-father and-the-mother by-no-means escaped and through this thither
 inde quod pater statuerat Lodharius diruere, etsi non
thither what the-father had-established Lothar to-tear-down if not

manifeste, occulte studebat. Ad quod Bernardum quendam,
openly secretly was-eager for which Bernard a-certain
 ducem Septimaniae, pater in supplementum sibi sumens
duke of-Septimania the-father as support to-himself taking
 camerarium constituit Karolumque eidem commendavit ac
chamberlain he-made and-Charles to-the-same entrusted and
 secundum a se in imperio praefecit. Qui dum inconsulte
second from himself in the-empire set-over who while thoughtlessly
 re publica abuteretur, quam solidare debuit, penitus
the-state public he-misused which to-strengthen he-ought utterly
 evertit. Per idem tempus Karolo Alamannia per edictum
he-overtuned through the-same time to-Charles Alamannia by edict
 traditur. Tum tandem Lodharius quasi iusta quaerimonia
is-handed-over then at-last Lothar as-if a-just complaint
 reperta tam fratres quam et universam plebem veluti ad
found as-much the-brothers as also the-whole people as-if to
 restaurandum rei publicae statum animabat. Quam ob
restoring of-the-state public the-condition roused which for
 rem pariter cum omni populo patri ad Compendium
reason together with all the-people on-the-father at Compiègne
 superveniunt, reginam velaverunt, fratres eius Cunradum
they-come-upon the-queen they-veiled the-brothers of-her Conrad
 et Rodulfum totonderunt atque in Aquitaniam servandos
and Rudolf they-tonsured and into Aquitaine to-be-kept
 Pippino commiserunt. Bernardus quoque fuga lapsus in
to-Pippin entrusted Bernard also by-flight having-escaped into
 Septimaniam se recepit; Eribertus frater eius captus
Septimania himself betook Heribert the-brother of-him captured
 ac luminibus privatus in Italia custodiendus traditur. Et
and of-his-eyes deprived in Italy to-be-guarded is-handed-over and
 Lodharius quidem, eo tenore re publica adeptus, patrem
Lothar indeed on-this footing the-state public obtained the-father

et Karolum sub libera custodia servabat; cum quo monachos,
and Charles under free custody kept with whom monks
 qui eidem vitam monasticam traderent et eandem vitam
who to-the-same the-life monastic should-teach and the-same life
 illum assumere suaderent, esse praeceperat. Res autem
him to-assume should-urge to-be he-had-commanded the-state moreover
 publica, quoniam quisque cupiditate illectus sua querebat,
public since each-one by-greed enticed his-own-things sought
 cotidie deterius ibat. Quam ob rem tam monachi, quos
daily worse went which for reason as-much the-monks whom
 supra memoravimus, quam et ceteri, qui quod factum fuerat
above we-have-mentioned as also the-others who what done had-been
 dolebant, illum percontari coeperunt, si res publica eidem
grieved him to-question began if the-state public to-him
 restitueretur, an eam pro viribus erigere ac fovere
were-restored whether it according-to his-strength to-raise-up and to-cherish
 vellet, maximeque cultum divinum, quo omnis ordo
he-would-wish and-chiefly the-worship divine by-which every order
 tuetur ac regitur. Quod quia facile confessum, in restauratione
is-protected and ruled which because readily be-acknowledged in the-restoration
 eius otius consensus est; assumptoque Guntbaldo quodam
of-him more-quickly agreed it-was and-taken-up Gundobald a-certain
 monacho sub specie religionis in hoc negotio ad Pippinum
monk under the-appearance of-religion in this business to Pippin
 Ludovicumque, filios eius, occulte direxit, promittens, si in
and-Louis the-sons of-him secretly he-sent promising if in
 sua restitutione una cum his qui hoc cupiebant adesse
his-own restoration together with those who this desired to-be-present
 voluissent, regnum utrisque se ampliare velle. Ac per
they-would-be-willing the-kingdom for-both himself to-enlarge to-wish and through
 hoc perfacile cupideque parueri; conventuque conducto regina
this very-easily and-eagerly they-obeyed and-an-assembly appointed the-queen

et fratres eius eidem restituantur, ac plebs universa
and the-brothers of-her to-the-same are-restored and the-people whole
 ditioni eius se subdidit. Hinc hi qui cum Lodhario
to-the-dominion of-him itself submitted hence those who with Lodhar
 senserunt in concilium deducti et ab ipso Lodhario ad
sided into a-council brought and by himself Lodhar to
 mortem diiudicati aut vita donata in exilium retrusi sunt.
death sentenced or with-life granted into exile thrust were
 Lodharium quoque sola Italia contentum ea pactione
Lodhar also with-only Italy content on-that agreement
 abire permisit, ut extra patris voluntatem nihil deinceps
to-depart he-permitted that beyond the-father's will nothing thereafter
 moliri in regno temptaret. Cumque se haec ita
to-undertake in the-kingdom he-should-try and-when themselves these-things so
 haberent, et res publica paululum respirari videretur,
had and the-state public a-little to-breathe-again seemed
 confestim Gunthaldus monachus, quem supra memoravimus,
at-once Gundobald the-monk whom above we-have-mentioned
 quia multa in restitutione eius laboraverat, secundus in imperio
because much in the-restoration of-him had-labored second in the-empire
 esse volebat; quod quoniam Bernardus, uti praemissum est,
to-be wished which since Bernard as said-before it-was
 olim fuerat, summa industria iterum esse certabat. Pippinus
formerly had-been with-the-highest effort again to-be he-strove Pippin
 quoque et Lodhuwicus, quanquam eis regna, sicut
also and Louis although to-them the-kingdoms as
 promissum fuerat, aucta fuissent, tamen in imperio ut post
promised it-had-been enlarged had-been yet in the-empire that after
 patrem primi essent, uterque laborabat; at illi, per quos
the-father first they-might-be each labored but those through whom
 tunc res publica tractabatur, voluntati eorum obsistebant.
then the-state public was-managed to-the-will of-them stood-in-the-way

Aquitaine is taken from Pippin and given to Charles. Lothar's party frees the exiles, and with Pope Gregory in their train the three brothers meet their father in Alsace, win over his army, and capture him; Judith is exiled to Italy. But Lothar's favorites quarrel, and sons and people are ashamed. Lothar releases his father at Saint Denis and flees to Vienne; Judith returns.

Per idem tempus Aquitania Pippino dempta Karolo datur,
through the-same time Aquitaine from-Pippin taken to-Charles is-given
 et in eius obsequio primatus populi, qui cum patre
and in his allegiance the-chief-men of-the-people who with the-father
 sentiebat, iurat. Quod quidem hi, quos supra retulimus,
sided swears which indeed those whom above we-have-reported
 graviter ferentes, ut res publica inutiliter tractaretur,
heavily bearing that the-state public uselessly was-managed
 divulgant populumque quasi ad iustum regimen sollicitant;
they-spread-abroad and-the-people as-if to just government they-stir-up
 Walanam, Elisachar, Mathfridum ceterosque, qui in exilium
Wala Elisachar Matfrid and-the-others who into exile
 retrusi fuerant, custodia emittunt; Lodharium, ut rem
thrust had-been from-custody they-release Lothar that the-state
 publicam invadat, compellunt; insuper autem et Gregorium
public he-may-invade they-compel besides moreover also Gregory
 Romane summe sedis pontificem, ut sua auctoritate
of-the-Roman highest see the-pontiff that by-his authority
 liberius quod cupiebant perficere possent, sub eadem
more-freely what they-desired to-accomplish they-might-be-able under the-same
 specie magnis precibus in supplementum suae voluntatis
appearance with-great prayers as support of-their-own will
 assumunt. Quam ob rem imperator una cum omni quod
they-take-up which for reason the-emperor together with all which

habebat imperio, tres reges filiique eius adversus eum cum
he-had command three kings and-sons of-him against him with
 ingenti exercitu, insuper papa Gregorius cum omni comitatu
a-huge army moreover the-pope Gregory with all retinue
 Romano Elisazam confluunt iuxtaque montem Sigwaldi castra
Roman to-Alsace stream-together and-near the-mount of-Sigwald the-camp
 ponunt ac variis affectionibus populum, ut a patre
place and with-various inducements the-people that from the-father
 deficeret, filii compellunt. Novissime quibusdam fuga
it-should-defect the-sons compel at-last certain-ones by-flight
 lapsis, cum perpaucis pater capitur; uxor ab eo dempta in
escaped with very-few the-father is-captured the-wife from him taken into
 Langobardiam exilio mittitur, ac Karolus una cum patre
Lombardy in-exile is-sent and Charles together with the-father
 sub magna custodia servatur. Gregorius siquidem papa
under great guard is-kept Gregory indeed the-pope
 itineris penitudine correptus tardius quam vellet Romam
of-the-journey by-regret seized later than he-wished to-Rome
 revertitur. Et Lodharius quidem iterum eo tenore imperium
returns and Lothar indeed again on-this footing the-empire
 adeptum, quod iniuste tam facile iterato obtinuit, iterato
obtained which unjustly so easily a-second-time he-held a-second-time
 facilius iuste amisit. Nam Pippinus et Lodhuwicus videntes,
more-easily justly lost for Pippin and Louis seeing
 quod Lodharius universum imperium sibi vindicare illosque
that Lothar the-whole empire for-himself to-claim and-them
 deteriores efficere vellet, graviter ferebant; insuper autem, dum
worse-off to-make wished heavily bore besides moreover while
 Huc, Lambertus atque Mathfridus, quis illorum secundus
Hugh Lambert and Matfrid which of-them second
 post Lodharium in imperio haberetur, ambigerent, dissedere
after Lothar in the-empire should-be-held disputed to-quarrel

coeperunt et, quoniam quisque eorum propria querebat,
began and since each of-them his-own-things sought
 rem publicam penitus neglegebant. Quod quidem populus
the-state public utterly they-neglected which indeed the-people
 cernens molestus erat. Occurrebat insuper etiam filiis
seeing troubled was there-came moreover also to-the-sons
 verecundia et penitudo, quod patrem bis honore privaverant,
shame and regret that the-father twice of-honor they-had-deprived
 universe plebi, quod bis imperatorem dimiserant, ac
to-the-whole people that twice the-emperor they-had-abandoned and
 per hoc hinc inde in restitutione eius consentiunt et
through this hither thither in the-restoration of-him they-agree and
 undique ad Sanctum Dyonisium, ubi tunc Lodharius
from-all-sides to Saint Denis where then Lothar
 patrem et Karolum servabat, affluere contendunt. Cernens
the-father and Charles was-keeping to-stream they-strive seeing
 Lodharius praedictam animositatem vires suas excedere,
Lothar the-aforesaid hostility strength his-own to-exceed
 antequam conveniant, arma sumit, patrem ac Karolum
before they-assemble arms takes the-father and Charles
 dimittit itinereque arrepto Viennam petit. Plebs autem non
releases and-the-journey seized Vienne seeks the-people moreover not
 modica, quae praesens aderat, et iam iamque Lodhario pro
small which present was-there and now and-now on-Lothar for
 patre vim inferre volebat, rege recepto basilicam sancti
the-father force to-bring wished the-king recovered into-the-basilica of-saint
 Dyonisii una cum episcopis et omni clero confluunt,
Denis together with the-bishops and all the-clergy stream-together
 laudes Deo devote referunt, coronam et arma regi
praises to-God devoutly render the-crown and arms on-the-king
 suo imponunt et ad cetera deliberaturi contendunt.
their-own place and to the-rest about-to-deliberate strive

Lodharium pater persequi distulit, sed legatos, qui eum
Lothar the-father to-pursue put-off but envoys who him
 citra Alpes festinare iuberent, post illum direxit; Pippinum
beyond the-Alps to-hasten should-order after him he-sent Pippin
 ad se venientem benigne excepit, gratias in eo, quod
to himself coming kindly he-received thanks in that that
 pro sua restitutione laboraverat, egit ac reverti eum in
for his-own restoration he-had-labored he-gave and to-return him into
 Aquitaniam, uti petiverat, permisit. Hinc inde fideles, qui
Aquitaine as he-had-asked permitted hither thither the-faithful-men who
 evaserant et rem publicam regere consueverant, confluent;
had-escaped and the-state public to-rule had-been-accustomed stream-together
 cum quibus itinere arrepto Aquis gematum petit, tandemque
with whom the-journey seized Aachen the-palace he-seeks and-at-last
 Lodhuwicum venientem gratanter excepit, quem et una
Louis coming gladly received whom also together
 secum causa praesidii esse praecepit. Interea hi qui
with-himself for-the-sake of-protection to-be he-commanded meanwhile those who
 Iudith in Italia servabant audientes, quod Lodharius fugam
Judith in Italy were-keeping hearing that Lothar flight
 inierat, et pater imperium regebat, arrepta Iudith fugam
had-entered-on and the-father the-empire was-ruling seized Judith flight
 ineunt, Aquis prospere perveniunt, gratum munus imperatori
enter-on to-Aachen successfully arrive a-welcome gift to-the-emperor
 deferunt. Verumtamen haud est thoro regio recepta,
bring nevertheless by-no-means she-is into-the-bed royal received
 donec se criminibus obiectis innoxiam, quia criminator
until herself of-the-crimes charged innocent because an-accuser
 deerat, sacramento una cum propinquis coram plebe effecit.
was-lacking by-oath together with kinsmen before the-people she-made

Lothar's men defeat Count Odo in the Breton march, and Odo is killed. Lothar besieges and burns Chalon, has Gerberga drowned in the Saône as a witch, beheads Gozhelm and Senila, and spares Warin. He marches on Orléans, but his father, with Louis the German, meets him. The Franks, ashamed of having twice deserted the emperor, will not defect, so Lothar, with nowhere to fight or flee, agrees to withdraw beyond the Alps and attempt nothing without his father's consent.

Per idem tempus Mathfridus et Lantbertus ceterique a
 through the-same time Matfrid and Lambert and-the-others from
 parte Lodharii poenes marcam Britannicam morabantur.
 the-party of-Lothar in-the-region-of the-march Breton were-staying
 Ad quos pellendos missus est Uodo et omnes inter
 for whom to-be-driven-off sent was Odo and all between
 Sequanam et Ligerem degentes, qui manu valida collecta
 the-Seine and the-Loire living who with-a-band strong collected
 hinc atque inde convenerunt. Et hos quidem paucitas ac
 hither and thither came-together and these indeed fewness and
 per hoc summa necessitas unanimes effecit, Uodonem
 through this the-highest necessity of-one-mind made Odo
 autem et suos maxima multitudo securos, discordes et
 moreover and his-men the-greatest multitude careless discordant and
 inordinatos reddidit. Quapropter proelio commisso fugerunt.
 disorderly rendered wherefore battle joined they-fled
 Cecidit Uodo et Odo, Vivianus, Fulbertus ac plebis
 there-fell Odo and Odo Vivian Fulbert and of-the-common-people
 innumera multitudo. Quod quidem citato cursu victores
 a-countless multitude which indeed at-swift pace the-victors
 Lodhario notantes mandant, ut, quantotius posset, illis
 to-Lothar noting send-word that as-quickly-as he-could to-them
 cum exercitu occurrat. Qui libenter paruit et Cavillonum
 with an-army he-should-come who gladly he-obeyed and to-Chalon

collecta manu valida venit, civitatem obsidione cinxit,
with-a-gathered band strong came the-city with-siege surrounded
 praeliando triduum obsedit et tandem urbem captam una
fighting for-three-days besieged and at-last the-city taken together
 cum ecclesiis incendit. Gerbergam more maleficorum in
with the-churches burned Gerberga in-the-manner of-witches into
 Ararim mergi praecepit, Gozhelmum et Senilam capite
the-Saône to-be-drowned he-commanded Gozhelm and Senila with-the-head
 punivit, Warino autem vitam donavit et, ut se deinceps
punished to-Warin moreover life he-granted and that him thereafter
 pro viribus iuvaret, iureiurando constrinxit. Hinc autem
according-to his-strength he-should-help by-oath he-bound hence moreover
 Lodharius et sui duobus praeliis feliciter gestis magnanimes
Lothar and his-men by-two battles successfully waged high-spirited
 effecti, universum imperium perfacile invadere sperantes, ad
made the-whole empire very-easily to-invade hoping to
 cetera deliberaturi Aurilianensem urbem petunt. Quod pater
the-rest about-to-deliberate Orléans the-city seek which the-father
 audiens e Francia manu valida collecta, insuper Lodhuwico
hearing from Francia a-band strong collected moreover Louis
 filio suo cum universis, qui trans Renum morabantur,
son his-own with all who across the-Rhine were-staying
 in auxilium sibi assumpto tantum facinus a filio in
into help for-himself taken so-great a-crime by the-son against
 imperium commissum vindicaturus perrexit. Lodharius quoque
the-empire committed about-to-avenge proceeded Lothar also
 eadem spe, qua Francos abducere consuerat,
with-the-same hope with-which the-Franks to-lead-away he-had-been-accustomed
 animatus ire obvius ratum duxit; ac per hoc hinc inde
inspired to-go to-meet right he-held and through this hither thither
 confluunt supraque fluvium iuxta villam quae Calviacus
stream-together and-above the-river near the-estate which Calviacus

dicitur castra ponunt. Sed Franci, eo quod imperatorem
is-called the-camp place but the-Franks for-this that the-emperor
 bis reliquerant, poenitudine correpti et, ut deinde tale
twice they-had-abandoned by-regret seized and that again such
 quid committerent, turpe iudicantes ad defectionem impelli
anything they-should-commit shameful judging to defection to-be-driven
 dedignati sunt; quam ob rem cum nec fuge nec proelii
disdained have which for reason when neither of-flight nor of-battle
 locum videret, ea pactione novissime praelium diremit, ut
a-place he-saw on-that agreement at-last the-battle he-broke-off that
 infra dies statutos Alpibus excederet ac deinceps sine
within days fixed from-the-Alps he-should-depart and thereafter without
 patris iussione fines Franciae ingredi non praesumeret
the-father's command the-borders of-Francia to-enter not he-should-presume
 et extra patris voluntatem in eius imperio deinceps nihil
and beyond the-father's will in his empire thereafter nothing
 moliri temptaret. Quod et ita se et suos servaturos
to-undertake he-should-try which both so themselves and theirs about-to-keep
 tam is quam et sui sacramento firmaverunt.
as-much he as also his-men by-oath confirmed

At Aachen the emperor gives Charles a kingdom from Frisia between the Meuse and the Seine to Burgundy and the sea, and at Quierzy arms, a crown, and lands beyond the Seine. When Louis the German revolts, his father drives him into Bavaria. Fearing his death, the queen and nobles offer Lothar forgiveness and a division of the kingdom with Charles, and both sides swear to it.

His ita compositis pater, uti et cum quibus consueverat,
these so settled the-father as and with whom he-had-been-accustomed
 imperium regebat. Videns autem, quod populus nullo modo
the-empire was-ruling seeing moreover that the-people by-no way
 diebus vitae suae illum relinquere, uti consueverat, vellet,
in-the-days of-life his-own him to-abandon as it-had-been-accustomed wished
 conventu Aquis hieme indicto portionem regni his
an-assembly at-Aachen in-winter proclaimed a-portion of-the-kingdom by-these
 terminis notatam Karolo dedit: Id est a mari per fines
borders marked to-Charles he-gave that is from the-sea through the-borders
 Saxoniae usque ad fines Ribuariorum totam Frisiam
of-Saxony all-the-way to the-borders of-the-Ripuarians all Frisia
 et per fines Ribuariorum comitatus Moilla, Haettra,
and through the-borders of-the-Ripuarians the-counties Moilla Hattuaria
 Hammolant, Masagouwi, deinde vero quicquid inter Mosam
Hamaland Maasgau then but whatever between the-Meuse
 et Sequanam usque Burgundiam una cum Viridunense
and the-Seine up-to Burgundy together with Verdun
 consistit et de Burgundia Tullensem, Odornensem, Bedensem,
lies and of Burgundy Toul Ornois Bedois
 Blesensem, Pertensem, utrosque Barrenses, Brionensem,
Blaisois Perthois both Barrois Brienne
 Tricasinum, Autisioderensem, Senonicum, Wastinensem,
Troyes Auxerre Sens Gâtinais

Milidunensem, Stampensem, Castrensem, Parisiacum et
Melun Étampes Châtres Paris and
 deinde per Sequanam usque in mare Oceanum et per
then through the-Seine up-to into the-sea Ocean and through
 ipsum mare usque in Frisiam, omnes videlicet episcopatus,
the-very sea up-to into Frisia all namely bishoprics
 abbatias, comitatus, fiscos et omnia infra praedictos
abbeys counties fiscal-lands and all-things within the-aforsaid
 fines consistentia cum omnibus ad se pertinentibus,
borders lying with all to themselves belonging
 in quacumque regione consistebant et sui iuris esse
in whatever region they-lay and of-his-own right to-be
 videbantur, una cum auctoritate divina atque paterna
seemed together with authority divine and paternal
 praefato filio suo Karolo dedit, firmumque ut permaneret,
to-the-aforsaid son his-own Charles he-gave and-firm that it-might-remain
 Dei omnipotentis clementiam exoravit. Hilduinus autem
of-God almighty the-clemency he-implored Hilduin moreover
 abbas ecclesiae sancti Dyonisii et Gerardus comes Parisius
the-abbot of-the-church of-saint Denis and Gerard the-count of-Paris
 civitatis ceterique omnes praedictos fines inhabitantes
city and-the-others all the-aforsaid borders inhabiting
 convenerunt fidemque sacramento Karolo firmaverunt. Quod
came-together and-faith by-oath to-Charles confirmed which
 quidem Lotharius et Lodhuwicus audientes graviter ferebant,
indeed Lothar and Louis bearing heavily bore
 unde et colloquium indixerunt. Ad quod venientes, cum
whence also a-conference they-proclaimed to which coming since
 nihil ex his indignari se posse viderent, callide
nothing of these-things to-be-indignant themselves to-be-able they-saw cunningly
 dissimulantes quippiam se contra patris voluntatem
dissembling anything themselves against the-father's will

moliri velle, discesserunt; verumtamen ob id
to-undertake to-wish they-departed nevertheless on-account-of that
 colloquium commotio non modica exorta est, sed facile
conference a-commotion not small arisen was but easily
 quievit. Hinc autem Carisiacum mediante Septembrio venit
it-quieted from-here moreover to-Quierzy mid September he-came
 seditionemque quandam similiter perfacile sedavit ac praefato
and-a-sedition a-certain likewise very-easily he-calmed and to-the-aforesaid
 Karolo arma et coronam nec non et quandam portionem
Cbarles arms and the-crown nor not also a-certain portion
 regni inter Sequanam et Ligerem dedit, Pippinum ac
of-the-kingdom between the-Seine and the-Loire bestowed Pippin and
 Karolum, ut videbatur, unanimes effecit ac deinde Pippinum
Cbarles as it-seemed of-one-mind he-made and then Pippin
 in Aquitaniam abire cum gratia permisit, Karolum vero in
into Aquitaine to-depart with favor he-permitted Charles but into
 partem regni, quam illi dederat, direxit. Quo veniens,
the-part of-the-kingdom which to-him he-had-given he-sent where coming
 omnes hos fines inhabitantes ad illum venerunt et fidem
all these borders inhabiting to him came and faith
 sacramento commendati eidem firmaverunt.

by-oath commended to-the-same confirmed
 Eodem tempore nuntiatur, quod Lodhuwicus a patre suo
at-the-same time it-is-announced that Louis from father his-own
 descivisset et quicquid trans Renum regni continebatur
had-revolted and whatever across the-Rhine of-the-kingdom was-contained
 sibi vindicare vellet; quod pater eius audiens indicto
for-himself to-claim wished which the-father of-him hearing proclaimed
 conventu Magonciacum venit ac traiecto exercitu fugere
an-assembly to-Mainz came and taken-across the-army to-flee
 illum in Baioariam compulit. Post Aquis exultans rediit,
him into Bavaria compelled afterward to-Aachen exulting returned

quoniam, quocumque se verterat, nutu divino victor
since wherever himself he-had-turned by-nod divine victor
 erat. Veruntamen ingruente senili aetate et propter varias
he-was nevertheless pressing-on the-old age and on-account-of various
 afflictiones poene decrepita imminente, mater ac primores
afflictions almost decrepit impending the-mother and the-chief-men
 populi, qui in voluntate patris pro Karolo laboraverant,
of-the-people who in the-will of-the-father for Charles had-labored
 metuentes, si infectis rebus decederet, odia fratrum
fearing if unfinished the-affairs he-should-die the-hatreds of-the-brothers
 usque ad internitionem sibi insurgere, ratum
all-the-way to destruction against-themselves to-rise right
 duxerunt, ut quemlibet e filiis pater in supplementum
they-held that any from the-sons the-father as support
 sibi assumeret, et, si post discessum eius ceteri concordēs
for-himself should-take and if after the-departure of-him the-others in-concord
 esse nollent, saltem hi duo unanimes effecti valerent
to-be should-be-unwilling at-least these two of-one-mind made might-be-able
 resistere invidiorum factioni. Cumque necessitate instante ac
to-resist of-the-envious the-faction and-when with-necessity pressing and
 per hoc assiduis meditationibus in hac electione versarentur,
through this in-constant deliberations in this choice they-were-engaged
 universorum sententia consensit, si Lodharius certum se
of-all the-opinion agreed if Lothar sure himself
 in hoc negotio praeberē vellet, cum eo foedus iniri
in this business to-show would-be-willing with him a-treaty to-be-entered
 debere. Nam, uti praemissum est, idem olim patri
ought for as said-before it-was the-same formerly to-the-father
 matrique ac Karolo iuraverat, ut partem regni quam
and-mother and to-Charles had-sworn that the-part of-the-kingdom which
 vellet pater eidem daret, et eandem se consentire
he-might-wish the-father to-the-same should-give and the-same himself to-consent

et protegere illi contra omnes inimicos omnibus diebus
and to-protect for-him against all enemies on-all days
 vitae suae deberet. Quam ob rem missos deligunt et
of-life his-own he-ought which for reason envoys they-choose and
 in Italiam ad Lodharium mittunt promittentes, si patris
into Italy to Lothar send promising if the-father's
 voluntatem deinceps erga Karolum conservare vellet,
will thereafter toward Charles to-keep he-would-wish
 omnia, quae in illum actenus deliquerat, remitti et omne
all-things which against him up-to-now he-bad-offended to-be-forgiven and all
 regnum absque Baioaria inter illum et Karolum dividendum;
the-kingdom without Bavaria between him and Charles to-be-divided
 quae quoniam Lodhario et suis rata videbantur, utraque
which since to-Lothar and his-men ratified seemed both
 ex parte sic velle ac sic se perficere iuraverunt.
from side so to-wish and so themselves to-accomplish they-swore

VII · THE PARTITION AT WORMS

At Worms Lothar falls at his father's feet and is forgiven. Asked to divide the kingdom himself, with Charles choosing, he spends three days at it and then asks his father to divide it instead. The emperor divides it at the Meuse; Lothar takes the southern part, and the western goes to Charles. The emperor urges the brothers to love each other and sends Lothar to Italy.

Ergo ad urbem Vangionum conventu indicto convenerunt; in
therefore to the-city of-the-Vangiones an-assembly proclaimed they-came-together in
 quo Lodharius humillime ad pedes patris coram cunctis
which Lothar most-humbly at the-feet of-the-father before all
 procidit dicens: 'Novi me coram Deo et te, domine pater,
fell-down saying I-know me before God and you lord father

deliquisse; non regnum, sed indulgentiam et, ut gratiam
to-have-offended not a-kingdom but indulgence and that favor
 tuam merear, quaeso'. Idem autem ut pius ac clemens pater
your I-may-earn I-ask the-same moreover as a-pious and merciful father
 et delicta postulanti indulsit et gratiam roganti
both the-offenses to-the-one-asking forgave and favor to-the-one-entreating
 concessit, eo scilicet pacto, ut deinceps nihil quolibet
granted on-that namely agreement that thereafter nothing in-any
 modo contra suam voluntatem nec in Karolum nec
way against his will neither against Charles nor
 in regnum alicubi egisset. Dein benigne illum
against the-kingdom anywhere he-should-have-done then kindly him
 excoepit ac deosculans gratias Deo pro filio, quem aversum
he-received and kissing thanks to-God for the-son whom estranged
 reconciliaverat, egit. Ad prandium deinde conversi sunt,
he-had-reconciled he-gave to dinner then turned they-were
 in crastinum de ceteris, quae sui iuraverant, deliberaturi.
on the-morrow about the-rest which his-men had-sworn about-to-deliberate
 Die autem altera concilium ineunt. Hinc pater, ut sui
on-the-day moreover second a-council they-enter hence the-father as his-men
 iuraverant, perficere cupiens: 'Ecce, fili, ut promiseram,
had-sworn to-accomplish desiring behold son as I-had-promised
 regnum omne coram te est, divide illud, prout libuerit.
the-kingdom whole before you is divide it as it-shall-please
 Quod si tu diviseris, parcium electio Karoli erit; si
which if you shall-have-divided of-the-parts the-choice Charles's will-be if
 autem nos illud diviserimus, similiter parcium electio tua
moreover we it shall-have-divided likewise of-the-parts the-choice yours
 erit'. Quod idem cum per triduum dividere vellet, sed
will-be which the-same when through three-days to-divide he-wished but
 minime posset, Iosippum atque Richardum ad patrem direxit
by-no-means could Joseph and Richard to the-father he-sent

deprecans, ut ille et sui regnum dividerent, parciumque
entreating that he and his-men the-kingdom should-divide and-of-the-parts
electio sibi concederetur; insuper vero in ea fide, quam
the-choice to-himself be-granted moreover but by that faith which
illis iuraverant, testati sunt, quod pro nulla re alia nisi
to-them they-had-sworn testified they-have that for no thing other except
sola ignorantia regionum id peragere differret. Quam ob rem
alone ignorance of-the-regions it to-accomplish be-delayed which for reason
pater, ut aequius valuit, regnum omne absque Baioaria
the-father as more-fairly be-was-able the-kingdom whole without Bavaria
cum suis divisit; et a Mosa partem australem Lodharius
with his-men divided and from the-Meuse the-part southern Lotbar
cum suis elegit, quin immo et accepit, occiduam vero, ut
with his-men chose nay rather also received the-western but that
Karolo conferretur, consensit et una cum patre coram
on-Charles it-be-conferred he-agreed and together with the-father before
omni populo ita se velle annuntiavit. Hinc autem pater
all the-people so himself to-wish announced from-here moreover the-father
fratres, prout valuit, unanimes effecit, rogans ac deprecans,
the-brothers as be-was-able of-one-mind made asking and entreating
ut invicem se diligerent, et ut alter ab altero
that each-other themselves they-should-love and that one by the-other
protegeretur, adortans exorat et quod fieri desiderat
should-be-protected exhorting he-implores and what to-be-done he-desires
optat. Quibus peractis benigne et pacifice Lodharium in
he-wishes which completed kindly and peaceably Lotbar into
Italiam ditatum remissionis gratia ac regni muneribus
Italy enriched of-forgiveness with-the-favor and of-the-kingdom with-the-gifts
remittens, sacramenta, quae sepe iuraverat, quotiens in illum
sending-back the-oaths which often he-had-sworn how-often against him
deliquerat, quotiens delicta eidem donaverat, in memoriam
he-had-offended how-often the-offenses to-the-same he-had-forgiven into memory

reducens ac piis visceribus monens contestabatur, ne saltem
recalling and with-pious heart warning be-adjured lest at-least
 id, quod tunc novissime peregerant, coramque cunctis ita
that which then most-recently they-had-accomplished and-before all so
 se velle confirmaverat, frustrari quolibet modo permittat.
himself to-wish had-confirmed to-be-frustrated in-any way he-should-allow

VIII · THE DEATH OF LOUIS THE PIOUS

On Pippin's death some Aquitanians wait for the emperor and others make Pippin's son king. The emperor has his loyal Aquitanians commend themselves to Charles, drives Louis the German back into Bavaria, and summons Lothar to Worms. Before the assembly meets, he dies on an island near Mainz, and his brother Drogo buries him at Metz. He lived sixty-four years.

Eodem tempore, ut Pippinus decessisset, pater nuntium
at-the-same time that Pippin had-died the-father news
 acceperat; et pars quedam populi, quid avus de
had-received and part a-certain of-the-people what the-grandfather about
 regno vel nepotibus iuberet, prestolabatur; pars autem
the-kingdom or the-grandsons might-order was-waiting the-part moreover
 arrepto filio eius Pippino, quia natu maximus erat,
seized the-son of-him Pippin because by-birth eldest he-was
 tyrannidem exercebat. Quapropter his ita, ut prefatum est,
tyranny practiced wherefore these-things so as said-before it-is
 cum Lodhario perfectis, collecta manu valida per Cavillonem
with Lothar accomplished collected a-band strong through Chalon
 Clarum-montem una cum Karolo ac matre pater petit ac
Clermont together with Charles and the-mother the-father seeks and
 partem populi, quae illum praestolabatur, inibi benigne recepit.
the-part of-the-people which him was-awaiting there kindly received

Et quoniam olim regnum Aquitaniae Karolo donaverat,
and since formerly the-kingdom of-Aquitaine to-Charles he-had-given
 ut illi se commendarent, ortando suasit, iussit. Qui
that to-him themselves they-should-commend by-exhorting he-urged he-ordered who
 omnes commendati eidem sacramento fidem firmaverunt.
all commended to-the-same by-oath faith confirmed
 Post quod, quomodo tyrannos compesceret, contendit. Per
after which how the-tyrants he-might-check he-strove through
 idem tempus Lodhuwicus a Baioaria solito more
the-same time Louis from Bavaria in-the-accustomed manner
 egressus Alamanniam invasit cum quibusdam Toringis et
having-gone-out Alamannia invaded with certain Thuringians and
 Saxonibus sollicitatis; quam ob rem pater eius ab Aquitania
Saxons stirred-up which for reason the-father of-him from Aquitaine
 revocatus, dimisso videlicet Karolo una cum matre eius
recalled left namely Charles together with the-mother of-him
 Pictavis, ipse vero sanctum pascha Aquis celebravit et sic
at-Poitiers he-himself but holy Easter at-Aachen celebrated and so
 uno eodemque itinere Toringam petiit. A qua Lodhuwico
by-one and-the-same journey Thuringia sought from which Louis
 filio eius pulso, per Sclavos itinere redempto eum in
son of-him driven through the-Slavs a-way bought him into
 Baioariam fugere compulit. Quo peracto Kal. Iulii ad
Bavaria to-flee he-compelled which done on-the-Kalends of-July at
 Vangionum urbem conventum indixit, ad quod Lodharium
the-Vangiones' city an-assembly he-proclaimed to which Lotbar
 filium suum ab Italia venire praecepit, cum eo ceterisque
son his-own from Italy to-come he-commanded with him and-the-others
 sibi credulis de Lodhuwico deliberaturus. Cumque se
to-himself trustworthy about Louis about-to-deliberate and-when themselves
 haec ita haberent, et Lodharius in Italia, Lodhuwicus trans
these-things so had and Lotbar in Italy Louis across

Renum, et Karolus in Aquitania esset, Lodhuvicus imperator

the-Rhine and Charles in Aquitaine was Louis the-emperor

paterque illorum in insula quadam iuxta Magonciacum

and-father of-them on an-island a-certain near Mainz

XII. Kal. Iulii obiit; quem Drogo frater et episcopus

on-the-twelfth Kalends of-July died whom Drogo the-brother and bishop

atque archicapellanus eius Mettis civitate sua apud Sanctum

and archchaplain of-him at-Metz city his-own at Saint

Arnulfum una cum episcopis, abbatibus comitibusque congruo

Arnulf together with bishops abbots and-counts with-fitting

honore sepulture tradidit. Vixit per annos IIII et LX,

honor to-burial delivered he-lived through years four and sixty

rexit Aquitaniam per annos VII et XXX, imperiale vero

he-ruled Aquitaine through years seven and thirty the-imperial but

nomen per annos VII et XX et per menses sex obtinuit.

name through years seven and twenty and through months six he-held

BOOK II

PREFACE

Having explained how the brothers' dissensions began, so that any reader can judge why Lothar persecuted Charles and his brother and whether he acted justly, Nithard will now record how Lothar carried it out, as memory and strength allow. He asks Charles to bear in mind the difficulties the same troubles have put in his way, and to forgive anything he neglects.

Explicitis pro tempore ac viribus dissensionum
 unfolded according-to the-time and the-strength of-the-dissensions
 vestrarum initiis, e quibus quique lector scire cupiens,
 your the-beginnings from which every reader to-know wishing
 quam ob rem post obitum patris vestri Lodharius vos
 which for reason after the-death of-father your Lothar you
 fratremque persequi statuerit, decernat, colligat et, si iuste
 and-the-brother to-persecute decided may-discern may-gather and if justly
 egerit, cognoscat, hinc iam, qua virtute ac industria
 he-acted may-learn from-here now with-what valor and diligence
 hoc exsecutus sit, prout memoria viresque suppleverint,
 this carried-out has as memory and-strength shall-have-supplied
 notare curabo. Vos vero difficultates, quae ex eadem
 to-note I-shall-take-care you but the-difficulties which from the-same
 molestia parvitati meae obstiterint, inspicere depono et,
 trouble to-the-smallness my have-stood-in-the-way to-consider I-beg and
 si quid in hoc opere neglexero, ut ignoscatis, quaeso.
 if anything in this work I-shall-have-neglected that you-forgive I-ask

Hearing of his father's death, Lothar sends word through Francia that he is coming to claim the empire, promising honors and threatening death to those who will not meet him. Men flock to him out of greed and fear. He moves first against Louis, sending Charles assurances of goodwill, faces Louis at Frankfurt, then agrees to a truce until November and turns against Charles.

Audiens Lodharius patrem suum obisse confestim nuntios
 bearing Lothar father his-own to-have-died at-once messengers
 ubique, presertim per totam Franciam mittit, qui se
 everywhere especially through all Francia sends who himself
 venturum in imperium, quod olim fuerat illi datum,
 about-to-come into the-empire which formerly had-been to-him given
 affirmant, promittens unicuique honores a patre concessos
 should-affirm promising to-each-one the-honors by the-father granted
 se concedere et eosdem augere velle. Dubios quoque fidei
 himself to-grant and the-same to-increase to-wish the-doubtful also of-faith
 sacramento firmari praecepit; insuper autem iussit, ut,
 by-oath to-be-confirmed he-commanded besides moreover he-ordered that
 quantotius possent, obviam illi procederent, nolentibus
 as-quickly-as they-could to-meet him they-should-come-forward to-the-unwilling
 vero capitale supplicium ut praediceretur, indixit;
 but capital punishment as should-be-announced-beforehand he-proclaimed
 ipse autem pedetemptim, quo se res verteret, antequam
 be-himself moreover step-by-step where itself the-affair might-turn before
 Alpes excederet, scire volens *** Ergo cupiditate
 the-Alps he-should-leave to-know wishing (lacuna) therefore by-greed
 terroreque illecti undique ad illum confluunt; et hoc
 and-terror enticed from-all-sides to him they-stream-together and this
 cernens spe viribusque magnanimis effectus, quibus artibus
 seeing by-hope and-strength high-spirited made by-what arts

universum imperium liberius invadere posset, deliberare
the-whole empire more-freely to-invade he-might-be-able to-deliberate
 coepit. Lodhuwicum quoque quoniam itineri suo contiguum
began Louis also since to-route his-own adjacent
 esse prospexit, ut primum in illum manum mitteret, ratum
to-be he-foresaw that first on him hand he-should-lay right
 duxit et, ut eundem viribus annullaret, operam omni
he-held and that the-same by-strength he-might-annul effort with-all
 virtute adiecit. Interea ad Karolum in Aquitaniam legatos
might be-applied meanwhile to Charles into Aquitaine envoys
 callide dirigens mandat se erga illum, sicuti pater
cunningly sending he-sends-word himself toward him just-as the-father
 statuerat, et sicut erga filiolum ex baptismo oportebat,
had-established and as toward a-godson from baptism it-was-fitting
 benivolum esse, verumtamen ut nepoti suo, filio
well-posed to-be nevertheless that to-the-nephew his-own to-the-son
 Pippini, donec cum eo loqueretur, parceret, deprecatus est.
of-Pippin until with him he-might-speak he-should-spare requested he-has
 Et his ita compositis ad urbem Vangionum iter direxit.
and these so settled to the-city of-the-Vangiones the-journey directed
 Eodem tempore Lodhuwicus partem exercitus inibi causa
at-the-same time Louis part of-the-army there for-the-sake
 custodiae reliquerat et Saxonibus sollicitatis obviam illis
of-guard had-left and the-Saxons stirred-up to-meet them
 perrexerat. Quam ob rem Lodharius parvo conflictu custodes
had-proceeded which for reason Lothar with-small clash the-guards
 fugere compulit, Renum cum universo exercitu transiens
to-flee compelled the-Rhine with the-whole army crossing
 Franconofurth iter direxit. Quo insperate hinc Lodharius,
to-Frankfurt the-journey directed where unexpectedly from-here Lothar
 inde Lodhuwicus confluunt, paceque sub nocte composita
from-there Louis stream-together and-peace under night settled

alter inibi, alter vero, quo Moin in Renum confluit, castra
the-one there the-other but where the-Main into the-Rhine flows the-camp
 haud fraterno amore componunt. Cumque Lodhuwicus
by-no-means with-brotherly love pitch and-when Louis
 viriliter resisteret, et Lodharius illum absque praelio sibi
manfully resisted and Lothar him without battle to-himself
 subigere diffideret, sperans Karolum facilius superari posse,
to-subdue despaired hoping Charles more-easily to-be-overcome to-be-able
 ea pactione praelium diremit, ut III. Idus Novembris
on-that agreement the-battle he-broke-off that on-the-third Ides of-November
 eodem loco rursum conveniant et, ni concordia statutis
in-the-same place again they-should-meet and unless concord in-the-terms
 interveniat, quid cuique debeatur, armis decernant; et his
should-intervene what to-each is-due by-arms they-should-decide and these
 ita omissis Karolum sibi subigere contendit.
so dropped Charles to-himself to-subdue he-strove

II · CHARLES'S EMBASSY

Charles sends Nithard and Adelgar to remind Lothar of their oaths, offering to be faithful to him if he will let him keep what their father gave him. Lothar sends them back with a greeting and strips them of their honors. The men between the Meuse and the Seine call Charles; at Quierzy he receives many, but some beyond the Charbonnière, misled by Odulf, defect.

Per idem tempus Karolus Bituricas ad placitum, quo
through the-same time Charles to-Bourges to the-assembly at-which
 Pippinum sui iuraverant venturum, venerat. Qui quidem
Pippin his-men had-sworn about-to-come had-come who indeed
 ex omnibus nuntio recepto missos, videlicet Nithardum et
from all-sides news received envoys namely Nithard and

Adelgarium, delegit et, uti ocius valuit, ad Lodharium
Adelgar chose and as more-quickly he-was-able to Lothar
 direxit, mandans ac deprecans, ut memor sit sacramentorum,
sent sending-word and entreating that mindful he-be of-the-oaths
 quae inter se iuraverant, et servet, quae inter illos
which between themselves they-had-sworn and keep what between them
 pater statuerat; insuper etiam fraternae filioli conditionis
the-father had-established moreover also of-the-brotherly and-godson's relation
 meminerit; haberet sua sibi et, quod illi pater
he-be-mindful let-him-have his-own-things to-himself and what to-him the-father
 suo consensu concesserat, absque conflictu illum habere
with-his consent had-granted without conflict him to-have
 permittat; promittens, si hoc faceret, fidelem se illi et
he-should-allow promising if this he-did faithful himself to-him and
 subiectum fore velle, ita ut primogenito fratri esse oporteret.
subject to-be to-wish so as to-a-first-born brother to-be it-was-fitting
 Insuper etiam quicquid actenus in illum deliquerat pollicitus
moreover also whatever up-to-now against him he-had-offended promised
 est se ex corde remittere, deprecatus, ne amplius suos
he-has himself from the-heart to-forgive having-entreated lest longer his-men
 sollicitet, ne regnum sibi a Deo commissum perturbet.
he-should-stir-up nor the-kingdom to-himself by God entrusted disturb
 Cederent undique paci atque concordiae, et hoc se
they-should-yield on-all-sides to-peace and concord and this himself
 sua suorumque ex parte ratum videre ac per hoc
his-own and-of-his-men from side ratified to-see and through this
 conservare velle mandavit; quod etsi alter hoc ita esse non
to-preserve to-wish he-sent-word which even-if the-other this so to-be not
 crederet, quocumque vellet modo ex his illum certum
believed in-whatever he-might-wish way of these-things him sure
 se efficere promisit. Quae quidem Lodharius simulans se
himself to-make he-promised which indeed Lothar pretending himself

benigne suscipere legatos tantum salutationis causa redire
kindly to-receive the-envoys only of-greeting for-the-sake to-return
 permisit ac per suos se responsurum de ceteris esse
allowed and through his-men himself about-to-answer about the-rest to-be
 respondit. Insuper etiam, quoniam ad ipsum se vertere
he-answered moreover also since to him themselves to-turn
 frustrata fide noluerunt, honoribus, quos pater illis
with-frustrated faith they-were-unwilling of-the-honors which the-father to-them
 dederat, privavit; ita, quid fratri facere cogitaret, nolens
had-given he-deprived so what to-the-brother to-do he-was-planning unwilling
 indicium dabat. Interea omnes inter Mosam et Sequanam
a-sign he-gave meanwhile all between the-Meuse and the-Seine
 degentes ad Karolum miserunt mandantes, ut, antequam a
living to Charles sent sending-word that before by
 Lodhario praeoccuparentur, veniret, adventum eius se
Lothar they-were-forestalled he-should-come the-arrival of-him themselves
 praestolatos promittentes. Quam ob rem cum perpaucis
about-to-await promising which for reason with very-few
 Karolus hoc iter accelerans ab Aquitania Carisiacum venit
Charles this journey hastening from Aquitaine to-Quierzy came
 et a Carbonariis et infra ad se venientes benigne
and from the-Charbonnière and below to himself coming kindly
 suscepit. Extra vero Herenfridus, Gislebertus, Bovo ac ceteri
received beyond but Herenfrid Gislebert Bovo and the-others
 ab Odulfo decepti, firmatam fidem neglegentes, defecerunt.
by Odulf deceived the-confirmed faith neglecting defected

III · DEFECTIONS

News that Pippin means to attack Charles's mother calls Charles to Aquitaine, where he routs Pippin's men. Meanwhile Lothar crosses the Meuse. Hilduin of Saint Denis and Gerard of Paris desert Charles for him, and others follow, breaking their oaths rather than lose their estates. Lothar crosses the Seine, winning men by threats and flattery, and Charles hurries with his mother toward Francia.

Eodem tempore missus ab Aquitania venit nuntians, quod
at-the-same time an-envoy from Aquitaine came announcing that
Pippinus cum his qui parti suae favebant super matrem
Pippin with those who party his-own favored upon the-mother
Karoli irruere vellet; ac per hoc Karolus Francos inibi
of-Charles to-rush wished and through this Charles the-Franks there
omittens mandat, si illos frater suus, donec reverteretur,
leaving sends-word if them brother his-own until he-should-return
opprimere vellet, obviam sibi procederent. Insuper ad
to-crush should-wish to-meet him they-should-come-forward moreover to
Lodharium Hugonem, Adelhardum, Gerhardum et Hegilonem
Lothar Hugh Adalbard Gerard and Hegilo
direxit, cunctaque, quae tunc nuper illi mandaverat, replicans
he-sent and-all which then lately to-him he-had-sent-word repeating
nec non et pro Deo deprecatus est, ne suos sibi
nor not also for God entreated has lest his-men from-himself
subtrahens regnum, quod Deus paterque suo consensu
withdrawing the-kingdom which God and-the-father with-his consent
illi dederat, amplius dissipet. Et his ita compositis in
to-him had-given further he-should-scatter and these so settled into
Aquitaniam festinus perrexit superque Pippinum et suos
Aquitaine hastening proceeded and-upon Pippin and his-men
irruens fuga illos abire compulit. Per idem tempus cum
rushing in-flight them to-go-away compelled through the-same time when

Lodharius a Lodhuwico reverteretur, et omnes citra
Lothar from Louis was-returning and all on-this-side-of
Carbonarias ad illum venirent, Mosa traiecta ratum duxit, ut
the-Charbonnière to him came the-Meuse crossed right he-held that
Sequanam usque procederet. Quo dum tenderet, Hilduinus
the-Seine up-to he-should-advance whither while he-was-heading Hilduin
abbas Sancti Dyonisii et Gerardus comes Parisii civitatis
abbot of-Saint Denis and Gerard count of-Paris city
a Karolo deficientes fide frustrata ad illum venerunt.
from Charles defecting with-faith frustrated to him came
Quod quidem Pippinus filius Bernardi regis Langobardorum
which indeed Pippin son of-Bernard king of-the-Lombards
ceterique cernentes elegerunt potius more servorum fidem
and-the-others seeing chose rather in-the-manner of-slaves faith
omittere, iuramenta contempnere, quam ad modicum tempus
to-abandon oaths to-scorn than for a-short time
facultates relinquere, ac per hoc fide relicta quos supra
their-posessions to-leave and through this faith abandoned those-whom above
memoravimus secuti eidem se dederunt. Hinc quoque
we-have-mentioned having-followed to-the-same themselves gave hence also
Lodharius magnanimis effectus Sequanam excessit, praemittens
Lothar high-spirited made the-Seine crossed sending-ahead
more solito, qui ad defectionem inter Sequanam
in-the-manner accustomed men-who to defection between the-Seine
et Ligerem degentes partim minis, partim blanditiis
and the-Loire those-living partly by-threats partly by-blandishments
subducerent. Ipse quoque, uti consueverat, lento itinere
should-draw-off he-himself also as he-had-been-accustomed with-slow march
subsecutus Carnutenam civitatem tendebat. Cumque
having-followed-after Chartres city was-making-for and-when
Teodericum, Ericum et hos qui illum sequi deliberaverant
Theoderic Eric and those who him to-follow had-decided

ad se venturos didicisset, spe multitudinis suae
to himself about-to-come he-had-learned on-the-hope of-multitude his-own
 fretus, Ligerem usque ut procederet, deliberavit; Karolus
relying the-Loire up-to that he-should-advance he-decided Charles
 quoque a fuga, qua Pippinum et suos disperserat,
also from the-rout by-which Pippin and his-men he-had-scattered
 reversus et, quoniam, matrem ubi tuto relinqueret, non
having-retained and since the-mother where safely he-might-leave not
 habebat, pariter ad Franciae partes properabant.
he-had together toward of-Francia the-parts they-were-hastening

IV · THE TRUCE AT ORLÉANS

With so many deserting, Charles's men choose to die nobly rather than betray their king, and march to meet Lothar near Orléans. Lothar, hoping to win without battle, offers a truce: Charles will hold Aquitaine, Septimania, Provence, and ten counties until a meeting at Attigny in May. Charles's men accept to keep their king safe, but Lothar at once begins to suborn them.

Audiens autem Karolus interea, quod hi omnes, quos supra
bearing moreover Charles meanwhile that these all whom above
 memoravimus, ab eo defecissent, et Lodharius cum ingenti
we-have-mentioned from him had-defected and Lothar with a-buge
 exercitu persequi illum usque ad internitionem statuisset,
army to-pursue him all-the-way to destruction had-decided
 hinc autem Pippinus et hinc Brittones infesti erant, quid
from-here moreover Pippin and from-here the-Bretons hostile were what
 facerent, concilium convocant, ineunt deque his omnibus
they-should-do a-council they-convene they-enter and-about these all
 deliberaturi, facile consilium perfacile inventum est. Et
about-to-deliberate an-easy counsel very-easily found was and

quoniam nihil praeter vitam et corpora reliquum habebant,
since nothing except life and bodies remaining they-had
 elegerunt potius nobiliter mori quam regem proditum
they-chose rather nobly to-die than the-king betrayed
 derelinquere. Quam ob rem obviam Lodhario pergunt,
to-abandon which for reason to-meet Lothar they-proceed
 atque Aurilianensem urbem hinc inde petunt. Castra ponunt
and Orléans the-city hither thither seek the-camp they-pitch
 distantes ab invicem plus minus leuwas VI, legatos invicem
distant from each-other more less leagues six envoys to-each-other
 dirigunt; et Karolus quidem sola iusticia pacem petebat,
they-send and Charles indeed by-sole justice peace sought
 Lodharius vero, quo astu absque praelio illum decipere
Lothar but by-what cunning without battle him to-deceive
 ac superare posset, operam dabat. Quod cum peragere
and to-overcome he-might-be-able effort gave which when to-accomplish
 strenue resistentibus diffideret, sperans vires suas, uti
vigorously with-men-resisting he-despaired hoping strength his-own as
 coeperant, cotidie accrescere, quam, cum Karolo decrevissent,
they-had-begun daily to-increase than with Charles they-had-decreased
 facilius illum subiugari posse arbitrabatur. Hac autem spe
more-easily him to-be-subjugated to-be-able he-reckoned by-this moreover hope
 deceptus ea pactione praelium diremit, ut cederet
deceived on-that agreement the-battle he-broke-off that there-should-fall-to
 Karolo Aquitania, Septimania, Provincia et decem comitatus
Charles Aquitaine Septimania Provence and ten counties
 inter Ligerim et Sequanam, eo videlicet modo, ut his
between the-Loire and the-Seine in-that namely way that with-these
 contentus interim inibi esset, donec Atiniacum VIII.
content meanwhile there he-should-be until to-Attigny on-the-eighth
 Id. Maias conveniant; quasi quidem communi consensu
Ides of-May they-should-meet as-if indeed by-common consent

utrorumque utilitatem praevidere ac statuere velle promisit.

of-both the-advantage to-foresee and to-settle to-wish he-promised

Primores quoque partium Karoli cernentes negotium vires

the-chief-men also of-the-party of-Charles seeing the-business strengtb

suas excedere maximeque timebant, ne forte praelio

their-own to-exceed and-chiefly they-feared lest perhaps battle

commisso in tanta paucitate regem suum salvare difficile

joined in such fewness king their-own to-save hardly

possent — erat enim spes cunctis non modica

they-might-be-able there-was for hope to-all not small

indolis eius—; quam ob rem statutis eo tenore

of-the-character of-him which for reason to-the-terms on-that footing

consentiunt, ut deinceps Lodharius Karolo ita fidus amicus

they-agree that thereafter Lothar to-Charles so faithful friend

sit, sicut frater per iusticiam fratri esse debet, et

should-be as a-brother through justice to-a-brother to-be ought and

regna, quae illi deputabat, quieta habere faceret

the-kingdoms which to-him he-was-assigning undisturbed to-have should-cause

ac interim super Lodhuvicum hostiliter ire dedisset;

and meanwhile upon Louis in-hostile-fashion to-go should-have-allowed

aliter autem iure quod iuraverant absoluti esse deberent.

otherwise moreover from-the-right which they-had-sworn released to-be they-ought

Qua quidem arte et regem suum a periculis subtrahunt

by-which indeed art both king their-own from dangers they-withdraw

et se mox a sacramento absolvunt. Nam antequam

and themselves soon from the-oath they-release for before

idem, qui haec iuraverant, domo egrederentur,

the-same-men who these-things had-sworn from-the-house went-out

aliquos ex his qui aderant subducere ab illo temptavit et in

some of those who were-present to-draw-away from him he-tried and on

crastinum quosdam suorum recepit. Insuper et in regna,

the-morrow certain-ones of-his-men received moreover also into the-kingdoms

quae illi deputaverat, statim direxit et, in quantum potuit,
which to-him he-had-assigned at-once he-sent and in as-far-as he-could
 ne illi se subderent, perturbavit et, ut e Provincia
lest to-him themselves they-should-submit he-disturbed and that from Provence
 ad se venientes exciperet, perrexit et, quemadmodum
to him coming he-might-receive proceeded and how
 Lodhuwicum dolo an vi superare posset, intendit.
Louis by-guile or by-force to-overcome he-might-be-able he-aimed

V • BERNARD, THE BRETONS, AND THE COUNCIL

At Orléans Charles welcomes Theobald, Warin, and some Burgundians. Bernard of Septimania puts him off, pleading an oath to Pippin, and when he fails again at Bourges, Charles falls upon him; Bernard escapes, then returns in humility and is forgiven. Nominoë of the Bretons swears fealty. Remembering Lothar's broken oaths, Charles's council resolves that he go to Attigny and, if refused justice, fight.

Interea Karolus Aurilianensem urbem veniens Teotbaldum et
meanwhile Charles to-Orléans the-city coming Theobald and
 Warinum cum quibusdam e Burgundia ad se venientes
Warin with certain-men from Burgundy to himself coming
 gratanter ac benigne excepit. Hinc autem obviam Bernardo,
gladly and kindly received from-here moreover to-meet Bernard
 sicut mandaverat, Nivernensem urbem petit. Sed Bernardus
as he-had-sent-word Nevers the-city seeks but Bernard
 more solito ad illum venire distulit dicens se cum
in-the-manner accustomed to him to-come put-off saying himself with
 Pippino suisque sacramento firmasse, ut neuter absque
Pippin and-bis-men by-oath to-have-confirmed that neither without
 alterius consensu cum quolibet quodcumque pactum inire
the-other's consent with anyone any agreement to-enter

deberet; quam ob rem testatus est ad illos se ire velle,
ought which for reason testified he-has to them himself to-go to-wish
 et si efficere posset, ut una secum sui devenirent,
and if to-bring-about he-could that together with-himself his-men should-come
 bene; sin aliter, soluto iuramento infra dies quindecim
well but-if otherwise released the-oath within days fifteen
 ad illum reversurum suaeque ditioni se commissurum
to him about-to-return and-to-his dominion himself about-to-commit
 esse promisit. Quam ob rem Karolus Bituricas iterum
to-be he-promised which for reason Charles to-Bourges again
 obviam illi venit. Quo Bernardus veniens cum neutrum
to-meet him came whither Bernard coming when neither
 fecisset, graviter Karolus ferens seductiones, quas patri
he-had-done heavily Charles bearing the-deceptions which to-the-father
 fecerat et actenus illi faciebat, timens, ne aliter illum
he-had-done and up-to-now to-him was-doing fearing lest otherwise him
 comprehendere posset, subito in illum irruere statuit.
to-seize he-might-be-able suddenly upon him to-rush decided
 Sed hoc Bernardus, quanquam tarde, praesensit, fugam
but this Bernard although late perceived flight
 iniit ac vix evasit. Karolus autem quosdam e suis
entered-on and scarcely escaped Charles moreover certain-ones of his-men
 stravit, quosdam saucios ac semivivos reliquit, quosdam vero
laid-low certain-ones wounded and half-dead left certain-ones but
 inlesos cepit ac more captivorum custodiri praecepit,
unharmed took and in-the-manner of-captives to-be-guarded commanded
 suppellectilem autem universam diripere permisit. Hinc quoque
the-baggage moreover all to-plunder allowed hence also
 Bernardus humilior effectus paulo post supplex ad Karolum
Bernard humbler made a-little afterward suppliant to Charles
 venit, dicens et fidelem se illi fuisse et tunc, si
came saying both faithful himself to-him to-have-been and then if

liceret, esse voluisset, et deinceps, quanquam hac
it-were-permitted to-be would-have-wished and thereafter although with-this
 contumelia affectus esset, in futurum fore minime
insult afflicted he-had-been in the-future about-to-be by-no-means
 diffideret; quod etsi quilibet aliter dicere vellet, armis
he-doubted which even-if anyone otherwise to-say should-wish by-arms
 se hoc propulsurum promittit. Quibus Karolus credulus
himself this about-to-repel he-promises to-which Charles believing
 effectus ditatum muneribus et gratia in societatem amicitiae
made enriched with-gifts and favor into the-fellowship of-friendship
 suscepit et, ut Pippinum ac suos, uti promiserat, subditos
received and that Pippin and his-men as he-had-promised subject
 sibi efficere temptaret, direxit. Et his ita compositis
to-himself to-make he-might-try he-sent and these so settled
 Cenomannicam urbem adiit Lantbertum Ericumque una
Le-Mans the-city he-approached Lambert and-Eric together
 cum ceteris recepturus. Cumque ille illos inibi perhumane
with the-others about-to-receive and-when he them there very-courteously
 reciperet, protinus ad Nomenoium ducem Brittanniorum
received at-once to Nominoë the-duke of-the-Bretons
 mittit scire cupiens, si suae se ditioni subdere vellet.
he-sends to-know wishing if to-his himself dominion to-submit he-would-wish
 Qui adquiescens consiliis plurimorum Karolo munera mittit
who assenting to-the-counsels of-very-many to-Charles gifts sends
 ac sacramento fidem deinceps servandam illi firmavit.
and by-oath faith thereafter to-be-kept to-him confirmed
 Quibus peractis, quoniam tempus placiti, quod Attiniacum
which completed since the-time of-the-assembly which at-Attigny
 condixerant, appropinquare videbatur, quid consulte ac solida
they-had-agreed to-approach seemed what prudently and with-firm
 fide sibi suisque agere oporteret, Karolus anxius erat. Ergo
faith for-himself and-his-men to-do it-was-fitting Charles anxious was therefore

participes secretorum convocat, rem omnibus notam replicat
the-sharers of-his-secrets he-convenes the-thing to-all known he-repeats
 ac, quemammodum a tanta calamitate congruentius se
and how from so-great calamity more-fittingly himself
 suosque exui posse existimarent, ut aperiretur, deposcit;
and-his-men to-be-freed to-be-able they-might-judge that it-be-disclosed he-asks
 seque in omnibus publice utilitati et parere velle, insuper
and-himself in all-things to-the-public good both to-obey to-wish moreover
 etiam, si oporteret pro ea mortem subire, minime differre
also if it-were-fitting for it death to-undergo by-no-means to-delay
 fatetur. Quibus cum undique vires crevisse viderentur,
he-confesses to-whom since on-all-sides the-strength to-have-grown seemed
 reminiscentes insidiarum, quas Lodharius temporibus patris
recalling the-plots which Lothar in-the-times of-father
 sui patri et Karolo inferre studuerat, quas etiam
his-own against-the-father and Charles to-bring had-been-eager which also
 post obitum patris fratribus suis absque remedio
after the-death of-the-father against-brothers his-own without remedy
 struebat — occurrebant insuper sacramenta, quae tunc nuper
he-was-building there-occurred moreover the-oaths which then lately
 fefellerat—, aiebant se omnem iusticiam ab eo libenter
he-had-broken they-said themselves all justice from him gladly
 consequi velle, sed his inditiis nil boni sperare posse;
to-obtain to-wish but from-these signs nothing of-good to-hope to-be-able
 idcirco sibi undique consultum videri, quocumque modo
therefore to-themselves on-all-sides advisable to-seem in-whatever way
 posset, ad conductum placitum venire minime differret;
he-could to the-agreed assembly to-come by-no-means he-should-delay
 quodsi frater suus, uti promiserat, communem utilitatem
but-if brother his-own as he-had-promised the-common good
 quaerere ac statuere vellet, hoc omnibus notis placere et, ut
to-seek and to-settle would-wish this to-all known to-please and that

gratanter recipetur, congruum esse; sin aliter, fretus iusticia
 gladly it-be-received fitting to-be but-if otherwise relying on-justice
 ac per hoc auxilio divino suorumque fidelium et, quicquid
 and through this on-the-help divine and-of-his-own faithful-men also whatever
 regni pater suus amborumque fidelium consensu illi
 of-the-kingdom father his-own and-of-both faithful-men with-the-consent to-him
 dederat, obtinere omni virtute non neglegat.
 had-given to-bold with-all might not he-should-neglect

VI • THE CROSSING OF THE SEINE

Charles summons the Aquitanians and his mother. At the flooded Seine he finds Lothar's counts guarding the river, with the boats destroyed and the bridges broken. Merchant ships carried upriver by the tide are found near Rouen; Charles mans twenty-eight of them, and the guards flee. He rescues Warin, pursues the rebels through the forest of Othe, and reaches Troyes after Holy Thursday.

Ergo omnes Aquitanos, qui suae parti favebant, una
 therefore all the-Aquitanians who his-own party favored together
 cum matre post se venire praecepit, insuper, quicumque
 with the-mother after himself to-come he-commanded moreover whoever
 e Burgundia nec non et inter Ligerem et Sequanam
 from Burgundy nor not also between the-Loire and the-Seine
 sui iuris esse vellent, similiter fecit. Idem autem ipse
 of-his-own right to-be wished likewise he-did the-same moreover he-himself
 una cum his qui per praesens aderant, quanquam difficile
 together with those who at-the present were-there although difficult
 videretur, prefatum iter arripuit. Cumque Sequanam venisset,
 it-seemed the-aforesaid journey took-up and-when the-Seine he-had-come
 reperit Guntboldum, Warnarium, Arnulfum, Gerardum nec
 he-found Guntbold Warner Arnulf Gerard nor

non et omnes a Carbonariis et infra comites, abbates,
not also all from the-Charbonnière and below counts abbots
 episcopos, ob hoc videlicet a Lodhario inibi relictos,
bishops for this namely by Lothar there left
 ut, si absque suo consensu transire vellet, minime
that if without their consent to-cross he-should-wish by-no-means
 posset. Accedebat insuper, quod amnis inundans vada
he-could there-was-added moreover that the-river flooding the-fords
 ubique denegaverat, custodes autem fluminis omnes naves
everywhere had-denied the-guards moreover of-the-river all ships
 aut contriverant aut certe submerserant, Gerardus quoque
either had-smashed or at-least had-sunk Gerard also
 pontes, quoscumque repperit, destruxit. Igitur supra modum
bridges whatever he-found destroyed therefore beyond measure
 transitus difficilis effectus non modicam transire cupientibus
the-crossing difficult made not small to-cross to-those-wishing
 inportabat molestiam. Cum autem tot difficultatibus
brought trouble when moreover by-so-many difficulties
 animi multimodis agitentur consiliis, tandem mercatorum
the-minds by-manifold were-tossed counsels at-last of-merchants
 naves ab hostio, quo Sequana mare influit, ferventi
ships from the-mouth by-which the-Seine into-the-sea flows by-boiling
 estu abductae propterque Rotomacensem urbem expositae
tide carried-off and-near Rouen the-city put-ashore
 nunciantur. Quo veniens harum duas minus de XXX^{ta}
are-announced whither coming of-these two less than thirty
 Karolus armato milite complet, idemque ingressus praemittit,
Charles with-armed soldiery fills and-the-same having-entered sends-ahead
 qui se venturum prenuntient, unicuique volenti delicta
men-who himself about-to-come should-announce to-each-one willing the-offenses
 cedens, nolentibus autem, ut habeant regnumque a
yielding to-the-unwilling moreover that they-should-depart and-the-kingdom by

Deo sibi datum illi relinquant. Quae dum sprevisent,
God to-himself given to-him they-should-leave which while they-had-scorned
classisque appropinquare videretur, crucem, in qua iuraverant,
and-the-fleet to-approach seemed the-cross on which they-had-sworn
et Karolum ut cognoverunt, relicto littore protinus fugerunt.
and Charles as they-recognized left the-shore at-once fled
Quos, quoniam in traiciendo equi moram fecerant, consequi
whom since in crossing the-horses delay had-made to-pursue
nequibat, ad Sanctum Dyonisium laudis obsecrationisque
he-could-not to Saint Denis of-praise and-of-prayer
causa iter direxit; quo veniens comperit, quod hi, quos
for-the-sake the-journey directed whither coming he-learned that those whom
fuga disperserat, in unum una cum Arnulfo et Gerardo
by-flight he-had-scattered into one together with Arnulf and Gerard
ceterisque coissent et super Teutbaldum, Warinum, Otbertum
and-the-others had-gathered and upon Theobald Warin Orbert
ceterosque, qui, uti mandatum fuerat, ad Karolum veniebant,
and-the-others who as commanded it-had-been to Charles were-coming
irruere vellent. Quam ob rem ad Sanctum Germanum
to-rush wished which for reason to Saint Germain
causa orationis perrexit ac per totam noctem iter
for-the-sake of-prayer he-proceeded and through the-whole night the-journey
faciens aurora delucescente, ubi Luva Sequane confluit,
making at-dawn growing-light where the-Loing with-the-Seine flows-together
Warinum cum sociis salvum recepit. Ac sic uno eodemque
Warin with companions safe he-received and so by-one and-the-same
itinere Senonicam adiit urbem. Hinc noctu consurgit
journey Sens he-approached the-city from-here by-night he-rises
per Uttam iter faciens speransque, uti nuntiatum
through the-Otbe the-journey making and-hoping as announced
illi fuerat, quos supra memoravimus in eodem saltu
to-him it-had-been those-whom above we-have-mentioned in the-same forest

consistere; disposuerat enim, ubicumque et qualitercumque
to-be-stationed he-had-arranged for wherever and however
 posset, supra illos irruere. Quod et utique fecisset, nisi
he-could upon them to-rush which also certainly he-would-have-done unless
 sollicitis vitae mors imminens pro foribus nunciaretur; quam
to-the-anxious for-life death impending at the-doors were-announced which
 ob rem poene cuncti supra modum exterriti, quo quisque
for reason almost all beyond measure terrified wherever each-one
 valuit, fugam iniit; quos quoniam Karolus consequi non
was-able flight entered-on whom since Charles to-pursue not
 potuit sociis equisque fessis, coenam Domini quieti
could with-companions and-horses tired the-supper of-the-Lord to-rest
 indulgens Tricasinorum civitatem in crastinum adiit.
granting of-Troyes the-city on the-morrow he-approached

VII • LOUIS DRIVEN INTO BAVARIA

Meanwhile Lothar, advised by Otgar of Mainz and Count Adalbert of Metz, who hate Louis, crosses the Rhine with a huge army and wins over many of Louis's men by threats and flattery. The rest flee, and Louis withdraws into Bavaria with a few. Lothar leaves Adalbert to bind the people by oath and to stop Louis from joining Charles, and marches against Charles, intending to celebrate Easter at Aachen.

Eodem tempore, dum haec quae premisimus a Karolo
at-the-same time while these-things which we-have-set-forth by Charles
 exsequerentur, Lodharius, uti praefatum est, dolo an vi
were-being-carried-out Lothar as said-before it-was by-guile or by-force
 Lodhuvicum aut subdere aut, quod mavult, perdere posset,
Louis either to-subdue or what he-prefers to-destroy he-might-be-able
 tota mente tractabat. In quo negotio congrue Otgarium
with-the-whole mind was-considering in which business fittingly Otgar

Magontiae sedis episcopum et Adhelbertum Metensium
of-Mainz of-the-see bishop and Adalbert of-the-people-of-Metz
 comitem convocavit; habebat enim uterque Lodhuvicum
count he-summons had for each Louis
 ad mortem usque exosum. Iam enim Adhelbertus ex
to death all-the-way hated already for Adalbert from
 infirmitate, qua poene per annum detentus fuerat, velut in
the-sickness by-which almost through a-year held he-had-been as-if as
 supplementum fratricidii respiraverat; erat enim eo in tempore
support of-fratricide had-revived he-was for that in time
 ita prudens consilio, ut sententiam ab eo prolatam non quilibet
so prudent in-counsel that the-opinion by him brought-forth not anyone
 mutare vellet. Cuius instinctu Lodharius collectam hinc inde
to-change would-wish at-whose instigation Lothar a-gathered hither thither
 infinitam multitudinem Renum traiecit, praemittens more
boundless multitude the-Rhine took-across sending-ahead in-the-manner
 solito qui minis blanditiisque pendulam plebem subducere
accustomed men-who with-threats and-blandishments the-wavering people to-draw-off
 temptarent. Timens autem populus, qui cum Lodhuwico
should-try fearing moreover the-people which with Louis
 erat, ne tantum exercitum ferre valeret, partim defecti ad
was lest so-great an-army to-bear it-might-be-able partly defected to
 Lodharium transeunt, partim fugam ineunt ac Lodhuvicum
Lothar cross-over partly flight enter-on and Louis
 desolatum relinquunt. Qui, quoniam omne suffragium aliud
desolate leave who since all support other
 undique deerat, cum perpaucis abiit et in Baioariam se
on-all-sides was-lacking with very-few departed and into Bavaria himself
 recepit. Quod quoniam Lodhuwico contigit, minime deinceps
betook which since to-Louis it-happened by-no-means thereafter
 Lodharius aliquid illum praevalere putavit. Igitur Adhelbertum
Lothar at-all him to-prevail thought therefore Adalbert

ducem, quem supra memoravimus, ob hoc inibi reliquit, ut et
the-duke whom above we-have-mentioned for this there he-left that both
 populum sacramentis sibi firmaret, et, si Lodhuwicus ad
the-people by-oaths to-himself he-might-bind and if Louis to
 Karolum ire vellet, nullo modo posset. Ipse vero, quoniam
Charles to-go should-wish in-no way he-could be-himself but since
 Karolum Sequanam transire reppererat, obviam ire parabat.
Charles the-Seine to-cross he-had-found to-meet to-go was-preparing
 Velociter quidem praemittit rei veritatem, ubi et cum
swiftly indeed he-sends-ahead of-the-thing the-truth where and with
 quibus esset, scire cupiens, Aquis pascha celebraturus.
whom he-was to-know wishing at-Aachen Easter about-to-celebrate

VIII • THE CROWN ARRIVES AT EASTER

On Holy Saturday, when Charles and his men have nothing but the clothes they wear, envoys arrive from Aquitaine with his crown and vestments, carried safely through lands full of plunderers. All take it as a sign of God's favor. Lothar's envoys complain that Charles has crossed Lothar's borders; Charles replies that Lothar has broken every promise, and goes to the meeting place, where Lothar delays.

Mira sane ac merito notanda res Karolo in eodem
wonderful truly and deservedly to-be-noted a-thing to-Charles on the-same
 sancto sabbato contigit. Nam neque ipse nec quilibet in
holy Saturday happened for neither he-himself nor anyone in
 suo comitatu quicquam absque quod corpore gerebant et
his-own retinue anything except what on-the-body they-wore and
 absque armis et equis habebant; cumque de balneo quidem
except arms and horses had and-when from the-bath indeed
 egrederetur et eadem vestimenta, quae exuerat, induere
he-was-coming-out and the-same clothes which he-had-taken-off to-put-on

pararet, repente ab Aquitania missi pro foribus adstiterant,
was-preparing suddenly from Aquitaine envoys at the-doors had-stood
 qui coronam et omnem ornatum, tam regium quam et
who the-crown and all the-adornment as-much royal as also
 quicquid ad cultum divinum pertinebat, ferebant. Quis non
whatever to the-worship divine pertained were-bringing who not
 miretur paucos et poene ignotos viros tot terrarum
would-wonder few and almost unknown men so-many of-lands
 spacia, dum ubique omnes rapine insisterent, tot talenta
spaces while everywhere all to-plunder were-devoted so-many talents
 auri gemmarumque infinitam multitudinem ferre inlesos
of-gold and-of-jewels a-boundless multitude to-carry unharmed
 valuisse? et, quod maxime mirandum fateor fore, qualiter
to-have-been-able and what chiefly to-be-wondered-at I-confess to-be how
 ad definitum locum vel certe ad statutam diem et horam
to the-appointed place or at-least to the-fixed day and hour
 venire poterant, cum nec idem Karolus, ubi se suosque
to-come they-could when not-even the-same Charles where himself and-bis-men
 oporteret, sciebat. Quem quidem eventum haud aliter
it-behooved knew which indeed event by-no-means otherwise
 quam munere ac nutu divino visum est evenire potuisse;
than by-the-gift and nod divine seemed it-has to-happen to-have-been-able
 ac per hoc commilitonibus stuporem iniecit omnesque
and through this on-the-fellow-soldiers astonishment it-cast and-all
 maximam ad spem salutis erexit. Hinc vero Karolus cunctaque
greatest to hope of-safety it-raised hence but Charles and-all
 cohors exultans ad festa celebranda sese convertit.
the-company exulting to the-feast to-be-celebrated themselves turned
 Expleto autem quod ceperat, missos Lodharii benigne
completed moreover what he-had-begun the-envoys of-Lothar kindly
 excipiens convivari una secum praecepit; quibus et, ut in
receiving to-feast together with-himself he-commanded to-whom also that on

crastinum redirent, iniunxit, per suos se responsurum

the-morrow they-should-return he-enjoined through his-men himself about-to-answer

de eo, quod frater suus illi mandaverat, promittens.

about that which brother his-own to-him had-sent-word promising

In legatione vero Lodharii quaerebatur, cur absque suo

in the-embassy but of-Lothar it-was-asked why without his

consensu terminos, quos illi statuerat, excederet; et, quia

consent the-borders which to-him he-had-set he-crossed and because

fecerat, saltem, ubicumque illum repperirent, mandat, ut

he-had-done-so at-least wherever him they-might-find he-sends-word that

interim eo loco quiescat, donec illi mandaretur, si ad

meanwhile in-that place he-should-rest until to-him it-be-sent-word whether to

statutum locum an alio, ubi congruentius illi videretur,

the-appointed place or elsewhere where more-fittingly to-him it-might-seem

venire deberet. Karolus per suos econtra se ob hoc

to-come he-ought Charles through his-men in-reply himself for this

statutos terminos excessisse respondit, quoniam de omnibus

the-appointed borders to-have-crossed answered since of all

bonis sua ex parte illi promissis ac iureiurando firmatis

good-things his from side to-him promised and by-oath confirmed

nihil stabile esse permisit. Nam suorum hominum ultra quod

nothing stable to-be he-allowed for of-bis-own men beyond what

firmatum fuerat sollicitatos quosdam suo iuri adiecit,

confirmed had-been stirred-up certain-ones to-bis-own right he-added

quosdam vero vita privavit, insuper regna, quae subiecta

certain-ones but of-life he-deprived moreover the-kingdoms which subject

illi efficere debuit, in quantum valuit, perturbavit et, quod

to-him to-make he-ought in as-far-as he-was-able he-disturbed and what

maximum est, in fratrem hostiliter irruit nec non et

greatest is upon the-brother in-hostile-fashion he-rushed nor not also

suffragium a paganis illum quaerere compulit. Verumtamen,

support from pagans him to-seek he-compelled nevertheless

quanquam se haec ita haberent, in conventum, quod
although themselves these-things so had into the-assembly which
 communi consensu statuerant, venire se velle mandavit;
by-common consent they-had-appointed to-come himself to-wish he-sent-word
 ubi si communem utilitatem, uti promiserat, quaerere ac
where if the-common good as he-had-promised to-seek and
 statuere vellet, sibi placere; sin aliter, de regno,
to-settle he-would-wish to-himself to-please but-if otherwise about the-kingdom
 quod Deus paterque suus suorum consensu illi dederat,
whicb God and-father his-own of-bis-men with-tbe-consent to-bim had-given
 consiliis suorum fidelium in omnibus secundum Dei
to-the-counsels of-bis-own faithful-men in all-things according-to of-God
 voluntatem parere se innotuit. Et his ita compositis
will to-obey himself he-made-known and these so settled
 idem iter arripuit atque ad praefatum locum pridie
the-same journey he-took-up and at the-aforesaid place the-day-before
 quam convenerat praevenit. Quo quidem Lodharius veluti
than it-had-been-agreed arrived-first whither indeed Lothar as-if
 ex consulto venire distulit, verumtamen missos variis
from design to-come delayed nevertheless envoys with-various
 querimoniis refertos frequenter mittebat et, ne forte ex
complaints filled frequently he-was-sending and lest perhaps from
 inproviso Karolus supra illum irruere posset, cavebat.
the-unforeseen Charles upon him to-rush might-be-able he-was-on-guard

Louis sends word that he will help Charles. A minority's view that Charles should first meet his mother and the Aquitanians prevails, and at Châlons he learns that Louis has defeated Adalbert and crossed the Rhine. Lothar claims Charles is fleeing, and Charles marches to meet him. The two brothers meet and send bishops and nobles to beg Lothar for peace, offering everything but their horses and arms.

Interea legati a Lodhuvico venerant nunciantes, quod, si
 meanwhile envoys from Louis had-come announcing that if
 sciret, quomodo fieri posset, in illius adiutorium venire
 he-knew how to-be-done it-could into his help to-come
 vellet. Quo se Karolus et indigere respondit, gratias
 he-would-wish for-which himself Charles also to-need answered thanks
 congruae voluntati egit et, ut hoc accelerare studerent,
 for-the-fitting will he-gave and that this to-hasten they-should-be-eager
 protinus praefatos missos remisit. Cumque quattuor vel eo
 at-once the-aforesaid envoys he-sent-back and-when four or than-that
 amplius dies inibi adventum Lodharii praestolaretur, et ille
 more days there the-arrival of-Lothar be-awaited and he
 venire differret, contionem advocat, concilium iniit, quidnam
 to-come delayed an-assembly he-calls a-council he-entered what
 consultius deinceps illi agendum videretur, deliberaturus.
 more-advisably thereafter by-him to-be-done might-seem about-to-deliberate
 Quidam autem aiebant, quoniam mater sua una cum
 certain-ones moreover said since mother his-own together with
 Aquitaniis veniebat, obviam illi ire debere; sed maxima pars
 the-Aquitanians was-coming to-meet her to-go ought but the-greatest part
 aut obviam Lodhario iter arripere suadebant, aut certe,
 either to-meet Lothar the-march to-take-up urged or at-least
 ubicumque vellet, adventum illius praestolari debere dicebant;
 wherever he-wished the-arrival of-him to-await ought said

ob hoc quidem maxime, quoniam, si quoquo modo aliorum
for this indeed chiefly since if in-any way elsewhere
 iter flectere coepisset, cuncti fugam illum inisse
the-march to-turn he-had-begun all flight him to-have-entered-on
 iactarent, et hinc Lodharium et suos audentiores fieri
would-boast and hence Lothar and his-men bolder to-become
 debere, atque hi, qui adhuc causa timoris neutri se
ought and those who still by-reason of-fear to-neither themselves
 copulaverant, ad illum affluere undique sperabant; quod
had-joined to him to-stream from-all-sides they-expected which
 et evenit. Nam, quamquam difficile, praevaluit tamen
also happened for although with-difficulty it-prevailed yet
 sententia priorum; quam ob rem Cadhellonicam Karolus
the-opinion of-the-former which for reason Châlons Charles
 adiit urbem, ibique matre una cum Aquitaniis recepta
approached the-city and-there the-mother together with the-Aquitanians received
 repente nunciatur, quod Lodhuvicus cum Adhelberto duce
suddenly it-is-announced that Louis with Adalbert duke
 Austrasiorum praelio commisso vicisset Renoque traiecto
of-the-Austrasians battle joined had-conquered and-the-Rhine crossed
 ob illius adiutorium, quantocius posset, veniret. Quod
for his help as-quickly-as he-could was-coming which
 cum otius universis castris omnibus notum fieret,
when more-quickly in-the-whole camp to-all known it-became
 cuncti alacri animo, ut illi obviam irent, suadebant.
all with-eager mind that him to-meet they-should-go urged
 Lodharius quoque ut haec ita se habere deprehendit,
Lothar also when these-things so themselves to-have he-discovered
 circumfusae plebi Karolum fugam inisse persequique
to-the-surrounding people Charles flight to-have-entered-on and-to-pursue
 illum, quantocius posset, velle denuntiat; quo quidem
him as-quickly-as he-could to-wish announces by-which indeed

nuntio fidos sibi alacriores reddidit, dubiis autem
news the-faithful to-himself more-eager he-rendered on-the-doubtful moreover
 quibusque et affluendi audaciam iniecit et firmiores
all both of-streaming-to-him boldness he-cast and firmer
 suae parti reddidit. Cumque Karolus a Lodhario persequi
to-his party rendered and-when Charles by Lotbar to-be-pursued
 se didicisset, quoniam in difficili loco aquis paludibusque
himself he-had-learned since in a-difficult place by-waters and-marshes
 circumfusi castra posuerant, ut absque qualibet difficultate,
surrounded the-camp they-had-placed that without any difficulty
 si Lodharius vellet, congregari possent, protinus obviam
if Lotbar wished to-engage they-might-be-able at-once to-meet
 illi perrexit. Quae quidem Lodhario ut nuntiata sunt,
him he-proceeded which indeed to-Lotbar when announced they-were
 castra posuit ac veluti fessis equis biduo requiem dedit.
the-camp he-placed and as-if to-the-tired horses for-two-days rest gave
 Iterato itaque cum haec eadem fecissent missosque
a-second-time and-so when these same-things they-had-done and-envoys
 invicem frequenter mitterent, sed nihil proficui deliberare
to-each-other frequently were-sending but nothing of-profit to-decide
 possent, tandem appropinquantibus Lodhuicus et Karolus
could at-last approaching Louis and Charles
 conveniunt deque his omnibus in eodem conventu, quae
meet and-about these all in the-same meeting which
 Lodharius absque quolibet moderamine erga se suosque
Lotbar without any restraint against themselves and-their-men
 seviebat, dolendo conferunt, quidve deinceps agendum
was-raging-in in-grieving they-confer and-what thereafter to-be-done
 opportunius videretur, in crastinum deliberaturi. Aurora
more-opportunely might-seem on the-morrow about-to-deliberate at-dawn
 siquidem delucescente conveniunt, concilium ineunt, in quo
indeed growing-light they-meet a-council they-enter in which

multum de tanta calamitate conquirunt. Cumque alteruter,
much about so-great a-calamity they-complain and-when each
 que quantave et qualia passi a fratre fuerant,
what and-how-great and what-sort-of-things suffered from the-brother they-had
 referre desissent, universis visum unanimiter parique
to-relate had-ceased to-all it-seemed unanimously and-with-equal
 consensu, tam ex sacrosancto ordine episcoporum quam
consent as-much from the-sacrosanct order of-the-bishops as
 et laicorum viros nobiles, prudentes, benivolos deligant,
also of-the-laymen men noble prudent well-disposed they-should-choose
 per quos, quae pater inter illos statuerat, et quae post
through whom what the-father between them had-established and what after
 obitum patris ab illo passi sint, mandent, insuper
the-death of-the-father from him suffered they-have they-should-send-word moreover
 obsecrant, ut memor sit Dei omnipotentis et concedat
they-should-beseech that mindful he-be of-God almighty and grant
 pacem fratribus suis universeque ecclesiae Dei; cederet
peace to-brothers his-own and-to-the-whole church of-God he-should-yield
 cuique, quod patris fratrisque consensu iuste debebatur;
to-each what of-the-father and-of-the-brother with-the-consent justly was-due
 insuper etiam, ut iustis precibus acquiesceret, offerrent illi
moreover also that to-just prayers he-might-assent they-should-offer to-him
 quicquid absque equis et armis in universo exercitu habere
whatever except horses and arms in the-whole army to-have
 videbantur. Et si his monitis obsecrationibusque acquiescere
they-seemed and if to-these warnings and-entreaties to-assent
 vellet, placere; sin aliter, aiebant se divino ex munere
he-would-wish to-please but-if otherwise they-said themselves divine from gift
 suffragium absque dubio sperare posse, si omne quod iustum
support without doubt to-hope to-be-able if all which just

est vellent et hoc fratri offerre humiliter studerent.

is they-wished and this to-the-brother to-offer humbly they-were-eager

Quae quoniam merito rata videbantur, protinus expleta sunt.

which since deservedly ratified seemed at-once fulfilled were

X • THE BATTLE OF FONTENOY

Lothar refuses and goes to meet Pippin. Louis and Charles overtake him near Auxerre and follow him to Fontenoy, offering everything but horses and arms, then part of each kingdom, then an equal share of Francia; he plays for time until Pippin arrives. On 25 June Louis routs Lothar at Brittas, Nithard fights at Solennat, and at last Lothar's whole army flees.

Sed haec veluti pro nihilo ducta Lodharius spreuit, per

but these-things as-if for nothing held Lothar scorned through

suos se nihil absque prelio velle mandavit confestimque

his-men himself nothing without battle to-wish sent-word and-at-once

obviam Pippino, qui ab Aquitania ad illum veniebat, iter

to-meet Pippin who from Aquitaine to him was-coming the-march

arripuit. Quod cum otius didicissent Lodhuwicus et

took-up which when more-quickly they-had-learned Louis and

sui, supra modum rem graviter ferentes — erant

his-men beyond measure the-thing heavily bearing they-were

enim undique graviter tam itineris longitudine quam

for on-all-sides heavily as-much of-the-march by-the-length as

et proeliis variisque difficultatibus et maxime equorum

also by-battles and-by-various difficulties and chiefly of-the-horses

inopia attriti—, verumtamen, quanquam se haec ita

by-the-want worn-down nevertheless although themselves these-things so

habent, timentes, ne forte, si ab auxilio fratris frater

had fearing lest perhaps if from the-help of-the-brother the-brother

deficeret, posteris suis indignam memoriam reliquissent;
should-fail to-posterity their-own an-unworthy memory they-would-have-left
 quod quidem ne facerent, elegerunt omni penuriae, etiam,
which indeed lest they-should-do they-chose every hardship even
 si oporteret, morti potius subire quam nomen invictum
if it-were-fitting death rather to-undergo than the-name unconquered
 amittere. Quam ob rem ex eadem magnanimitate mestitia
to-lose which for reason from the-same magnanimity sadness
 oppressa, invicem se adortantes, gaudentes velociterque, ut
overcome each-other themselves exhorting rejoicing and-swiftly that
 Lodharium cito consequi possent, ibant. Cumque atque
Lothar quickly to-overtake they-might-be-able they-went and-when and
 insperate propter urbem Alciodorensis uterque exercitus alter
unexpectedly near the-city of-Auxerre each army the-one
 ab altero videretur, confestim Lodharius verens, ne forte
by the-other was-seen at-once Lothar fearing lest perhaps
 fratres sui absque dilatione supra se irruere vellent,
brothers his-own without delay upon himself to-rush should-wish
 armatus castra aliquantulum excessit. Quod quoniam fratres
armed the-camp a-little left which since the-brothers
 sui facere illum cognoverunt, quosdam castra metantes
bis-own to-do him knew certain-men the-camp measuring-out
 relinquunt, quosdam secum armatos assumunt et absque
they-leave certain-men with-themselves armed they-take and without
 dilatione obviam procedunt; missos invicem mittunt
delay to-meet-him advance envoys to-each-other they-send
 pacemque sub nocte componunt. Castra autem ab invicem
and-peace under night settle the-camps moreover from each-other
 distabant plus minus leuvas tres, et intererat paucula
were-distant more less leagues three and there-lay-between a-little
 palus saltusque; ac per hoc erat utrique ad alterum
marsh and-woodland and through this there-was for-each to the-other

difficilis accessus. Quapropter aurora delucescente Lodhuwicus
difficult approach wherefore at-dawn growing-light Louis
 et Karolus ad Lodharium mittunt, mandant sibi valde
and Charles to Lothar send they-send-word to-themselves greatly
 displicere, quod illis pacem absque proelio denegaverat; quod
to-displease that to-them peace without battle he-had-denied which
 etiam, quoniam vellet, et absque qualibet fraude, si fieri
also since he-wished and without any fraud if to-be-done
 deberet, esset. Et primum quidem ieiuniis ac votis Deum
it-must it-should-be and first indeed with-fasts and vows God
 invocent, deinde, si ille transire ad illos voluisset, locum
they-should-invoke then if he to-cross to them should-have-wished a-place
 transeundi se daturos promittunt, ut omni impedimento
of-crossing themselves about-to-give they-promise that with-all hindrance
 sua suorumque ex parte ablato absque qualibet occulta
their-own and-of-their-men from side removed without any hidden
 deceptione congredi possent; quae et, si vellet, sacramento
deception to-engage they-might-be-able which also if he-wished by-oath
 firmare praeceperunt, at si nollet, ut eadem illis
to-confirm they-directed but if he-were-unwilling that the-same to-them
 concederet atque firmare rogaret, petunt. Is autem more
he-should-grant and to-confirm he-should-ask they-request he moreover in-the-manner
 solito per suos se responsurum promisit et, ut
accustomed through his-men himself about-to-answer promised and as-soon-as
 legati regressi sunt, protinus obviam iter arripuit ac
the-envoys returned have at-once to-meet-them the-march took-up and
 locum, quo castra poneret, Fontaneum petit. Eadem
a-place where the-camp he-might-place Fontenoy seeks on-the-same
 autem die fratres sui post Lodharium iter accelerantes
moreover day the-brothers his-own after Lothar the-march hastening
 antecesserunt illum et propter vicum quod Tauriacus dicitur
went-ahead-of him and near the-village which Thury is-called

castra posuerunt. Crastina die exercitus praeparati ad proelium
the-camp placed on-the-next day the-armies prepared for battle
 castra aliquantulum excesserunt. Praemittentes Lodhuwicus ac
the-camp a-little left sending-ahead Louis and
 Karolus Lodhario mandaverunt, ut memor esset fraternae
Charles to-Lothar sent-word that mindful he-be of-the-brotherly
 conditionis, sineret ecclesiam Dei et universum populum
relation he-should-allow the-church of-God and the-whole people
 Christianum pacem habere, concederet illis regna a patre
Christian peace to-have he-should-grant them the-kingdoms by the-father
 suo consensu concessa, haberet sua sibi non
with-his consent granted he-should-have his-own-things to-himself not
 merito, sed sola misericordia a patre illi relicta. Et in
by-merit but sole by-mercy by the-father to-him left and as
 munere offerebant illi quicquid in universo exercitu absque
gift they-offered to-him whatever in the-whole army except
 armis et equis habere videbantur; at si id nollet,
arms and horses to-have they-seemed but if this he-were-unwilling
 cedebant illi uterque portionem regni, alter usque
they-yielded to-him each a-portion of-the-kingdom the-one up-to
 Carbonarias, alter vero usque Renum; quod et si rennueret,
the-Charbonnière the-other but up-to the-Rhine which also if he-should-refuse
 universam Franciam aequa lance dividerent, et quicquid
the-whole Francia with-equal balance they-should-divide and whichever
 horum vellet suae ditionis esset. Ad quod Lodharius
of-these he-wished of-his-own dominion should-be to which Lothar
 more solito per suos se quicquid placeret notare
in-the-manner accustomed through his-men himself whatever might-please to-note
 respondit, mittensque per presens Drogonem, Hugonem
answered and-sending at-the present Drogo Hugh
 et Hegibertum mandat non illos aliquid tale antea illi
and Hegibert he-sends-word not them anything such before to-him

mandasse, ad quod considerandum spatium habere se
to-have-sent-word for which to-be-considered time to-have himself
 velle aiebat; re autem vera Pippinus non venerat, illum
to-wish he-said in-reality moreover true Pippin not had-come him
 hac dilatione expectare volebat. Verumtamen Ricuinum,
by-this delay to-wait-for he-wished nevertheless Ricuin
 Hirmenaldum et Fredericum sacramento firmare praecepit,
Hirmenald and Frederic by-oath to-confirm he-directed
 quod pro nulla re alia has indutias peteret, praeter quod
that for no thing other this truce he-sought except that
 commune profectum tam illorum quam et universae plebis,
the-common advantage as-much of-them as also of-the-whole people
 sicut iusticiam inter fratres et populum Christi oportebat,
as justice between brothers and the-people of-Christ required
 quaerere volebat. Quo quidem sacramento Lodhuvicus et
to-seek he-wished by-which indeed oath Louis and
 Karolus creduli effecti, ea die et in crastinum, insuper
Charles believing made on-that day and on the-morrow moreover
 etiam usque in horam secundam diei tercii, quod evenit
also up-to into the-hour second of-the-day third which fell
 VII. Kal. Iulii, pace utrorumque ex parte iureiurando
on-the-seventh Kalends of-july peace of-both from side by-oath
 firmata, ad castra redeunt, missam vero sancti Iohannis
confirmed to the-camp return the-mass but of-saint John
 in crastinum celebraturi. Pippino quoque eadem die
on the-morrow about-to-celebrate Pippin also on-the-same day
 Lodharius in supplementum recepto mandat fratribus suis,
Lothar as support received sends-word to-brothers his-own
 quoniam scirent illi imperatoris nomen magna auctoritate
since they-knew to-him of-emperor the-name with-great authority
 fuisse impositum, ut considerent, quatenus eiusdem
to-have-been imposed that they-should-consider how-far of-the-same

nominis magnificum posset explere officium; insuper
name the-magnificent he-might-be-able to-fulfill office besides
 autem haut se libenter utrorumque querere profectum.
moreover not himself gladly of-both to-seek the-advantage
 Interrogati autem, si quiddam horum, quae mandaverant,
asked moreover if anything of-these-things which they-had-sent-word
 recipere vellet vel si quamlibet finitivam sententiam
to-accept he-would-wish or if any final sentence
 illis mandasset, nihil sibi horum fuisse iniunctum
to-them he-had-sent-word nothing to-themselves of-these to-have-been enjoined
 responderunt. Quam ob rem cum omnis spes iusticiae ac
they-answered which for reason since all hope of-justice and
 pacis sua ex parte ablata videretur, mandant illi, si
of-peace his from side removed seemed they-send-word to-him if
 melius non invenisset, aut reciperet unum horum, quae
better not he-should-have-found either he-should-accept one of-these which
 illi mandaverant, aut nosset illos in crastinum — quod
to-him they-had-sent-word or he-should-know them on the-morrow which
 contigit, sicut praefatum est, VII. Kal. Iulii — hora
fell as said-before it-was on-the-seventh Kalends of-July at-the-hour
 videlicet diei secunda, ad omnipotentis Dei iudicium, quod
namely of-the-day second to of-almighty God the-judgment which
 illis absque illorum voluntate mandaverat, esse venturos.
to-them without their will he-had-sent-word to-be about-to-come
 Quae quidem Lodharius solito more insolenter sprexit
which indeed Lotbar in-the-accustomed manner insolently scorned
 et visuros se, quid agere deberet, respondit. Dum
and about-to-see themselves what to-do he-ought answered while
 haec super Ligerim iuxta Sanctum Fludualdum consistens
these-things above the-Loire near Saint Cloud staying
 scriberem, eclipsis solis hora prima feria [tertia],
I-was-writing an-eclipse of-the-sun at-the-hour first on-the-day third

XV. Kal. Novembris in Scorpione contigit. His
on-the-fifteenth Kalends of-November in Scorpio happened these
 ita omissis diluculo Lodhuvicus et Karolus consurgunt,
so left-aside at-daybreak Louis and Charles rise
 verticem montis castrae Lodharii contigui cum tertia,
the-top of-the-mountain to-the-camp of-Lothar adjoining with a-third
 ut videtur, exercitus parte occupant adventumque eius et
as it-seems of-the-army part they-occupy and-the-arrival of-him and
 horam secundam, ut sui iuraverant, exspectant. Cumque
the-hour second as his-men had-sworn they-await and-when
 utrumque adesset, proelium super rivolum Burgundionum
each was-at-hand battle above the-brook of-the-Burgundians
 magno certamine committunt. Et Lodhuvicus quidem ac
with-great struggle they-join and Louis indeed and
 Lodharius in loco qui Brittas dicitur strenue confligit;
Lothar in the-place which Brittas is-called vigorously clash
 quo superatus Lodharius terga vertit. Pars autem exercitus,
where overcome Lothar the-back turned the-part moreover of-the-army
 quam Karolus in loco qui Fagit vulgo dicitur excepit,
which Charles in the-place which Fagit commonly is-called met
 protinus fugit; pars vero, quae in Solennat Adhelardum
at-once fled the-part but which at Solennat Adalbard
 ceterosque, quibus haud modicum supplementum Domino
and-the-others to-whom not small support the-Lord
 auxiliante prebui, appetiit, strenue confligit; quo et utrique
helping I-gave attacked vigorously clashed where also both
 vicerunt, sed novissime omnes a parte Lodharii fugerunt.
conquered but at-last all from the-side of-Lothar fled
 Qua finem primi certaminis dedit Lodharius, terminetur
where the-end of-the-first struggle gave Lothar let-be-ended
 liber secundus.
the-book second

BOOK III

PREFACE

Nithard is ashamed to tell of evil in his own family and had meant to end the work with Book II. But lest anyone, misled, give a false account of what happened in their time, he adds a third book about the events he witnessed.

Quoniam sinistrum me quiddam ex genere nostro ut
since sinister me something from family our that
audiam pudet, referre praesertim quam maxime piget;
I-should-bear it-shames to-relate especially as most it-grieves
quam ob rem imperio haudquaquam malivole contempto,
which for reason the-command by-no-means maliciously scorned
ut finis optatus libri secundi affuit, per omnia
when the-end wished-for of-the-book second was-at-hand in all
finire hoc opus animus decrevit; sed ne forte quilibet
to-finish this work the-mind decided but lest perhaps anyone
quocumque modo deceptus res nostro in tempore gestas,
in-whatever way deceived the-things our in time done
praeterquam exactae sunt, narrare praesumat, ex his
otherwise-than done they-were to-narrate should-presume from those-things
quibus interfui tertium libellum ut adderem acquievi.
at-which I-was-present a-third little-book that I-should-add I-have-agreed

The kings, pitying their brother and the people, do not pursue the fleeing army, hoping God's judgment will bring Lothar to his senses. They spend Sunday on the field, bury friend and foe alike, and offer pardon to the fugitives. The bishops declare that the brothers fought for justice alone, order secret penance for any who fought from anger, and proclaim a three-day fast.

Proelio quidem, uti praefatum est, strenue peracto, quid
the-battle indeed as said-before it-was vigorously completed what
 de palantibus peragere deberetur, Lodhuvicus et Karolus in
about the-scattered to-carry-out ought Louis and Charles on
 eodem campo deliberare coeperunt. Et quidam ira correpti
the-same field to-deliberate began and certain-men by-anger seized
 persequi hostes suadebant, quidam autem, et maxime reges,
to-pursue the-enemies urged certain-men but and chiefly the-kings
 miserantes fratris plebisque et, ut iudicio Dei et hac
pitying the-brother and-the-people and that by-the-judgment of-God and by-this
 plaga repressi ab iniqua cupiditate resipiscerent, et
blow checked from wicked greed they-might-come-to-their-senses and
 Deo donante deinceps unanimes in vera iusticia devenirent,
God granting thereafter of-one-mind into true justice might-come
 piis visceribus solito more optabant. In quo negotio
with-pious heart in-the-accustomed manner wished in which business
 Dei omnipotentis misericordia ut prestolaretur, suadebant.
of-God almighty the-mercy that it-be-awaited they-urged
 Quibus cetera multitudo assentientes a proelio et praeda
to-whom the-rest multitude assenting from battle and plunder
 discesserunt et fere mediante die ad castra redeunt, quid
departed and almost at-mid day to the-camp return what
 deinceps consultius acturum videretur, deliberaturi. Fuit
thereafter more-advisably about-to-do might-seem about-to-deliberate there-was

quidem ingens numerus praedae et ingens cedes et insuper
indeed a-huge number of-plunder and huge slaughter and moreover
 ammirabilis, immo et merito notabilis misericordia tam
a-wonderful nay also deservedly notable mercy as-much
 regum quam et universorum. Nam diversis pro rebus
of-the-kings as also of-all for diverse for reasons
 diem dominicum inibi acturos se deliberarunt. In quo
the-day Lord's there about-to-spend themselves they-decided on which
 missa peracta amicos et inimicos, fideles et infideles pariter
the-mass completed friends and enemies faithful and unfaithful alike
 sepulturae tradebant, plaga correptos ac semivivos eodem
to-burial they-delivered by-the-blow seized and half-dead in-the-same
 modo pro viribus ex animo refovebant. Post hos qui fuga
way according-to strength from the-heart they-tended after these who by-flight
 evaserant miserunt offerentes, si reverti sana fide vellent,
had-escaped they-sent offering if to-return with-sound faith they-wished
 omnia delicta remitti. Post haec reges populiue super
all the-offenses to-be-forgiven after these-things the-kings and-the-peoples over
 fratre populoque Christiano dolentes percontari episcopos
the-brother and-the-people Christian grieving to-question the-bishops
 coeperunt, quid agere super hoc negotio deberent. Quam
began what to-do over this business they-ought which
 ob rem unanimes ad concilium omnes episcopi confluunt,
for reason of-one-mind to the-council all the-bishops stream-together
 inventumque in conventu publico est, quod pro sola iusticia et
and-found in the-assembly public it-was that for sole justice and
 aequitate decertaverint, et hoc Dei iuditio manifestum
equity they-had-fought-it-out and this of-God by-the-judgment manifest
 effectum sit, ac per hoc inmundis omnis Dei minister
made has-been and through this free-of-guilt every of-God minister
 in hoc negotio haberi, tam suasor quam et effector,
in this business to-be-held as-much the-adviser as also the-doer

deberetur; at quicumque consciens sibi aut ira aut
 ought but whoever conscious to-himself either by-anger or
 odio aut vana gloria aut certe quolibet vitio quiddam in hac
 by-hatred or by-vain glory or at-least by-any vice anything in this
 expeditione suasit vel gessit, esset vere confessus secrete
 expedition advised or did he-should-have truly confessed secretly
 secreti delicti et secundum modum culpe diiudicaretur;
 of-the-secret offense and according-to the-measure of-the-fault should-be-judged
 verumtamen in veneratione ac laude tantae declarationis
 nevertheless in veneration and praise of-so-great a-declaration
 iusticiae pro remissione delictis mortuorum fratrum suorum
 of-justice for remission for-the-offenses of-dead brothers their-own
 — in eo, quod imperfecti peccatis intervenientibus se
 in that that imperfect with-sins intervening themselves
 noverant, ut in multis volentes nolentesque delinquebant —
 they-knew as in many-things willing and-unwilling they-offended
 ut suo adiutorio ab his exuti liberarentur; insuper autem, uti
 that by-his help from these stripped they-might-be-freed besides moreover as
 actenus in iusticia adiutor et protector illis Deus extitit, ita
 up-to-now in justice helper and protector to-them God stood so
 ut deinceps ubique existeret; proque his omnibus triduanum
 that thereafter everywhere he-might-stand and-for these all a-three-day
 ieiunium inventum immoque libenter ac celebre celebratum est.
 fast found nay gladly and solemnly celebrated was

II • THE VICTORY SQUANDERED

Louis makes for the Rhine and Charles for Aquitaine. Bernard of Septimania, who kept out of the battle, sends his son William to commend himself to Charles. But with the danger past, men go home; Pippin puts off a treaty, and the Franks, told that Charles has fallen, put off submitting. At Reims Charles learns that Louis cannot meet him because Lothar threatens his kingdom.

His ita reor peractis Lodhuwicus, ut Renum peteret,
these so I-think completed Louis that the-Rhine he-should-seek
 decrevit, Karolus autem diversis pro rebus et maxime
decided Charles moreover diverse for reasons and chiefly
 propter Pippinum, ut illum sibi subdere studeret, in
on-account-of Pippin that him to-himself to-subdue he-might-strive into
 Aquitaniam ut proficisceretur, ratum duxit. Nam Bernardus
Aquitaine that he-should-set-out right he-held for Bernard
 dux Septimaniae, quanquam a loco praedicti proelii
the-duke of-Septimania although from the-place of-the-aforesaid battle
 plus minus leuvas tres defuerit, neutri in hoc negotio
more less leagues three he-was-away to-neither in this business
 supplementum fuit; victoriam autem ut Karoli esse didicit,
support was the-victory moreover when Charles's to-be he-learned
 filium suum Willelmum ad illum direxit et, si honores, quos
the-son his-own William to him sent and if the-honors which
 idem in Burgundia habuit, eidem donare vellet, ut se
the-same in Burgundy had to-the-same to-give he-would-wish that himself
 illi commendaret, praecepit. Insuper iactabat se posse
to-him he-should-commend he-directed moreover he-boasted himself to-be-able
 nec non et aiebat, quod Pippinum una cum suis Karolo
nor not also he-said that Pippin together with his-men to-Charles
 foedere, quo valeret, subdere vellet. Quam legationem
by-the-treaty by-which he-might-be-able to-subject he-wished which embassy

benigne excepit et, sicut postulaverat, per omnia concessit,
kindly he-received and as he-had-asked in all-things granted
 monens, ut de Pippino et suis quod promiserat, in
warning that about Pippin and his-men what he-had-promised in
 quantum posset, ut perficeretur, operam daret. Cumque
as-far-as he-could that it-be-accomplished effort he-should-give and-when
 adversa undique propulsa viderentur, ac spes prosperitatis
adversities on-all-sides driven-off seemed and hope of-prosperity
 cuique hinc inde faveret, Lodhuwicus cum suis Renum
each hither thither favored Louis with his-men the-Rhine
 petiit, Karolus vero una cum matre Ligerim adiit. Res
sought Charles but together with the-mother the-Loire approached the-state
 autem publica inconsultius, quam oporteret, omissa; quo
moreover public more-thoughtlessly than it-ought dropped where
 quemque voluntas rapuit, perfacile omissus abscessit. Quod
each-one the-will snatched very-easily dropped went-off which
 quidem Pippinus audiens paulo ante desideratum cum illo
indeed Pippin hearing a-little before desired with him
 foedus inire distulit. Bernardus quidem ad illum venit, sed,
a-treaty to-enter delayed Bernard indeed to him came but
 ut illi se commendaret, minime acquievit. Quidam tamen
that to-him himself he-should-commend by-no-means agreed certain-men yet
 a Pipino desciverunt, et hoc tantum prae-fata expeditio
from Pippin revolted and this only the-aforesaid expedition
 Karolo profuit, quod illos sibi foederatos recepit. Interea
to-Charles profited that them to-himself allied he-received meanwhile
 Adhelardus ceterique, quos Karolus ad Francos direxerat
Adalbard and-the-others whom Charles to the-Franks had-sent
 scire cupiens, si ad illum reverti vellent, Carisiacum
to-know wishing if to him to-return they-would-wish to-Quierzy
 venientes, quo illi ut missos dirigeret mandaverant,
coming where to-him that envoys he-should-send they-had-sent-word

perpaucos obviam habuerunt; qui hoc dicebant, si idem
very-few to-meet-them had who this said if the-same
 Karolus ad praesens esset, ad illum venire minime
Charles at-the present were to him to-come by-no-means
 different; aliter autem nescire aiebant, utrum viveret an
they-would-delay otherwise moreover not-to-know they-said whether he-lived or
 non. Iactaverant enim hi qui partis Lodharii sentiebant
not had-boasted for those who of-the-party of-Lothar sided
 in proelio Karolum cecidisse, Lodhovicum vulneratum et
in the-battle Charles to-have-fallen Louis wounded and
 fuga lapsum abisse. Quapropter inconsultum aiebant in
by-flight escaped to-have-gone-off wherefore unadvised they-said in
 incertis rebus aliquod foedus cum quolibet inire debere.
uncertain affairs any treaty with anyone to-enter to-be-obliged
 At Guntboldus ceterique coadunati supra praefatos Karoli
but Guntbold and-the-others gathered-together upon the-aforesaid of-Charles
 missos irruere se simulabant, et utique fecissent,
envoys to-rush themselves pretended and certainly they-would-have-done
 si ausi essent. Quapropter ad Karolum Adhelardus et
if dared they-had wherefore to Charles Adalhard and
 ceteri miserunt mandantes, ut, quantotius posset, venire
the-others sent sending-word that as-quickly-as he-could to-come
 satageret, quatinus et illis adiutorium praeberet et, si
he-should-take-pains so-that both to-them help he-might-furnish and if
 Franci, uti aiebant, ad illum venire vellent, scire posset.
the-Franks as they-said to him to-come wished to-know he-might-be-able
 Ipsi vero Parisiacam civitatem adeunt adventum Karoli
they-themselves but Paris the-city approach the-arrival of-Charles
 praestolaturi. Quod cum Karolo nunciaretur, protinus his in
about-to-await which when to-Charles was-announced at-once these into
 partibus iter direxit. Ad Sequanam autem ut pervenit,
parts the-journey he-directed to the-Seine moreover when he-arrived

Adhelardum una cum ceteris in Spedonna obviam habuit,
Adalhard together with the-others at Épône to-meet-him had
 et quanquam propter conventum, quod cum fratre in
and although on-account-of the-meeting which with the-brother at
 Lingonicam urbem Kal. Sept. condixerat, quoniam
Langres the-city on-the-Kalends of-September he-had-agreed since
 imminebat, anxius esset, ratum duxit, ut saltem citato cursu
it-was-imminent anxious he-was right he-held that at-least at-swift pace
 per urbem Belvacensem ac deinde per Compendium
through the-city of-Beauvais and then through Compiègne
 et Suessionis, hinc per Remensem et Cadelonensem
and Soissons hence through Reims and Châlons
 Lingonicam peteret urbem, quatinus eo tenore id, quod
Langres he-should-seek the-city so-that on-that footing that which
 cum fratre statuerat, observare studeret et, si quilibet
with the-brother he-had-established to-keep he-might-strive and if any
 e Francis ad illum venire vellet, posset. Franci vero eandem
of the-Franks to him to-come wished he-could the-Franks but the-same
 paucitatem, quam et Aequitanii spreverant, spernentes
fewness which also the-Aquitanians had-scorned scorning
 variis fictionibus illi se per praesens subdere
with-various pretenses to-him themselves for-the present to-submit
 distulerunt. Quod ut Karolus cognovit, praefatum iter
delayed which when Charles learned the-aforesaid journey
 accelerare coepit *** Remensem urbem petiit; quo cum
to-hasten he-began (lacuna) Reims the-city sought whither when
 venisset, nuncium recepit, quod Lodhuvicus ad conventum,
he-had-come news he-received that Louis to the-meeting
 quod in Lingonicam urbem condixerant, venire non posset,
which at Langres the-city they-had-agreed to-come not could
 eo quod Lodharius in regnum illius hostili manu irruere
for-this that Lothar into the-kingdom of-him with-hostile hand to-rush

vellet; mandaverant etiam Huc avunculus eius nec non et
 wished they-had-sent-word also Hugh the-uncle of-him nor not also
 Gislebertus comes Mansuariorum, si in illis partibus isset,
 Gislebert the-count of-the-Maasgau if into those parts he-went
 ad illum se una cum ceteris esse venturos.
 to him themselves together with the-others to-be about-to-come

III · THE SEINE RISES

Charles goes to meet his supporters at Saint Quentin and Maastricht. Lothar turns against him and comes to Saint Denis meaning to cross the low autumn Seine, but Charles guards the fords, and the river, though it has not rained for two months, suddenly rises and blocks every crossing. Lothar offers peace if Charles abandons Louis; Charles refuses, and Lothar goes to Sens.

Ergo tam pro fratris adiutorio quam et, ut hos, si
 therefore as-much for the-brother's help as also that these if
 ad illum venire vellent, recipere posset, ad Sanctum
 to him to-come they-wished to-receive he-might-be-able to Saint
 Quintinum iter direxit. Quo quidem Hugonem, sicut
 Quentin the-journey he-directed where indeed Hugh as
 mandaverat, obviam habuit et inde in partes Traiecti
 he-had-sent-word to-meet-him had and thence into the-parts of-Maastricht
 iter direxit. Lodharius autem, ut haec audivit,
 the-journey he-directed Lothar moreover when these-things he-beard
 omisso Lodhuvico, quem paulo ante persequi statuerat, a
 dropped Louis whom a-little before to-pursue he-had-decided from
 Warmatia ad conventum, quod Teotonis-villam indixerat,
 Worms to the-assembly which at-Thionville he-had-proclaimed
 iter arripuit et, qualiter super Karolum irruerat,
 the-journey took-up and how upon Charles he-might-rush

intendit. Quod cum Karolus in Wasiticum didicisset,
he-aimed which when Charles in the-Wasgau had-learned
 Hugonem et Adhelardum ad Gislebertum una cum ceteris,
Hugh and Adalbard to Gislebert together with the-others
 [quos] foedere, quo valeret, sibi adnecterent, direxit.
whom by-the-treaty by-which they-could to-himself they-might-bind he-sent
 Rabanonem etiam ad Lodhuvicum dirigens mandat, qualiter
Rabanus also to Louis sending he-sends-word how
 pro suo adiutorio illis in partibus isset, quod Lodharius
for his help those into parts he-had-gone which Lotbar
 audiens, illo omisso, supra se cum omnibus copiis ire
hearing him dropped upon himself with all forces to-go
 pararet, monensque ac deprecatur, ut, quantotius posset,
was-preparing and-warning and entreats that as-quickly-as he-could
 solito more adiutorium illi praebere studeret.
in-the-accustomed manner help to-him to-furnish he-should-strive
 Insuper autem Exemenonem venerabilem episcopum ad
besides moreover Hemmo the-venerable bishop to
 Lodharium direxit, solito more humiliter praecepit, ut
Lotbar he-sent in-the-accustomed manner humbly he-directed that
 roget, ut obsecret, meminerit, quod frater filiolusque
he-should-ask that he-should-beseech he-should-remember that brother and-godson
 eius sit; meminerit, quae pater inter illos statuerat,
of-him he-is he-should-remember what the-father between them had-established
 quae tam is quam et sui inter illos iuraverant;
what as-much he as also his-men between them had-sworn
 meminerit, quod novissime iudicio Dei inter illos
he-should-remember that most-recently by-the-judgment of-God between them
 voluntas eius declarata sit; et si horum omnium recordare
the-will of-him declared has-been and if these all to-recall
 nolit, cesset a persecutione sanctae Dei ecclesiae,
he-be-unwilling he-should-cease from the-persecution of-the-holy of-God church

misereatur pauperum, viduarum orfanorumque et regnum
he-should-pity the-poor the-widows and-orphans and the-kingdom
 a patre suo consensu sibi datum ut ingrediatur
by the-father with-his consent to-himself given that he-enter
 omittat, ne forte iterato populum Christianum ad
he-should-give-up lest perhaps a-second-time the-people Christian to
 cedem mutuam confluere compellat. Et his ita compositis
slaughter mutual to-stream-together he-compel and these so settled
 idem ipse Parisiacam urbem adiit tam fratris sui
the-same he-himself Paris the-city approached as-much of-brother his-own
 Lodhuvici adventum quam et ceteros fideles suos, quos
Louis the-arrival as also the-other faithful-men his-own whom
 undique convocaverat, praestolaturus. Quod cum Lodharius
from-all-sides he-had-summoned about-to-await which when Lothar
 didicisset, ad eandem urbem iter direxit; habebat enim
had-learned to the-same city the-journey directed he-had for
 tam Saxonum quam et Austrasiorum nec non et de
as-much of-the-Saxons as also of-the-Austrasians nor not also of
 Alamannis partem haud modicam secum, horumque
the-Alamanni a-part by-no-means small with-himself and-of-these
 auxilio praemaxime confisus ad Sanctum Dyonisium venit.
on-the-belp very-greatly trusting to Saint Denis came
 Reppererat autem inibi naves plus minus XX^{ti}; insuper
he-had-found moreover there ships more less twenty moreover
 quoque Sequana, uti mense Septembrio solet, exigua erat
also the-Seine as in-the-month of-September it-is-wont low was
 transitumque perfacilem praestabat. Quam ob rem iactabant
and-a-crossing very-easy offered which for reason boasted
 se sui facile transire posse et hoc utique simulabant
themselves his-men easily to-cross to-be-able and this certainly pretended
 se maxime velle. Ergo Karolus quosdam Parisium et
themselves chiefly to-wish therefore Charles certain-men Paris and

Milidonem custodiri praecepit, quosdam vero, ubicumque
Melun to-be-guarded commanded certain-men but wherever
vada vel navigia esse noverat, residere fecit; ipse vero e
fords or vessels to-be he-knew to-stay he-caused he-himself but from
regione Sancti Dyonisii iuxta Sanctum Fludualdum castra in
opposite of-Saint Denis near Saint Cloud the-camp in
meditullio posuit, ut et Lodhario, si ita oporteret, transitum
the-middle placed that both to-Lothar if so it-were-fitting the-crossing
prohibere aut, si alicubi super suos irruere vellet, illis
to-forbid or if anywhere upon his-men to-rush he-should-wish to-them
succurrere posset. Et ut perfacile dinosceretur, quo
to-run-to-help he-might-be-able and that very-easily it-might-be-discerned what
in loco adiutorium praeberi deberet, more maritimo
in place help to-be-furnished ought in-the-manner of-the-sea
signa in locis congruis atque custodias deputavit. Insuper
signals in places suitable and guards be-assigned besides
autem Sequana, mirabile dictu! dum nos nusquam eo in
moreover the-Seine wonderful to-say while we nowhere that in
tempore infra duos menses pluvias esse novimus, repente
time within two months rains to-have-been know suddenly
aere sereno tumescere coepit ac sponte his in locis
the-air being-clear to-swell began and of-its-ownaccord these in places
vada ubique prohibuit. Cumque haec ita se haberent,
fords everywhere forbade and-when these-things so themselves had
cernens Lodharius transitum inibi undique sibi prohibitum,
seeing Lothar the-crossing there on-all-sides to-himself forbidden
eo tenore cum Karolo pacem inire se velle mandavit, ut
on-that footing with Charles peace to-enter himself to-wish sent-word that
foedus, quod Karolus cum fratre suo Lodhuvico sacramentis
the-treaty which Charles with brother his-own Louis by-oaths
firmaverat, omisisset, et ille econtra foedus, quod
had-confirmed he-should-have-dropped and he in-turn the-treaty which

cum Pippino nepote suo similiter sacramentis firmaverat,
with Pippin nephew his-own likewise by-oaths he-had-confirmed
 omitteret; et haberet Karolus a Sequana partem occidentalem
he-should-drop and should-have Charles from the-Seine the-part western
 absque Provinciam et Septimaniam, essentque quasi pace
without Provence and Septimania and-they-should-be as-if by-peace
 perpetua foederati. Re autem vera sic se utrosque
perpetual allied in-reality moreover true so himself both
 facilius decipere posse putabat omneque imperium hac
more-easily to-deceive to-be-able he-thought and-the-whole empire by-this
 arte invadere sperabat. At Karolus respondit se foedus,
art to-invade he-hoped but Charles answered himself the-treaty
 quod cum fratre suo necessitate coactus inierat, minime
which with brother his-own by-necessity compelled he-had-entered by-no-means
 violare velle; insuper ut a Mosa usque Sequanam regnum,
to-violate to-wish moreover that from the-Meuse up-to the-Seine the-kingdom
 quod pater illi dederat, nequaquam congruum videretur,
which the-father to-him had-given by-no-means fitting it-seemed
 ut illi obmitteret, praesertim cum tanta nobilitas illum
that to-him he-should-give-up especially since so-great a-nobility him
 secuta de his regionibus esset, quos in sua fide deceptos
followed from these regions had whom in his-own faith deceived
 esse minime oporteret. Quam ob rem, quoniam hiemps
to-be by-no-means it-was-fitting which for reason since winter
 aderat, haberet quique honores, quos pater illis dederat,
was-at-hand let-them-have each-one the-honors which the-father to-them had-given
 si vellet, mandavit, donec veris tempore, vellent cum
if he-wished he-sent-word until of-spring in-the-time whether-they-wished with
 paucis, vellent cum omni comitatu, omnes conveniant et,
few or-they-wished with all retinue all should-meet and
 ni statutis aut statuendis concordia concurrat, quid
unless in-the-things-established or to-be-established concord should-concur what

cuique debeatur, armis decernant. Quae quidem Lodharius
to-each is-due by-arms they-should-decide which indeed Lothar
 more solito sprevit et a Sancto Dionysio obviam
in-the-manner accustomed scorned and from Saint Denis to-meet
 Pippino, qui ab Aquitania ad illum veniebat, Senones
Pippin who from Aquitaine to him was-coming to-Sens
 iter direxit; Karolus autem econtra, qualiter Lodhuvicum
the-journey directed Charles moreover in-turn how Louis
 in adiutorium suum recipere posset, intendit.
into help his-own to-receive he-might-be-able aimed

IV · LAON

Charles's sister Hildegard has seized one of his men at Laon. Charles rides all night through the frost; the citizens give the man back and promise to surrender, and he keeps his soldiers from sacking the city and forgives his sister. Lothar marches against Charles's men in the Perche without success and returns worn out. Charles crosses into Alsace, and Otgar, who has barred Louis's way, flees.

Interea nunciatum est Karolo, quod soror sua Hildigardis
meanwhile announced it-was to-Charles that sister his-own Hildegard
 Adelgarium quendam ex suis captum haberet et in urbe
Adelgar a-certain of his-men captured held and in the-city
 Laudunensi una secum custodiri fecisset. Qua pro re
of-Laon together with-herself to-be-guarded had-caused which for reason
 expeditos ad hoc opus Karolus sibi delegit ac protinus
men-unencumbered for this work Charles for-himself chose and at-once
 decedente iam die his in partibus festinus perrexit;
departing already the-day these in parts hastening proceeded
 distabat enim urbs eadem plus minus leuvas XXX^{ta}.
was-distant for the-city same more less leagues thirty

Per totam siquidem noctem iter faciens impediēte
through the-whole indeed night the-journey making hindering
 gelu praevalido, hora fere diei tertia insperate subito
the-frost very-strong at-the-hour about of-the-day third unexpectedly suddenly
 sorori et civibus cum infinita multitudine nunciatur
to-the-sister and to-the-citizens with a-boundless multitude it-is-announced
 Karolus adesse, omnisque urbs militibus circumdata fore.
Charles to-be-at-hand and-the-whole city with-soldiers surrounded about-to-be
 Quo quidem nuncio exterriti, quoniam nec evadendi nec
by-which indeed news terrified since neither of-escaping nor
 aderat spes moenia tuendi, pacem sub una eademque
was-there hope the-walls of-defending peace under one and-the-same
 nocte petunt, Adelgarium confestim reddunt et, ut se
night they-seek Adelgar at-once they-give-back and that themselves
 urbemque absque conflictu in crastinum dedant,
and-the-city without conflict on the-morrow they-would-surrender
 cum omni subiectione promittunt. Dum haec agerentur,
with all submission they-promise while these-things were-being-done
 milites moram huius rei graviter ferentes, insuper laboris
the-soldiers the-delay of-this thing heavily bearing moreover by-weariness
 tedio, quod praeterite noctis passi fuerant, permoti in
of-the-labor which of-the-past night suffered they-had moved to
 excidium urbis ruere undique coeperunt; essetque
destruction of-the-city to-rush on-all-sides began and-it-would-have-been
 procul dubio protinus flammis rapinisque tradita, ni
far from-doubt at-once to-flames and-plunderings banded-over unless
 idem Karolus misericordia super ecclesiarum Dei sororisque
the-same Charles by-pity over the-churches of-God and-the-sister
 necnon et populi Christiani permotus minis atque blanditiis
and-also also the-people Christian moved by-threats and blandishments
 horum animos maximo labore compescere studisset. Quos
their minds with-the-greatest labor to-restrain had-striven whom

cum abscedere fecisset, ut soror postulaverat, concessit
when to-withdraw he-had-caused as the-sister had-asked he-granted
 et Salmonciacum ab urbe discessit. Crastina quoque die
and to-Samoussy from the-city departed on-the-next also day
 Hildigardis ad fidem suam, sicut spoponderat, venit urbemque
Hildegard to the-faith his as she-had-pledged came and-the-city
 inlesam et absque conflictu sui iuris restituit. Sororem suam
unharmd and without conflict to-his right restored the-sister his-own
 siquidem Karolus benigne excepit et omnia quae actenus erga
indeed Charles kindly received and all-things which up-to-now against
 illum deliquerat illi donavit, multisque verbis blande illam
him she-had-offended to-her he-forgave and-with-many words kindly her
 allocutus omnem benignitatem, quam frater sorori debet,
having-addressed all kindness which a-brother to-a-sister owes
 si deinde benivola erga illum esse vellet, ei perhumane
if thereafter well-disposed toward him to-be she-would-wish to-her very-courteously
 promisit ac quo voluit illam abire concessit. Urbi sua
he-promised and where she-wished her to-go allowed to-the-city its-own
 iura statuit et ad suos, quos circa Parisium omiserat,
rights he-established and to his-men whom around Paris he-had-left
 his ita peractis rediit. Senones autem Lodharius Pippino
these so completed he-returnd at-Sens moreover Lothar Pippin
 recepto, quid agere deberet, anxius erat. Nam Karolus partem
received what to-do he-ought anxious was for Charles part
 exercitus Sequanam traiecit et in saltum qui Pertica vulgo
of-the-army the-Seine took-across and into the-forest which Perche commonly
 dicitur direxit. Quos quoniam Lodharius vel se vel suos
is-called sent whom since Lothar either himself or his-men
 impedire timuit, primum insectari statuit. Qua quidem re
to-binder he-feared first to-pursue decided by-which indeed thing
 sperabat se et hos facile delere et hoc terrore sibi
he-hoped himself both these easily to-destroy and by-this terror to-himself

residuos subiugare maximeque Nominoium Britannorum
the-rest to-subjugate and-chiefly Nominoë of-the-Bretons
 ducem suo subdere dominatui posse. Sed frustra haec
duke his to-subject to-dominion to-be-able but in-vain these-things
 omnia expleturus adiit, dum nihil horum ad effectum
all about-to-accomplish he-approached since nothing of-these to effect
 perduxit. Nam exercitus Karoli omnis ab eo salvus evasit,
he-brought for the-army of-Charles all from him safe escaped
 insuper ex suis neminem recepit; et Nomenoius omnia que
moreover of his-men no-one he-received and Nominoë all-things which
 illi mandaverat insolenter spreuit. His ita se habentibus
to-him he-had-sent-word insolently scorned these so themselves having
 repente nuntium accepit, quod Lodhuvicus et Karolus una
suddenly news he-received that Louis and Charles together
 cum ingenti exercitu alter alteri studeret. Cumque se
with a-huge army the-one to-the-other was-striving and-when himself
 undique rebus adversis circumseptum videret, maximo
on-all-sides by-affairs adverse hemmed-in he-saw with-the-greatest
 ambitu inaniter expleto a Turones redire coepit et fatigato
circuit vainly completed from Tours to-return he-began and with-wearied
 exercitu tandem fessus Franciam pervenit. Pippinus autem,
army at-last tired Francia he-reached Pippin moreover
 quod se illi sociaverat, penitudine correptus Aquitaniam
because himself to-him he-had-allied by-regret seized into-Aquitaine
 se recepit. Interea audiens Karolus, quod Otgarius
himself betook meanwhile hearing Charles that Otgar
 Maguntiae sedis episcopus una cum ceteris Lodhuwico
of-the-Mainz see the-bishop together with the-others to-Louis
 fratri suo transitum ad se prohibuisset, iter per
brother his-own the-crossing to himself had-forbidden the-journey through
 Tullensem urbem accelerans Elisazam ad Zabarnam introiit;
Toul the-city hastening Alsace at Saverne he-entered

quod cum Otgarius didicisset, una cum ceteris litore
which when Otgar had-learned together with the-others the-shore
 relicto abiit, et quo quisque valuit ocius se abdidit.
left went-off and wherever each-one was-able more-quickly himself hid

V • THE OATHS OF STRASBOURG

On 14 February Louis and Charles meet at Strasbourg. Each addresses the people, Louis in German and Charles in Romance; then Louis swears in Romance and Charles in German, and each people swears to aid no king who breaks the oath. Nithard notes the cold summer, the snow, and a winter comet; at Worms the kings send envoys to Lothar.

Ergo XVI. Kal. Marcii Lodhuvicus et Karolus
therefore on-the-sixteenth Kalends of-March Louis and Charles
 in civitate quae olim Argentaria vocabatur, nunc autem
in the-city which formerly Argentaria was-called now moreover
 Strazburg vulgo dicitur, convenerunt et sacramenta, quae
Strasbourg commonly is-called came-together and the-oaths which
 subter notata sunt, Lodhuvicus Romana, Karolus vero
below noted are Louis in-the-Romance Charles but
 Teudisca lingua iuraverunt. Ac sic ante sacramentum
in-the-German language swore and so before the-oath
 circumfusam plebem, alter Teudisca, alter Romana
the-surrounding people the-one in-the-German the-other in-the-Romance
 lingua alloquuti sunt. Lodhuvicus autem, quia maior natu,
language addressed have Louis moreover because elder by-birth
 prior exorsus sic coepit: 'Quotiens Lodharius me et hunc
first having-begun thus began how-often Lothar me and this
 fratrem meum post obitum patris nostri insectando usque
brother my after the-death of-father our by-pursuing all-the-way

ad internecionem delere conatus sit, nostis. Cum autem nec
to destruction to-destroy tried has you-know when moreover neither
 fraternitas nec Christianitas nec quodlibet ingenium, salva
brotherhood nor Christianity nor any device saving
 iusticia ut pax inter nos esset, adiuvere posset, tandem
justice that peace between us might-be to-help could at-last
 coacti rem ad iudicium omnipotentis Dei detulimus, ut
compelled the-matter to the-judgment of-almighty God we-brought that
 suo nutu, quid cuique deberetur, contenti essemus. In quo
by-his nod what to-each was-due content we-should-be in which
 nos, sicut nostis, per misericordiam Dei victores exitimus,
we as you-know through the-mercy of-God victors emerged
 is autem victus una cum suis quo valuit secessit. Hinc
he moreover conquered together with his-men where he-was-able withdrew hence
 vero fraterno amore correpti nec non et super populum
but by-brotherly love seized nor not also over the-people
 Christianum compassi persequi atque delere illos nolimus,
Christian having-pitied to-pursue and to-destroy them we-were-unwilling
 sed hactenus sicut et antea, ut saltem deinde cuique sua
but up-to-now as also before that at-least thereafter to-each his-own
 iusticia cederetur, mandavimus. At ille post haec non
justice might-be-yielded we-sent-word but he after these-things not
 contentus iudicio divino, sed hostili manu iterum et
content with-the-judgment divine but with-hostile hand again both
 me et hunc fratrem meum persequi non cessat, insuper
me and this brother my to-pursue not ceases moreover
 et populum nostrum incendiis, rapinis cedibusque devastat;
also the-people our with-burnings plunderings and-slaughters he-lays-waste
 quam ob rem nunc necessitate coacti convenimus et,
which for reason now by-necessity compelled we-have-come-together and
 quoniam vos de nostra stabili fide ac firma fraternitate
since you of our stable faith and firm brotherhood

dubitare credimus, hoc sacramentum inter nos in conspectu
to-doubt we-believe this oath between us in the-sight
 vestro iurare decrevimus. Non qualibet iniqua cupiditate illecti
your to-swear we-have-decided not by-any wicked greed enticed
 hoc agimus, sed ut certiores, si Deus nobis vestro adiutorio
this we-do but that surer if God to-us by-your help
 quietem dederit, de communi profectu simus. Si autem,
quiet shall-have-given of the-common advantage we-may-be if moreover
 quod absit, sacramentum, quod fratri meo iuravero,
which may-it-not-be the-oath which to-brother my I-shall-have-sworn
 violare praesumpsero, a subditione mea nec non et
to-violate I-shall-have-presumed from subjection my nor not also
 a iuramento, quod mihi iurastis, unumquemque vestrum
from the-oath which to-me you-swore each-one of-you
 absolvo'. Cumque Karolus haec eadem verba Romana
I-release and-when Charles these same words in-the-Romance
 lingua perorasset, Lodhuvicus, quoniam maior natu erat,
language had-finished-speaking Louis since elder by-birth he-was
 prior haec deinde se servaturum testatus est: 'Pro Deo
first these-things then himself about-to-keep testified has for God's
 amur et pro Christian poblo et nostro commun saluament,
love and for the-Christian people and our common salvation
 d'ist di in auant, in quant Deus sauir et podir me
from-this day in forward in as-much-as God knowledge and power me
 dunat, si saluarai eo cist meon fradre Karlo et in aiudha
gives so will-save I this my brother Charles both in aid
 et in cadhuna cosa, si cum om per dreit son fradra
and in each thing as as one by right his brother
 salvar dist, in o, quid il mi altresi fazet; et ab Ludher
to-save ought in that that he me likewise do and with Lothar
 nul plaid numquam prindrai, qui meon uol cist meon
no agreement never will-I-take which by-my will this my

fradre Karle in damno sit'. Quod cum Lodhuvicus explesset,
brother Charles in harm be which when Louis had-completed
 Karolus Teudisca lingua sic haec eadem verba testatus est:
Charles in-the-German language thus these same words testified has
 'In Godes minna ind in thes Christanes folches ind unser
in God's love and in the Christian people's and of-us
 bedhero gealtnissi, fon thesemo dage frammordes, so fram
both salvation from this day forward so far
 so mir Got geuuzci indi mahd furgibit, so haldih tesan
as me God wisdom and power gives so bold-I this
 minan brudher, soso man mit rehtu sinan brudher scal,
my brother as one by right his brother shall
 in thiū thaz er mig sosoma duo; indi mit Ludheren in
in that that be me likewise do and with Lothar in
 nohheiniū thing ne gegango, zhe minan uuillon imo ce
no thing not go which by-my will him to
 scadhen uuerhen'. Sacramentum autem, quod utrorumque
harm become the-oath moreover which of-both
 populus, quique propria lingua, testatus est, Romana
the-people each-one own in-language testified has in-the-Romance
 lingua sic se habet: 'Si Lodhuuigs sagrament, quae son
language thus itself has if Louis the-oath which to-his
 fradre Karlo iurat, conservat, et Karlus meos sendra de suo
brother Charles he-swears keeps and Charles my lord on his
 part non lostanit, si io returnar non l'int pois, ne
part not breaks-it if I to-turn-back not him-from-it can neither
 io ne neuls, cui eo returnar int pois, in nulla aiudha
I nor anyone whom I to-turn-back from-it can in no aid
 contra Lodhuuig nun li iuer'. Teudisca autem lingua:
against Louis not him will-be in-the-German moreover language
 'Oba Karl then eid, then er sinemo brudher Ludhuuige
if Charles the oath which he to-his brother Louis

gesuor, geleistit, indi Ludhuuuig min herro, then er imo
swore keeps and Louis my lord which he to-him
 gesuor, forbrihchit, ob ih inan es iruuenden ne mag,
swore breaks if I him from-it turn not can
 noh ih noh thero nohhein, then ih es iruuenden mag,
neither I nor of-those any whom I from-it turn can
 uuidhar Karle imo ce follusti ne uuirdhit'. Quibus peractis
against Charles to-him in help not becomes which completed
 Lodhuwicus Renotenus per Spiram et Karolus iuxta
Louis as-far-as-the-Rhine through Speyer and Charles near
 Wasagum per Wizzunburg Warmatiam iter direxit.
the-Vosges through Wissembourg to-Worms the-journey directed
 Aestas autem, in qua praefatum exactum est prelium,
the-summer moreover in which the-aforesaid fought was the-battle
 fuit frigida nimis, et omnes fruges persero collectae sunt;
was cold too-much and all the-crops very-late gathered were
 autumnus vero et hiemps naturalem ordinem peregerunt. Ac
the-autumn but and the-winter the-natural order completed and
 eadem die, qua praedicti fratres nec non et primores
on-the-same day on-which the-aforesaid brothers nor not also the-chief-men
 populi praefatum pepigere pactum, subsequente gelu nix
of-the-people the-aforesaid made pact following frost snow
 multa cecidit. Stella cometis mense Decembrio et Ianuario
much fell a-star comet in-the-month of-December and January
 nec non et Febuario usque praelatum conventum apparuit,
nor not also February up-to the-aforementioned assembly appeared
 per Pisces centrum ascendit et inter signum, quod a
through Pisces the-center it-ascended and between the-sign which by
 quibusdam Lyra, a quibusdam vero Andromeda vocatur, et
some Lyra by some but Andromeda is-called and
 Arcturum obscuriorem hoc concilio expleto defecit. Haec
Arcturus dimmer this council completed it-failed these-things

paucis de temporum siderisque serie delibatis ad historiae
in-few about of-the-times and-of-the-star the-series touched-on to of-history
 tramitem revertamur. — Cumque Warmatiam venissent,
the-path let-us-return and-when to-Worms they-had-come
 missos deligunt, quos protinus ad Lodharium et in Saxoniam
envoys they-choose whom at-once to Lothar and into Saxony
 mittunt; et horum nec non et Karlemanni adventus inter
they-send and of-these nor not also of-Carloman the-arrival between
 Warmatiam et Magonciacum prestolaretur, statuunt.
Worms and Mainz should-be-awaited they-decide

VI • THE TWO KINGS

Nithard describes the kings: both of middle height, handsome, skilled in every exercise, bold, generous, prudent, and eloquent, and above all in holy concord, sharing feasts, a house, and counsel. For exercise they hold games: equal companies of Saxons, Gascons, Austrasians, and Bretons charge one another, turn, and pursue, until both kings ride out with all their young men brandishing spears. Despite the crowd and the mix of peoples, no one is hurt or insulted.

Hic quoque haudquaquam ab re, quoniam iocunda
here also by-no-means from the-matter since pleasant
 ac merito notanda videntur, de qualitate horum regum
and deservedly to-be-noted they-seem about the-character of-these kings
 et unanimitate, qua interea deguerint, pauca referre
and the-unanimity in-which meanwhile they-lived a-few-things to-relate
 libet. Erat quidem utrisque forma mediocris cum omni
it-pleases there-was indeed to-both a-form middling with all
 decore pulchra et omni exercitio apta; erat uterque audax,
grace handsome and for-every exercise fit was each bold
 largus, prudens pariter et eloquens; omnemque praemissam
generous prudent equally and eloquent and-all the-aforesaid

nobilitatem excedebat fratrum sancta ac veneranda concordia.

nobility exceeded of-the-brothers the-holy and venerable concord

Nam convivia erant illis poene assidua, et, quodcumque

for feasts were to-them almost constant and whatever

precium habebant, hoc alter alteri perhumane dabat. Una

of-value they-had this the-one to-the-other very-courteously gave one

domus erat illis convivii et una somni; tractabant tam

house was to-them of-feasting and one of-sleep they-treated with-as

pari consensu communia quam et privata; non quicquam

equal consent common-matters as also private not anything

aliud quilibet horum ab altero petebat, nisi quod utile ac

else either of-these from the-other sought except what useful and

congruum illi esse censebat. Ludos etiam hoc ordine saepe

fitting for-him to-be he-judged games also in-this order often

causa exercitii frequentabant. Conveniebant autem quocumque

for-the-sake of-exercise they-frequented they-met moreover wherever

congruum spectaculo videbatur, et subsistente hinc inde omni

fitting for-a-spectacle it-seemed and standing hither thither all

multitudine, primum pari numero Saxonorum, Wasconorum,

the-multitude first in-equal number of-Saxons of-Gascons

Austrasiorum, Brittonorum, ex utraque parte, veluti invicem

of-Austrasians of-Bretons from each side as-if each-other

adversari sibi vellent, alter in alterum veloci cursu

to-oppose themselves they-wished the-one against the-other at-swift pace

ruebat. Hinc pars terga versa protecti umbonibus ad

rushed from-here the-part the-backs turned protected by-their-shields to

socios insectantes evadere se velle simulabant, at

their-companions pursuing to-escape themselves to-wish pretended but

versa vice iterum illos, quos fugiebant, persequi studebant,

turned the-tables again those whom they-were-fleeing to-pursue they-strove

donec novissime utrique reges cum omni iuventute ingenti

until at-last both kings with all the-youth with-buge

clamore equis emissis astilia crispantes exiliunt et nunc
shouting with-horses let-go spears brandishing leap-out and now
his, nunc illis terga dantibus insistunt. Eratque res digna
these now those the-backs giving they-press-on and-it-was a-thing worthy
pro tanta nobilitate nec non et moderatione spectaculo; non
for so-great nobility nor not also moderation for-a-spectacle not
enim quispiam in tanta multitudine ac diversitate generis,
for anyone in so-great a-multitude and diversity of-race
uti saepe inter paucissimos et notos contingere solet,
as often among very-few and acquaintances to-happen is-wont
alicui aut lesionis aut vituperii quippiam inferre audebat.
to-anyone either of-injury or of-abuse anything to-bring dared

VII · LOTHAR FLEES TO THE RHÔNE

Carloman brings Louis an army at Mainz, and Bardo reports that the Saxons have rejected Lothar. When Lothar puts off hearing their envoys, the brothers march against him on 17 March by three routes and meet at Koblenz, where they bear mass at Saint Castor and cross the Moselle. Lothar's guards flee, and Lothar abandons his kingdom and does not stop until he reaches the Rhône.

His ita se habentibus Karlemannus cum ingenti exercitu
these so themselves having Carloman with a-huge army
Baioariorum et Alamannorum ad patrem suum Mogontiam
of-Bavarians and of-Alamanni to father his-own to-Mainz
venit. Bardo vero, qui in Saxoniam missus fuerat, similiter
came Bardo but who into Saxony sent had-been likewise
fecit nuntians, quod Saxones mandata Lodharii sprevisent et,
did announcing that the-Saxons the-commands of-Lothar had-scorned and
quicquid Lodhuvicus et Karolus illis praeciperent, libenter id
whatever Louis and Charles to-them should-direct gladly it

facere vellent. Lodharius quoque missos, qui ad se directi
to-do they-wished Lothar also the-envoys who to himself sent
 fuerant, inconsulte audire distulit, quod tam Lodhuvicus
had-been thoughtlessly to-hear put-off which as-much Louis
 quam et Karolus nec non et universus exercitus aegre
as also Charles nor not also the-whole army with-displeasure
 tulerunt et, qualiter idem ipsi ad illum pervenire
bore and how the-same they-themselves to him to-reach
 possent, intendunt. Ergo XVI. Kal. Aprelis illis in
might-be-able they-aim therefore on-the-sixteenth Kalends of-April those in
 partibus viam dirigunt, et Karolus quidem per Wasagum
parts the-way they-direct and Charles indeed through the-Vosges
 iter difficile ingressus, Lodhuvicus vero terra Renoque
a-journey difficult having-entered Louis but by-land and-by-the-Rhine
 per Bingham, Karlemannus autem per Einrichi ad Conflentim
through Bingen Carloman moreover through the-Einrich to Koblenz
 in crastinum hora fere diei sexta venerunt; protinusque
on the-morrow at-the-hour about of-the-day sixth came and-at-once
 ad Sanctum Castorem orationis causa pergunt, missam
to Saint Castor of-prayer for-the-sake they-proceed the-mass
 audiunt ac deinde idem reges armati naves conscendunt et
they-bear and then the-same kings armed the-ships board and
 Mosellam otius traiciunt. Quod cum Otgarius Mogontiae
the-Moselle more-quickly cross which when Otgarr of-Mainz
 sedis episcopus, Hatto comes, Herioldus ceterique viderunt,
of-the-see bishop Hatto the-count Heriold and-the-others saw
 quos Lodharius ob hoc inibi reliquerat, ut illis transitum
whom Lothar for this there had-left that to-them the-crossing
 prohibuissent, timore perterriti litore relicto fugerunt.
they-might-have-forbidden by-fear terrified the-shore left fled
 Lodharius quoque, ut fratres suos Mosellam transisse in
Lothar also when brothers his-own the-Moselle to-have-crossed at

Sinciaco didicit, confestim et ipse abire et regno et
Sinzig he-learned at-once and he-himself to-depart both from-the-kingdom and
 sede non destitit, donec se super ripam Rodani cum
from-the-seat not ceased until himself upon the-bank of-the-Rhône with
 paucis, qui se sequi deliberaverant, ceteris omissis excoepit.
few who him to-follow had-resolved the-others dropped he-took-up
 Qua finem secundi certaminis dedit Lodharius, terminetur
where the-end of-the-second struggle gave Lotbar let-be-ended
 liber tercius.
the-book third

BOOK IV

PREFACE

Nithard would gladly rest from writing, and his mind, full of complaints, turns over how he might withdraw from public affairs altogether. Fortune has tossed him in the storm of events, and he does not know to what harbor he will be carried. But if he finds leisure he will go on recording, as ordered, the deeds of their princes, so that at least he may clear the cloud of error from these events for posterity.

Non solum me, uti praefatum est, ab hoc opere narrationis
not only me as said-before it-was from this work of-narration
quiescere delectat, verum etiam, quo ab universa re
to-rest it-delights but also how from the-whole state
publica totus secedam, mens variis quaerimoniis referta,
public wholly I-may-withdraw the-mind with-various complaints filled
assiduis meditationibus anxia versat. Sed quoniam me
with-constant deliberations anxious turns-over but since me
de rebus universis fortuna hinc inde iunxit validisque
with affairs universal fortune hither thither has-joined and-with-strong
procellis moerentem vehit, qua portum ferar, immo
storms grieving carries to-what harbor I-may-be-borne nay
vero poenitus ignoro. Interim autem si aliquod tempus
indeed utterly I-do-not-know meanwhile moreover if some time
otiosum repperero, quid oberit, si, uti iussum est, facta
free I-shall-find what will-it-harm if as ordered it-is the-deeds
principum procerumque nostrorum stili officio memoriae
of-the-princes and-of-the-nobles our of-the-pen by-the-service to-memory
mandare curabo? Ergo huic rerum operi quarto assistam
to-entrust I-shall-take-care therefore to-this of-affairs work fourth I-shall-attend

et, si in ceteris rebus futuris prodesse nequivero, saltem
and if in other things to-the-future to-be-of-use I-shall-be-unable at-least
 in his erroris nubeculam proprio labore posteris detergam.
in these of-error the-little-cloud by-my-own labor for-posterity I-shall-wipe-away

I • THE BISHOPS GIVE THE KINGDOM

At Aachen Louis and Charles refer Lothar's abandoned kingdom to the bishops. Reviewing his perjuries, his wars on his father and brothers, and the evils the Church has suffered from his greed, they declare that God has cast him out, and give the kingdom to his brothers to rule by God's will. Each king chooses twelve men, Nithard among them, to divide it.

Usque Lodhuvicus et Karolus Lodharium a regno suo
as-soon-as Louis and Charles Lothar from kingdom his-own
 abisse certis indiciis cognovere, Aquis palatium, quod
to-have-gone-off by-sure signs learned to-Aachen the-palace which
 tunc sedes prima Frantiae erat, petentes, sequenti vero die,
then the-seat first of-Francia was seeking on-the-following but day
 quid consultius de populo ac regno a fratre relicto
what more-advisably about the-people and the-kingdom by the-brother left
 agendum videretur, deliberaturi. Et quidem primum visum
to-be-done might-seem about-to-deliberate and indeed first seemed
 est, ut rem ad episcopos sacerdotesque, quorum aderat
it-has that the-matter to the-bishops and-priests of-whom was-present
 pars maxima, conferrent, ut illorum consultu veluti numine
the-part greatest they-should-bring that of-them by-the-counsel as-if by-power
 divino harum rerum exordium atque auctoritas proderetur.
divine of-these affairs the-beginning and authority might-be-furnished
 Et hoc illis, quoniam merito ratum videbatur, commissum
and this to-them since deservedly ratified it-seemed entrusted

est. Quibus ab initio gesta Lodharii considerantibus,
was who from the-beginning the-deeds of-Lothar considering
 quomodo patrem suum regno pepulerit, quoties
how father his-own from-the-kingdom he-drove how-often
 populum Christianum periurum sua cupiditate effecerit,
the-people Christian perjured by-his greed be-made
 quoties idem ipse hoc, quod patri fratribusque
how-often the-same he-himself this which to-the-father and-brothers
 iuraverat, frustraverit, quoties post patris obitum fratres
he-had-sworn he-frustrated how-often after the-father's death the-brothers
 suos exhereditare atque delere temptasset, quota homicidia,
his-own to-disinherit and to-destroy he-had-tried how-many homicides
 adulteria, incendia omnigenaque facinora universalis ecclesia
adulteries burnings and-all-kinds-of crimes the-universal church
 sua nefandissima cupiditate perpressa sit, insuper autem
by-his most-wicked greed suffered has besides moreover
 neque scientiam gubernandi rem publicam illum habere
neither the-knowledge of-governing the-state public him to-have
 nec quoddam vestigium bone voluntatis in sua gubernatione
nor any trace of-good will in his government
 quemlibet invenire posse ferebant. Quibus ex causis non
anyone to-find to-be-able they-reported which from reasons not
 inmerito, sed iusto Dei omnipotentis iudicio primum
undeservedly but by-the-just of-God almighty judgment first
 a proelio et secundo a proprio regno fugam illum
from the-battle and second from his-own kingdom flight him
 inisse aiebant. Ergo omnibus unanimiter visum est
to-have-entered-on they-said therefore to-all unanimously seemed it-has
 atque consentiunt, quod ob suam nequitiam vindicta Dei
and they-agree that for his wickedness the-vengeance of-God
 illum eiecerit regnumque fratribus suis melioribus se
him had-cast-out and-the-kingdom to-brothers his-own better than-be

iuste ad regendum tradiderit. Verumtamen haudquaquam
justly for ruling had-handed-over nevertheless by-no-means
 illis hanc licentiam dedere, donec palam illos percontati
to-them this license they-gave until openly them questioned
 sunt, utrum illud per vestigia fratris eieci an
they-have whether it through the-footsteps of-the-brother cast-out or
 secundum Dei voluntatem regere voluissent. Respondentibus
according-to of-God will to-rule they-would-wish answering
 autem, in quantum nosse ac posse Deus illis concederet,
moreover in as-much-as to-know and to-be-able God to-them should-grant
 secundum suam voluntatem se et suos gubernare
according-to his will themselves and theirs to-govern
 et regere velle aiunt: 'Et auctoritate divina, ut illud
and to-rule to-wish they-say and by-authority divine that it
 suscipiatis et secundum Dei voluntatem illud regatis,
you-should-take-up and according-to of-God will it you-should-rule
 monemus, ortamur atque praecipimus'. Hinc autem uterque
we-warn we-exhort and we-command from-here moreover each
 illorum duodecim e suis ad hoc opus elegit, quorum unus
of-them twelve of his-men for this work chose of-whom one
 extiti; et sicut illis congruum, ut inter illos hoc regnum
I-was and as to-them fitting that between them this kingdom
 divideretur, visum est, contenti sunt; in qua divisione non
should-be-divided seemed it-has content they-were in which division not
 tantum fertilitas aut equa portio regni, quantum affinitas
so-much fertility or equal portion of-the-kingdom as the-affinity
 et congruentia cuiusque aptata est. Evenitque Lodhuvico
and suitability of-each fitted was and-there-fell to-Louis
 omnis Frisia et cetera. *** Karolo vero ***
all Frisia and the-rest (lacuna) to-Charles but (lacuna)

Louis goes to Cologne because of the Saxons, whom Charles the Great converted and who are divided into nobles, freemen, and serfs. To win support Lothar promised the freemen and serfs their old pagan law; calling themselves the Stellinga, they nearly drove out their lords, and he let Northmen plunder Christians. Fearing the Northmen and Slavs will join the Stellinga, Louis acts against them.

Quibus peractis quique illorum e populo, qui se sequutus
which completed each of-them from the-people which him followed
 est, suscepit ac sibi, ut deinceps fidelis esset, sacramento
has received and to-himself that thereafter faithful he-should-be by-oath
 firmavit. Et Karolus quidem Mosam regnum suum ordinaturus
bound and Charles indeed the-Meuse kingdom his-own about-to-order
 traiecit, Lodhuvicus vero Saxonorum causa Coloniam petiit.
crossed Louis but of-the-Saxons for-the-sake Cologne sought
 Quorum casus quoniam maximos esse perspicio, praetereundos
whose fortunes since very-great to-be I-perceive to-be-passed-over
 minime puto. Saxones quidem, sicut universis Europam
by-no-means I-think the-Saxons indeed as to-all Europe
 degentibus patet, Karolus Magnus imperator ab universis
inhabiting is-plain Charles the-Great emperor by all
 nationibus non inmerito vocatus ab idolorum vana cultura
nations not undeservedly called from of-idols the-vain worship
 multo ac diverso labore ad veram Dei Christianamque
by-much and diverse labor to the-true of-God and-Christian
 religionem convertit. Qui ab initio tam nobiles quam
religion converted who from the-beginning as-much noble as
 et ad bella promptissimi multis inditiis persaepe claruerunt.
also for wars most-ready by-many signs very-often were-renowned
 Que gens omnis in tribus ordinibus divisa consistit: sunt
which people whole into three orders divided stands there-are

etenim inter illos qui edhilingui, sunt qui frilingi, sunt qui
for among them who edhilingi are who frilingi are who
 lazzi illorum lingua dicuntur; Latina vero lingua hoc
lazzi of-them in-the-language are-called Latin but in-the-language this
 sunt: nobiles, ingenuiles atque serviles. Sed pars illorum,
is nobles freemen and serfs but the-part of-them
 quae nobilis inter illos habetur, in duabus partibus in
which noble among them is-held into two parts in
 dissensione Lodharii ac fratrum suorum divisa, unaque
the-dissension of-Lothar and of-the-brothers his divided and-one
 eorum Lodharium, altera vero Lodhuvicum secuta est. His
of-them Lothar the-other but Louis followed has these
 ita se habentibus, cernens Lodharius, quod post victoriam
so themselves having seeing Lothar that after the-victory
 fratrum populus, qui cum illo fuerat, deficere vellet, variis
of-the-brothers the-people which with him had-been to-defect wished by-various
 necessitatibus astrictus, quocumque et quomodocumque
necessities constrained wherever and however
 poterat, subsidium quaerebat. Hinc rem publicam in
he-could support sought from-here the-state public to
 propriis usibus tribuebat, hinc quibusdam libertatem dabat,
his-own uses he-gave-away from-here to-some freedom he-gave
 quibusdam autem post victoriam se daturum promittebat,
to-some moreover after the-victory himself about-to-give he-promised
 hinc etiam in Saxoniam misit frilingis lazzibusque, quorum
from-here also into Saxony he-sent to-the-frilingi and-lazzi of-whom
 infinita multitudo est, promittens, si secum sentirent, ut
boundless the-multitude is promising if with-him they-sided that
 legem, quam antecessores sui tempore, quo idolorum cultores
the-law which ancestors their in-the-time when of-idols worshipers
 erant, habuerant, eandem illis deinceps habendam concederet.
they-were had-had the-same to-them thereafter to-be-had he-would-grant

Qua supra modum cupidi nomen novum sibi, id
for-which beyond measure eager a-name new for-themselves that
 est Stellinga, imposuerunt et in unum conglobati dominis
is Stellinga they-imposed and into one massed the-lords
 e regno poene pulsus more antiquo qua quisque
from the-kingdom almost driven in-the-manner ancient by-what each-one
 volebat lege vivebat. Insuper autem Lodharius Nortmannos
wished law lived besides moreover Lotbar the-Northmen
 causa subsidii introduxerat partemque Christianorum illis
for-the-sake of-support had-brought-in and-part of-the-Christians to-them
 subdiderat, quibus etiam, ut ceteros Christianos depraedarent,
had-subjected to-whom also that the-other Christians they-should-plunder
 licentiam dabat. Igitur metuens Lodhuvicus, ne idem
license he-gave therefore fearing Louis lest the-same
 Nortmanni nec non et Sclavi propter affinitatem Saxonibus,
Northmen nor not also the-Slavs on-account-of kinship with-the-Saxons
 qui se Stellinga nominaverant, coniungerent regnumque
who themselves Stellinga had-named should-join and-the-kingdom
 sibi vindicaturi invaderent et Christianam religionem
for-themselves about-to-claim should-invade and the-Christian religion
 his in partibus annullarent: quam ob rem, uti praetulimus,
these in parts should-annul which for reason as we-have-said-before
 praemaxime *** adiit et, in quantum valuit, simul
very-greatly (lacuna) approached and in as-far-as he-was-able at-the-same-time
 et cetera regni sui scandala, ne hoc nefandissimum
also the-other of-kingdom his-own offenses lest this most-wicked
 malum sanctae Dei ecclesiae deveniret, precavit.
evil to-the-holy of-God church should-come be-guarded-against
 Quibus expletis Viridunensium civitatem Lodhuvicus per
which completed of-the-people-of-Verdun the-city Louis through

Teotonis-villam, Karolus autem per Remensem urbem

Thionville Charles moreover through Reims the-city

adeunt, quid deinceps agendum videretur, deliberaturi.

approach what thereafter to-be-done might-seem about-to-deliberate

III · LOTHAR SUES FOR PEACE

The Northmen plunder Quentovic and, across the sea, Hamwic and Northwic. From the Rhône Lothar sends envoys admitting his wrongs and asking for a third of the kingdom. Louis and Charles offer him the lands between the Rhine and the Meuse and down the Saône and Rhône to the sea. When he complains it is not equal, the envoys add more and swear to a division in three.

Per idem tempus Nortmanni Contwig depredati sunt,

through the-same time the-Northmen Quentovic plundered have

inibique mare traiecto Hamwig et Nordhunnwig similiter

and-there the-sea crossed Hamwic and Northwic likewise

depopulati sunt. Lodharius autem, ut se supra ripam

ravaged have Lothar moreover when himself upon the-bank

Rodani recepit, navigio eiusdem fluminis fretus inibi

of-the-Rhône he-betook on-the-shipping of-the-same river relying there

resedit; quo undique quos valuit sibi in subsidium

settled whither from-all-sides whom he-was-able to-himself into support

adtraxit. Verumtamen legatum ad fratres suos dirigens

drew nevertheless an-envoy to brothers his-own sending

mandat, si sciret, qua fieri posset, primores suos ad

he-sends-word if he-knew where to-be-done it-could chief-men his-own to

illos dirigere vellet de pace deliberaturos. Responsum

them to-send he-would-wish about peace about-to-deliberate answered

est, mitteret quos vellet, facile quemlibet scire posse,

it-was let-him-send whom he-wished easily anyone to-know to-be-able

qua illis deveniret esse; ipsi vero uno eodemque
where to-them he-might-come to-be they-themselves but by-one and-the-same
 itinere per Tricasinensium Cadhellonensem adeunt urbem.
journey through of-the-people-of-Troyes of-Châlons approach the-city
 Cumque Miliciacum venissent, Iosippus, Eberhardus, Egbertus
and-when to-Mellecey they-had-come Joseph Eberhard Egbert
 una cum ceteris a parte Lodharii ad illos venerunt
together with the-others from the-side of-Lothar to them came
 dicentes, quod Lodharius cognovisset se in Deum
saying that Lothar had-recognized himself against God
 et illos deliquisse, nolletque amplius, ut altercatio inter
and them to-have-offended and-wished-not longer that strife between
 illos et Christianum populum esset; si vellent aliquid
them and the-Christian people should-be if they-would-wish something
 illi supra terciam partem regni propter nomen
for-him above the-third part of-the-kingdom on-account-of the-name
 imperatoris, quod illi pater illorum concesserat, et
of-emperor which to-him the-father of-them had-granted and
 propter dignitatem imperii, quam avus regno
on-account-of the-dignity of-the-empire which the-grandfather to-the-kingdom
 Francorum adiecerat, augere, facerent; sin aliter, terciam
of-the-Franks had-added to-increase they-should-cause but-if otherwise the-third
 tantummodo partem totius absque Langobardia, Baioaria
only part of-the-whole without Lombardy Bavaria
 et Aquitania illi concederent; regeretque quisque illorum
and Aquitaine to-him they-should-grant and-should-rule each of-them
 Deo favente portionem regni sui, prout melius posset;
God favoring the-portion of-kingdom his-own as better he-could
 frueretur alter alterius subsidio ac benivolentia; concederent
should-enjoy the-one of-the-other's support and goodwill they-should-grant
 pacem et leges invicem sibi subiectis, essetque
peace and laws to-each-other to-themselves to-those-subject and-there-should-be

inter illos Deo auctore pax pacta perpes. Quod cum
between them God as-author peace agreed perpetual which when
 Lodhuvicus et Karolus audissent, et illis plebique
Louis and Charles had-heard and to-them and-to-the-people
 universae perplacidum esset, in unum una cum primoribus
whole very-pleasing it-was into one together with the-chief-men
 coeunt ac, quid de talibus acturi essent, gratanti
they-come-together and what about such-things about-to-do they-were with-glad
 animo conferunt. Aiebant se hoc in exordio dissensionis
mind they-confer they-said themselves this in the-beginning of-the-dissension
 voluisse et, quanquam peccatis intervenientibus proficuum
to-have-wished and although with-sins intervening profitable
 esse non posset, saepe hoc illi mandatum fuisse. In
to-be not it-could often this to-him sent-word to-have-been in
 eo tamen omnipotenti Deo gratias referebant, cuius tandem
that yet to-almighty God thanks they-rendered by-whose at-last
 ope adiuti hoc promeruerant, ut frater illorum, qui
aid helped this they-had-earned that the-brother of-them who
 semper pacem atque concordiam spreverat, Deo largiente
always peace and concord had-scorned God granting
 tunc illa petebat. Verumtamen solito more ad
then those-things sought nevertheless in-the-accustomed manner to
 episcopos sacerdotesque rem referunt, ut quocumque
the-bishops and-priests the-matter they-refer that wherever
 divina auctoritas id vertere vellet, nutu ipsius libenti
divine authority it to-turn should-wish at-the-nod of-it with-willing
 animo praesto adessent. Quibus cum undique, ut
mind ready they-might-be-at-hand to-whom when on-all-sides that
 pax inter illos fieret, melius videretur, consentiunt,
peace between them should-be-made better it-seemed they-agree
 legatos convocant, postulata concedunt. Cumque in divisione
the-envoys they-summon the-demands they-grant and-when in the-division

regni quattuor dies vel eo amplius morarentur,
of-the-kingdom four days or than-that more they-delayed
 tandem visum est, ut inter Renum et Mosam usque
at-last seemed it-has that between the-Rhine and the-Meuse all-the-way
 ad exortum Mosae ac deinde ad exortum Saugonne et
to the-source of-the-Meuse and then to the-source of-the-Saône and
 sic per Saugonnam usque ad confluentum Rodani et
so through the-Saône all-the-way to the-confluence of-the-Rhône and
 sic deinde per Rodanum usque in mare Tyrrenum omnes
so then through the-Rhône up-to into the-sea Tyrrhenian all
 videlicet episcopatus, abbatias, comitatus, fisca cis
namely bishoprics abbeys counties fiscal-lands on-this-side-of
 Alpibus consistentia absque *** illi in parte regni
the-Alps lying without (lacuna) to-him in part of-the-kingdom
 tertia offerrent, et, si hanc recipere rennuat, quid cuique
third they-should-offer and if this to-receive he-refuse what to-each
 debeatur, armis decernant. Quod quidem, quanquam ultra
is-due by-arms they-should-decide which indeed although beyond
 quod iustum ac congruum, ut quibusdam videbatur, inventum
what just and fitting as to-some it-seemed found
 fuerit, per Conradum, Cobbonem, Adhelhardum et ceteros
it-was through Conrad Cobbo Adalbard and the-others
 mandatum est; ipsi vero interim, donec qui missi
sent-word was they-themselves but meanwhile until who sent
 fuerant reverterentur, in eodem loco esse se decernunt
had-been should-return in the-same place to-be themselves they-decide
 responsum Lodharii praestolaturi. Qui cum ad Lodharium
the-answer of-Lothar about-to-await who when to Lothar
 venissent, reppererunt illum paululum minus solito
they-bad-come found him a-little less than-in-the-accustomed
 more animatum. Aiebat enim se non esse contentum in
manner spirited he-said for himself not to-be content in

eo, quod fratres sui illi mandaverant, quia equa portio
that which brothers his-own to-him had-sent-word because an-equal portion
 non esset, querebaturque insuper suorum, qui se sequuti
not it-was and-he-complained moreover of-his-men who him followed
 sunt, causam, quod in praefata parte, quae illi offerebatur,
have the-cause that in the-aforesaid part which to-him was-being-offered
 non haberet, unde illis ea quae amittebant restituere
not he-had whence to-them those-things which they-were-losing to-restore
 posset. Quam ob rem — ignoro, qua fraude decepti
he-might-be-able which for reason I-do-not-know by-what fraud deceived
 — hi qui missi fuerant augent illi supra definitam partem
those who sent had-been increase for-him beyond the-defined part
 usque in Carbonarias; insuper, si hoc usque ad tempus,
up-to into the-Charbonnière moreover if this all-the-way to the-time
 quod illis pariter conveniret, reciperet, iurant illi, quod
which to-them equally should-suit he-should-accept they-swear to-him that
 tunc fratres sui iureiurando, prout aequius possent, regnum
then brothers his-own by-oath as more-fairly they-could the-kingdom
 omne absque Langobardia, Baioaria et Aequitania in tribus
whole without Lombardy Bavaria and Aquitaine into three
 partibus dividerent, essetque super his sua electio, ut
parts should-divide and-there-should-be over these his choice that
 quam vellet harum acciperet, ac diebus vitae suae eandem
which he-wished of-these he-might-take and for-the-days of-life his-own the-same
 illi concederent in eo, quod ille illis similiter faceret;
to-him they-would-grant in that that he to-them likewise should-do
 et haec omnia, si aliter non crederet, sacramento sic
and these-things all if otherwise not he-believed by-oath so
 se facturos promitterent. Iurat etiam Lodharius sic se
themselves about-to-do they-should-promise swears also Lothar so himself

velle ac sua ex parte sic perficere in eo, quod fratres
to-wish and his from side so to-accomplish in that that brothers
 sui, uti missi illorum tunc illi iuraverant, adimplerent.
his-own as the-envoys of-them then to-him had-sworn should-have-fulfilled

IV • MÂCON AND METZ

In June the three brothers meet on an island near Mâcon and swear peace until the kingdom is divided in three, with Lothar choosing first. Louis checks the Stellinga, and Charles drives Pippin into hiding. At the end of September Charles finds Lothar at Thionville, too close to Metz for the commissioners' safety, and at last a hundred and ten commissioners are to meet at Koblenz.

Igitur mediante Iunio, feria videlicet quinta, propter
therefore at-mid June on-the-day namely fifth near
 civitatem Madasconis in insula quae Ansilla dicitur cum
the-city of-Mâcon on an-island which Ansilla is-called with
 aequo numero primorum Lodharius, Lodhuvicus et Karolus
equal number of-chief-men Lothar Louis and Charles
 conveniunt et hoc sacramentum mutuo sibi iuraverunt,
meet and this oath mutually to-each-other swore
 videlicet ut ab ea die et deinceps invicem sibi pacem
namely that from that day and thereafter to-each-other to-themselves peace
 conservare deberent, et ad placitum, quod fideles illorum
to-keep they-ought and at the-assembly which the-faithful-men of-them
 inibi statuissent, regnum omne absque Langobardia,
there should-have-appointed the-kingdom whole without Lombardy
 Baioaria et Aquitania cum sacramento, prout aequius possent,
Bavaria and Aquitaine with an-oath as more-fairly they-could
 in tribus partibus sui dividerent, electioque partium
into three parts their-men should-divide and-the-choice of-the-parts

eiusdem regni esset Lodharii; et quique illorum partem,
of-the-same kingdom should-be Lothar's and each of-them the-part
 quam quisque acciperet, cuique deinde omnibus diebus vitae
which each should-receive for-each then on-all days of-life
 suae conservare deberet in eo, si adversus fratres suos
his-own to-keep ought in that if against brothers his-own
 frater suus similiter faceret. Quo expleto adhibitisque verbis
the-brother his-own likewise should-do which completed and-applied words
 pacificis pacifice discedunt, ad castra redeunt, in crastinum
peaceful peaceably they-depart to the-camp they-return on the-morrow
 de ceteris deliberaturi. Quanquam et id aegre vix,
about the-rest about-to-deliberate although even this with-difficulty scarcely
 tamen effectum est, et usque ad conventum, quod in
yet accomplished was and all-the-way to the-assembly which on
 Kal. Octobris condixerant, pacifice quisque in sua
the-Kalends of-October they-had-agreed peaceably each in his-own
 portione, qua vellet, esset. Et Lodhuvicus quidem Saxoniam,
portion where he-wished should-be and Louis indeed Saxony
 Karolus vero Aquitaniam ordinaturi adeunt, Lodharius autem
Charles but Aquitaine about-to-order approach Lothar moreover
 iam, ut sibi videbatur, de electione regni partium
already as to-himself it-seemed about the-choice of-the-kingdom's parts
 securus Arduennam venatu petit omnesque primores suae
secure the-Ardenne to-hunt seeks and-all the-chief-men of-his-own
 portionis populi, qui a se, dum a regno abiret,
portion of-the-people who from himself while from the-kingdom he-was-going-away
 necessitate coacti desciverant, honoribus privavit. Lodhuvicus
by-necessity compelled had-revolted of-honors he-deprived Louis
 etenim in Saxonia seditiosos, qui se, uti praefatum
for in Saxony the-seditious who themselves as said-before
 est, Stellinga nominaverant, nobiliter, legali tamen cede
it-was Stellinga had-named nobly lawful yet by-slaughter

compescuit. Karolus vero in Aquitaniam Pippinum fugavit;
checked Charles but into Aquitaine Pippin put-to-flight
 quo latitante nihil aliud notabile efficere valuit, praeter
who hiding nothing else notable to-accomplish he-was-able except
 quod Warinum quendam ducem ceterosque, qui sibi
that Warin a-certain duke and-the-others who to-himself
 fidi videbantur, ob custodiam eiusdem patriae inibi reliquit.
faithful seemed for the-guarding of-the-same country there he-left
 Insuper Egfridus comes Tolosae e Pippini sociis, qui ad se
moreover Egfrid count of-Toulouse of Pippin's companions who for him
 perdendum missi fuerant, quosdam in insidiis cepit, quosdam
to-be-destroyed sent had-been certain-ones in ambush took certain-ones
 stravit. Idemque Karolus ad placitum, quod cum Lodhuvico
laid-low and-the-same Charles to the-assembly which with Louis
 fratre suo Warmatiam condixerat, iter direxit. Cumque
brother his-own at-Worms he-had-agreed the-journey directed and-when
 Mettis pridie Kal. Octobris venisset, Lodharium
to-Metz on-the-day-before the-Kalends of-October he-had-come Lothar
 in villa Teotonis repperit, quo ante conductum placitum
in the-estate of-Theoto he-found where before the-agreed assembly
 venerat ac aliter, quam statuerat, residebat. Quam ob
he-had-come and otherwise than he-had-appointed he-was-staying which for
 rem his, qui a parte Lodhuvici nec non et Karoli
reason to-those who from the-side of-Louis nor not also of-Charles
 propter divisionem regni Mettis residere debuerant, tutum
for the-division of-the-kingdom at-Metz to-stay had-been-due safe
 minime videbatur, ut, dum seniores sui in Warmatia
by-no-means it-seemed that while lords their-own at Worms
 et Lodharius in Teotonis-villa essent, illi Mettis regnum
and Lothar at Thionville were they at-Metz the-kingdom
 dividerent. Distat enim Warmatia a Mettis leuvas plus
should-divide is-distant for Worms from Metz leagues more

minus LXX, Teotonis autem villa plus minus octo. Occurrebat
less seventy Theoto's moreover estate more less eight there-occurred
 etiam, quod Lodharius in fratrum deceptione sepe perfacilis
also that Lothar in of-the-brothers the-deception often very-easy
 promptusque extiterat, ideoque suam salutem illi credere
and-ready had-shown-himself and-therefore their safety to-him to-entrust
 haudquaquam absque qualibet securitate audebant. Ergo
by-no-means without any security they-dared therefore
 Karolus horum saluti consulens ad Lodharium dirigit,
Charles of-these for-the-safety taking-thought to Lothar sends
 mandat, quoniam aliter, quam convenisset, venerat et
he-sends-word since otherwise than had-been-agreed he-had-come and
 erat, si vellet, ut missi fratris sui nec non et sui
was if he-wished that the-envoys of-brother his-own nor not also his-own
 inibi una cum suis remanerent, daret illi obsides,
there together with his-men should-remain he-should-give to-him hostages
 ut de salute illorum fidus esset; sin aliter, mitteret
that about the-safety of-them sure he-might-be but-if otherwise he-should-send
 ille missos suos Warmatiam ad illos, et illi quos vellet
he envoys his-own to-Worms to them and they whom he-wished
 obsides illi darent; sin aliter, recederent a Mettis
as-hostages to-him should-give but-if otherwise they-should-withdraw from Metz
 pari spatio; sin etiam et hoc nollet, in meditullio,
by-an-equal distance but-if also and this be-were-unwilling in the-middle
 qua vellet, missi illorum convenissent: non enim se
where he-wished the-envoys of-them should-have-met not for himself
 tot nobilium virorum salutem neglegere debere dicebat.
of-so-many noble men the-safety to-neglect ought he-said
 Erant quidem octoginta electi ex omni multitudine omni
there-were indeed eighty chosen from all the-multitude in-all
 nobilitate praestantes, quorum interitus ni praecaveretur,
nobility outstanding whose death unless it-were-guarded-against

maximam sibi fratrique suo posse inferre iacturam
the-greatest on-himself and-on-brother his-own to-be-able to-bring loss
 aiebat. Tum tandem pro commoditate omnium hinc inde
he-said then at-last for the-convenience of-all hither thither
 visum est, ut Conflentum missi illorum, centum decem
seemed it-has that to-Koblenz the-envoys of-them a-hundred ten
 videlicet, absque obsidibus convenirent inibique regnum, prout
namely without hostages should-meet and-there the-kingdom as
 aequius possent, dividerent.
more-fairly they-could should-divide

V • KOBLENZ AND NITHARD'S FAMILY

At Koblenz the commissioners camp on opposite banks and meet daily at Saint Castor. Since no one knows the whole empire, Louis's and Charles's men refuse to swear to an equal division, and the peace is extended. That day an earthquake strikes Gaul, and Angilbert's body is found undecayed at Saint-Riquier. Nithard says Angilbert fathered him and his brother Hartnid by Charlemagne's daughter Bertha.

Quo scilicet XIII. Kal. Novenbris convenientes, ne
whither namely on-the-fourteenth Kalends of-November meeting lest
 forte quoddam scandalum inter homines illorum qualibet ex
perbaps some offense between the-men of-them any from
 causa oriretur, pars illorum, quae a Lodhuwico nec non et
cause should-arise the-part of-them which from Louis nor not also
 Karolo venerat, orientalem ripam Reni metantes, quae autem
Charles had-come the-eastern bank of-the-Rhine camping-on which moreover
 a Lodhario, occiduam, cotidieque ob commune colloquium
from Lothar the-western and-daily for common conference
 Sanctum Castorem petierunt. Cumque ad regni divisionem
Saint Castor sought and-when to the-kingdom's division

hi, qui a Lodhuvico et Karolo missi fuerant, variis
those who from Louis and Charles sent had-been with-various
 querimoniis accessissent, quesitum est, si quis illorum totius
complaints had-come asked it-was if anyone of-them of-the-whole
 imperii noticiam ad liquidum haberet. Cum nullus repperiretur,
empire knowledge to clearness had when no-one was-found
 quaesitum est, cur missi illorum illud in transacto spatio
asked it-was why the-envoys of-them it in the-past interval
 non circumissent, et illorum industria inbreviatum esset;
not had-gone-round and of-them by-the-diligence recorded it-had-been
 cum et hoc, ut fieret, Lodharium nolle repperissent,
since also this that it-be-done Lothar to-be-unwilling they-had-found
 aiebant impossibile esse ignoranti quoddam aequaliter
they-said impossible to-be for-one-ignorant anything equally
 dividere posse. Novissime autem quaesitum est, quoniam
to-divide to-be-able at-last moreover asked it-was since
 sacramento illud, prout aequius ac melius possent nossentque,
by-oath it as more-fairly and better they-could and-knew
 dividere deberent, si hoc sincere iurare possent, dum scirent,
to-divide they-ought if this sincerely to-swear they-could while they-knew
 quod nemo ignoranter id facere valeret. Et hoc quoque ad
that no-one ignorantly it to-do might-be-able and this also for
 conferendum episcopis commissum. Qui hinc inde in basilica
conferring to-the-bishops entrusted who hither thither in the-basilica
 sancti Castoris convenientes, a parte Lodharii aiebant, si in
of-saint Castor meeting from the-side of-Lothar said if in
 sacramento quilibet deliquisset, hoc expiare posse, ac per
the-oath anyone had-offended this to-expiate to-be-able and through
 hoc melius esset, ut hoc facerent, quam diutius tot
this better it-was that this they-should-do than longer so-many
 rapinas, incendia, homicidia, adulteria ecclesia Dei pateretur.
plunderings burnings homicides adulteries the-church of-God should-suffer

At contra hi qui a parte Ludhuvici nec non et Karoli
but on-the-contrary those who from the-side of-Louis nor not also of-Charles
 erant aiebant, dum neutrum necesse esset, cur in Deum
were said since neither necessary was why against God
 peccare deberent? Aiebant melius esse, ut firmaretur pax
to-sin they-ought they-said better to-be that there-be-confirmed peace
 inter illos, mitterentque pariter per universum imperium,
between them and-they-should-send equally through the-whole empire
 et imbreviaretur, ac tum tandem iurare quod certum est
and it-should-be-recorded and then at-last to-swear what certain is
 absque periculo aequaliterque dividere posse censebant: sic
without danger and-equally to-divide to-be-able they-judged so
 quoque periuria ceteraque facinora devitare, ni ceca cupiditas
also perjuries and-the-other crimes to-avoid unless blind greed
 impediret, posse firmabant; ac per hoc nec se ledere
hindered to-be-able they-affirmed and through this neither themselves to-injure
 in sacramento velle nec cuiquam, ut faceret, licentiam dare
in the-oath to-wish nor to-anyone that he-do-so license to-give
 testabantur. Qua dissentientes quique, qua venerat, ad
they-testified in-which-matter disagreeing each where he-had-come to
 suos secesserunt. Hinc omnes in eadem domo convenerunt,
his-own withdrew hence all in the-same house met
 a parte Lodharii dicentes, quod parati ad sacramentum et
from the-side of-Lothar saying that ready for the-oath and
 ad divisionem, uti iuratum fuerat, essent; at contra a
for the-division as sworn it-had-been they-were but on-the-contrary from
 parte Ludhuvici et Karoli similiter se velle, si possent,
the-side of-Louis and Charles likewise themselves to-wish if they-could
 aiebant; novissime autem, quoniam neuter quod alter
said at-last moreover since neither what the-other
 volebat absque seniorum suorum auctoritate assentire audebat,
wished without of-lords their-own the-authority to-assent dared

statuunt, ut pax inter illos esset, donec scire possent,
they-decide that peace between them should-be until to-know they-could
 quid seniores sui horum recipere vellent; et hoc fieri
what lords their-own of-these to-accept would-wish and this to-be-done
 posse in Non. Novenbris visum est, usquequo pacis
to-be-able on the-Nones of-November seemed it-has up-to-which of-the-peace
 termino constituto discedunt. Qua quidem die terrae
the-term set they-depart on-which indeed day of-the-earth
 motus magnus per omnem poene hanc Galliam factus
a-quaking great through all almost this Gaul occurred
 est, eademque die Angilbertus vir memorabilis Centulo
was and-on-the-same day Angilbert a-man memorable at-Saint-Riquier
 translatus et anno post decessum eius XXVIII. corpore
translated and in-the-year after the-death of-him twenty-ninth with-body
 absque aromatibus indissoluto repertus est. Fuit hic vir ortus
without spices undecayed found was was this man sprung
 eo in tempore haud ignotae familiae. Madhelgaudus autem,
that in time not unknown of-a-family Madelgaud moreover
 Richardus et hic una progenie fuere et apud Magnum
Richard and he of-one lineage were and with the-Great
 Karolum merito magni habebantur. Qui ex eiusdem magni
Charles deservedly great were-beld who from of-the-same great
 regis filia nomine Berehta Hartnidum fratrem meum et
king the-daughter by-name Bertha Hartnid brother my and
 me Nithardum genuit. Centulo opus mirificum in honore
me Nithard begot at-Saint-Riquier a-work wonderful in honor
 omnipotentis Dei sanctique Richarii construxit, familiam
of-almighty God and-of-saint Riquier he-built the-household
 sibi commissam mirifice rexit, hinc vitam cum omni
to-himself entrusted wonderfully he-ruled hence life with all

felicitate defunctam Centulo in pace quievit. His paucis
good-fortune completed at-Saint-Riquier in peace he-rested these few
 de origine mea delibatis ad historiae seriem redire libet.
about the-origin my touched-on to of-history the-sequence to-return it-pleases

VI • CHARLES'S MARRIAGE

Want, winter, and the nobles' unwillingness to fight lead the kings to keep peace into summer; at Thionville the nobles swear the kingdom will be divided, Lothar choosing. The Moors invade Benevento; the Stellinga rise and are crushed. Charles weds Ermentrude, niece of Adalhard, who squandered public property under his father, to win the people. In 843 he leaves for Aquitaine in winter.

Cum autem, uti praefatum est, reversi quique regi suo
when moreover as said-before it-was having-returned each to-king his-own
 quae invenerant nuntiassent, hinc inopia, hinc hieme
what they-had-found had-announced on-this-side want on-that-side winter
 instante, hinc etiam, quod primores populi degustato
pressing on-this-side also that the-chief-men of-the-people tasted
 semel periculo iterum praelium nolebant, ac per hoc, ut pax
once danger again battle were-unwilling and through this that peace
 inter illos usque in vigesimo die post missam sancti Iohannis
between them up-to on the-twentieth day after the-mass of-saint John
 firmaretur, assentiunt. Ad quam statuendam hinc inde
should-be-confirmed they-agree for which to-be-established hither thither
 primates populi Teotonis-villam confluunt, iurant, ut ipsi
the-chief-men of-the-people to-Thionville stream-together they-swear that themselves
 reges inter se interim mutuam pacem servare deberent,
the-kings between themselves meanwhile mutual peace to-keep ought
 et ut nequaquam quolibet modo omitteretur, ne in eodem
and that by-no-means in-any way it-should-be-omitted that in the-same

conventu, ut aequius possent, omne regnum dividerent,
assembly as more-fairly they-could the-whole kingdom they-should-divide
 essetque Lodharii, uti iuratum fuerat, partium electio
and-there-should-be Lodhar's as sworn it-had-been of-the-parts the-choice
 eiusdem regni. Hinc quique qua libuit discessit, et Lodharius
of-the-same kingdom hence each where it-pleased departed and Lodhar
 Aquis hiematum petiit, Lodhuvicus Baioariam, Karolus autem
to-Aachen to-winter sought Louis Bavaria Charles moreover
 uxorem ducturus Carisiacum venit. Eodem tempore Mauri
a-wife about-to-marry to-Quierzy came at-the-same time the-Moors
 a Sigenulfo fratre Sigihardi sibi causa subsidii inducti
by Siconulf the-brother of-Sicard to-himself for-the-sake of-support brought-in
 Beneventum invadunt. Eodem etiam tempore Stellinga in
Benevento invade at-the-same also time the-Stellinga in
 Saxonia contra dominos suos iterum rebellarunt, sed praelio
Saxony against lords their-own again rebelled but battle
 commisso nimia cede prostrati sunt; ac sic auctoritate
joined with-excessive slaughter laid-low were and so by-authority
 interiit, quod sine auctoritate surgere praesumpsit. Accepit
perished what without authority to-rise presumed took
 quidem Karolus, uti praefatum est, in coniugio Hirmentrudem
indeed Charles as said-before it-was in marriage Ermentrude
 Uodonis et Ingeltrudis filiam et neptem Adelardi. Dilexerat
of-Odo and of-Ingeltrud the-daughter and the-niece of-Adalbard had-loved
 autem pater eius suo in tempore hunc Adelardum adeo,
moreover the-father of-him his-own in time this Adalbard so-much
 [ut, quod] idem vellet in universo imperio, hoc pater
that what the-same wished in the-whole empire this the-father
 faceret. Qui utilitati publicae minus prospiciens placere
did who for-the-good public less providing to-please
 cuique intendit. Hinc libertates, hinc publica in propriis
each-one aimed hence freedoms hence public-property to private

usibus distribuere suasit ac, dum quod quique petebat, ut
uses to-distribute he-urged and while what each-one sought that
 fieret, effecit, rem publicam penitus annullavit. Quo
it-be-done he-brought-about the-state public utterly he-annulled in-which
 quidem modo effectum est, ut in hac tempestate populum
indeed way brought-about it-was that in this storm the-people
 qua vellet facile devertere posset, et hac de re Karolus
where he-wished easily to-turn-aside he-could and this for reason Charles
 praeatas nuptias maxime iniit, quia cum eo maximam
the-aforesaid marriage chiefly entered because with him the-greatest
 partem plebis sibi vindicare posse putavit. Nuptiis
part of-the-people for-himself to-claim to-be-able he-thought the-wedding
 quidem XVIII. Kal. Ianuarii expletis natalem Domini ad
indeed on-the-nineteenth Kalends of-January completed the-birthday of-the-Lord at
 Sanctum Quintinum celebre peregit, Valentianas quoque, qui
Saint Quentin solemnly he-spent at-Valenciennes also who
 de fidelibus suis inter Mosam Sequanamque causa custodie
of faithful-men his-own between the-Meuse and-the-Seine for-the-sake of-guard
 remanere deberent, ordinavit; idem vero partibus Aquitaniae
to-remain ought he-ordained he-the-same but to-the-parts of-Aquitaine
 una [cum] coniuge anno DCCCXLIII. incarnationis
together with his-wife in-the-year eight-hundred-forty-three of-the-incarnation
 Domini in hieme iter direxit. Fuit autem eadem hiemps
of-the-Lord in winter the-journey directed was moreover the-same winter
 praefrigida nimis ac diuturna, langoribus insuper habundans
very-cold too-much and long with-sicknesses moreover abounding
 nec non et agriculturae peccorique apibusque satis incongrua.
nor not also to-agriculture and-to-cattle and-to-bees quite unsuited

Nithard draws the lesson: neglect of the public good so offends the Creator that the very elements turn against men. In Charles the Great's time the people walked one road, and there was peace and abundance; now each goes his own way, and there are quarrels and want everywhere. An eclipse of the moon and a heavy snow that same night fill all with grief.

Hic quique colligat, qua dementia utilitatem publicam
here each-one may-gather with-what madness the-good public
 neglegat, privatis ac propriis voluntatibus insaniat, dum ex
one-neglects with-private and his-own wishes one-raves while from
 utrisque creatorem adeo offendat, ut etiam omnia elementa
both the-creator so he-offends that even all the-elements
 eius vesaniae contraria reddat. Quodque huiuscemodi
of-him to-the-madness contrary he-renders and-which of-this-kind
 exemplis pene adhuc omnibus notis praefacile probaturus
by-examples almost still to-all known very-easily about-to-prove
 accedam. Nam temporibus bone recordationis Magni Karoli,
I-shall-proceed for in-the-times of-good memory of-the-Great Charles
 qui evoluta iam pene anno XXX. decessit, quoniam hic
who passed already almost the-year thirtieth died since this
 populus unam eandemque rectam ac per hoc viam Domini
people one and-the-same right and through this the-way of-the-Lord
 publicam incedebat, pax illis atque concordia ubique erat,
public was-walking peace to-them and concord everywhere was
 at nunc econtra, quoniam quique semitam quam cupit
but now on-the-contrary since each-one the-path which he-desires
 incedit, ubique dissensiones et rixae sunt manifestae. Tunc
walks everywhere dissensions and quarrels are manifest then
 ubique habundantia atque leticia, nunc ubique poenuria
everywhere abundance and gladness now everywhere want

atque mesticia. Ipsa elementa tunc cuique rei congrua,
and sadness the-very elements then for-each thing suitable
 nunc autem omnibus ubique contraria, uti scriptura divino
now moreover to-all everywhere contrary as scripture by-divine
 munere prolata testatur: Et pugnabit orbis terrarum contra
gift brought-forth testifies and will-fight the-circle of-the-lands against
 insensatos. Per idem tempus eclypsis lunae XIII.
the-senseless through the-same time an-eclipse of-the-moon on-the-thirteenth
 Kal. Aprilis contigit. Nix insuper multa eadem nocte
Kalends of-April happened snow moreover much on-the-same night
 cecidit meroremque omnibus, uti praefatum est, iusto
fell and-grief on-all as said-before it-was by-the-just
 Dei iuditio incussit. Id propterea inquam, quia hinc inde
of-God judgment struck this therefore I-say because hither thither
 ubique rapinae et omnigena mala sese inserebant, illinc
everywhere plunderings and all-kinds-of evils themselves were-thrusting-in thence
 aeris intemperies spem omnium bonorum eripiebat.
of-the-air the-intemperance the-hope of-all good-things was-snatching-away

NOTKER

De Gestis Karoli Imperatoris

The Deeds of Charlemagne

BOOK I

I • THE TWO IRISH SCHOLARS

God, who broke the feet of one wonderful statue among the Romans, raises the golden head of another through Charles among the Franks. When learning is nearly forgotten, two Irish scholars land in Gaul crying wisdom for sale. Summoned by Charles, they ask only for places, minds, food, and clothing. He keeps one, Clement, in Gaul to teach boys and sends the other to Pavia.

Omnipotens rerum dispositor ordinatorque regnorum et
the-almighty of-things disposer and-orderer of-kingdoms and
temporum, cum illius admirandae statuae pedes ferreos vel
of-times when of-that wonderful statue the-feet iron or
testaceos comminuisset in Romanis, alterius non minus
of-clay he-had-broken among the-Romans of-another not less
admirabilis statuae caput aureum per illustrem Karolum
wonderful statue the-head golden through the-illustrious Charles
erexit in Francis. Ipse enim cum in occiduis mundi
he-raised-up among the-Franks he-himself for when in the-western of-the-world
partibus solus regnare cepisset, et studia litterarum in omni
parts alone to-reign had-begun and the-studies of-letters in all
regno suo propemodum essent in oblivione ideoque verae
kingdom his-own almost were in oblivion and-therefore of-true
deitatis cultura teperet, contigit duos Scottos de
deity the-worship was-growing-lukewarm it-happened two Irishmen from
Hibernia cum mercatoribus Britannis ad litus Galliae devenire,
Ireland with merchants British to the-shore of-Gaul to-come
viros et in secularibus et in sacris scripturis incomparabiliter
men both in secular and in sacred scriptures incomparably
eruditos. Qui cottidie, cum nichil ostenderent venale, ad
learned who daily when nothing they-displayed for-sale to

convenientes emendi gratia turbas clamare solebant: Si
gathering of-buying for-the-sake the-crowds to-cry-out were-accustomed if
 quis sapientiae cupidus est, veniat ad nos et accipiat
anyone of-wisdom desirous is let-him-come to us and receive
 eam; nam venalis est apud nos. Quam tamen idcirco
it for for-sale it-is with us which yet for-this-reason
 venalem se habere professi sunt, quoniam populum non
for-sale themselves to-have professed they-have since the-people not
 gratuita sed venalia querere viderunt; ut vel sic sapientiae
free-things but things-for-sale to-seek they-saw that either thus to-wisdom
 sicut ceteris rebus coemendis eos incitarent vel, sicut
as to-the-other things to-be-bought them they-might-incite or as
 sequentia comprobant, per tale praeconium in admirationem
the-following prove through such proclamation into wonder
 verterentur et stuporem. Denique tam diu conclamata sunt
they-might-be-turned and astonishment finally so long cried-out were
 ista, donec ab admirantibus vel insanos illos putantibus
these-things until by those-wondering or mad them thinking
 ad aures Karoli regis, semper amatoris et cupidissimi
to the-ears of-Charles the-king always a-lover and most-desirous
 sapientiae, perlata fuissent. Qui sub omni celeritate ad suam
of-wisdom carried they-had-been who with all speed to his
 eos praesentiam evocatos interrogavit, si veram quidem, ut
them presence summoned asked if true indeed as
 fama ipse compererit, sapientiam secum haberent.
by-report he-himself had-learned wisdom with-themselves they-had
 Qui dixerunt: Et habemus eam et in nomine Domini digne
who said both we-have it and in the-name of-the-Lord worthily
 querentibus dare parati sumus. Qui cum inquisisset ab eis,
to-those-seeking to-give ready we-are who when he-had-inquired of them
 quid pro ipsa precii peterent, responderunt: Non precium
what for it of-price they-asked they-answered not price

quidem, sed loca tantum oportuna et animas ingeniosas, o
indeed but places only suitable and minds gifted O
 rex, petimus; et sine quibus ista peregrinatio transigi
king we-ask and without which this pilgrimage to-be-carried-through
 non potest, alimenta quidem et quibus tegamur. Quo ille
not can food indeed and with-which we-may-be-clothed which he
 ab eis responso percepto, ingenti gaudio repletus, primum
from them answer received with-buge joy filled first
 quidem apud se utrumque parvo tempore tenuit. Postea
indeed with himself both for-a-short time kept afterward
 vero, cum ad expeditiones bellicas urgeretur, unum eorum
but when to expeditions warlike he-was-pressed one of-them
 nomine Clementem in Gallia residere fecit; cui et pueros
by-name Clement in Gaul to-reside he-caused to-whom also boys
 nobilissimos mediocres et infimos satis multos commendavit,
most-noble middling and lowest quite many he-entrusted
 et eis, prout necessarium habuerunt, victualia ministrari
and to-them as necessary they-held provisions to-be-supplied
 praecepit, habitaculis opportunis ad meditandum deputatis.
he-commanded with-dwellings suitable for studying assigned
 Alterum vero in Italiam direxit, cui et monasterium
the-other but into Italy he-sent to-whom also the-monastery
 sancti Augustini iuxta Ticinensem urbem delegavit, ut illuc
of-saint Augustine near Pavia the-city he-assigned that there
 ad eum, qui voluissent, ad discendum congregari potuissent.
to him who wished for learning to-be-gathered might-be-able

Hearing that the emperor welcomes learned men, Albinus, an Englishman and a disciple of Bede, comes to him by sea. Charles keeps him at his side for life and wishes to be called his pupil. He gives him the abbey of Saint Martin at Tours, and his teaching bears such fruit that the Gauls and Franks come to equal the ancient Romans and Athenians.

Audito autem Albinus quidam de natione Anglorum, quod
heard moreover Albinus a-certain of the-nation of-the-English that
 gratanter sapientes viros religiosissimus imperator Karolus
gladly wise men the-most-religious emperor Charles
 susciperet, conscensa navi venit ad eum. Ipse enim erat
received having-boarded a-ship came to him he-himself for was
 in omnibus scripturis supra caeteros modernorum temporum
in all scriptures above the-others of-modern times
 exercitatus, ut puta discipulus doctissimi Bedae presbiteri,
practiced as for-instance a-disciple of-the-most-learned Bede the-priest
 peritissimi quidem post sanctum Gregorium in scripturis
the-most-skilled indeed after saint Gregory in scriptures
 tractatoris. Quem benigne susceptum usque ad finem vitae
expounder whom kindly received all-the-way to the-end of-life
 iugiter secum retinuit, nisi quando copiis ut solebat
continually with-himself he-kept except when with-forces as he-was-accustomed
 ad ingentia bella processit; adeo ut semet discipulum eius
to huge wars he-went-forth so that himself the-disciple of-him
 et ipsum magistrum suum appellari voluisset. Dedit
and him master his-own to-be-called he-would-have-wished he-gave
 autem illi regimen abbatiae sancti Martini iuxta Turonicam
moreover to-him the-rule of-the-abbey of-saint Martin near Tours
 civitatem; ut, quando ipse absens esset, illic requiesceret
the-city that when he-himself absent was there he-might-rest

et ad se confluentes doceret. Cuius in tantum doctrina
and to himself flocking might-teach whose to such-a-degree teaching
 in discipulis suis fructificavit, ut moderni Galli sive Franci
in disciples his-own bore-fruit that the-modern Gauls or Franks
 antiquis Romanis vel Atheniensibus equarentur.
to-the-ancient Romans or Athenians were-equaled

III · THE POOR BOYS AND THE NOBLE

Returning to Gaul, Charles has Clement's boys bring him their letters and poems. The boys of middling and low birth offer work seasoned with learning; the nobles' sons bring nonsense. Like the eternal judge, Charles sets the diligent on his right and promises them bishoprics. Then he thunders at the nobles that their birth means nothing to him: unless they mend, they will get nothing from Charles.

Cumque victoriosissimus Karolus post longum tempus in
and-when the-most-victorious Charles after long time into
 Gallias reverteretur, praecepit ad se venire pueros, quos
the-Gauls was-returning he-commanded to himself to-come the-boys whom
 Clementi commendaverat, et offerre sibi epistolas et
to-Clement he-bad-entrusted and to-offer to-himself letters and
 carmina sua. Mediocres igitur et infimi praeter spem
poems their-own the-middling therefore and lowest beyond hope
 omnibus sapientiae condimentis dulcoratas obtulerunt; nobiles
with-all of-wisdom seasonings sweetened offered the-noble
 vero omni fatuitate tepentes praesentarunt. Tunc sapientissimus
but with-all foolishness lukewarm presented then the-most-wise
 Karolus, aeterni iudicis iusticiam imitatus, bene operatos
Charles of-the-eternal judge the-justice having-imitated well having-worked
 ad dexteram segregatos his verbis alloquitur: Multas gratias
to the-right separated with-these words addresses many thanks

habete, filii, quoniam iussionem meam et utilitatem vestram
have sons since command my and advantage your
iuxta possibilitatem exequi intenti fuistis. Nunc ergo
according-to possibility to-carry-out intent you-have-been now therefore
ad perfectum attingere studete; et dabo vobis episcopia
to perfection to-attain strive and I-will-give to-you bishoprics
et monasteria permagnifica, et semper honorabiles eritis
and monasteries very-magnificent and always honorable you-will-be
in oculis meis. Deinde ad sinistros magna cum severitate
in the-eyes my then to the-left great with severity
vultum contorquens et flammante intuitu conscientias eorum
the-face twisting and with-flaming gaze the-consciences of-them
concutiens, yronice haec terribilia verba tonando potius quam
shaking ironically these terrible words thundering rather than
loquendo iaculatus est in illos: Vos nobiles, vos primorum filii,
speaking hurled he-has at them you nobles you of-the-chief-men sons
vos delicati et formosi, in natalibus vestris et possessionibus
you delicate and handsome on births your and possessions
confisi, mandatum meum et glorificationem vestram flocci
relying the-command my and the-glorification your at-a-straw
pendentes, litterarum studiis neglectis, luxuriae ludo et inerciae
valuing of-letters the-studies neglected to-luxury to-play and to-idleness
vel inanibus exercitiis indulsistis. Et his praemissis, sub
or to-empty exercises you-have-indulged and these-things said-first under
iuramento augustum caput et invictam dexteram ad caelos
oath the-august head and the-unconquered right-hand to the-beavens
convertens, sic in eos fulminavit: Per regem celorum! non ego
turning thus at them he-thundered by the-king of-heaven not I
magni pendo nobilitatem et pulchritudinem vestram, licet in
greatly value the-nobility and beauty your though in
his alii vos admirentur; et hoc pro certo scitote, quia,
these-things others you may-admire and this for certain know that

nisi cito priorem negligentiam vigilanti studio recuperaveritis,
unless quickly the-former negligence by-watchful study you-shall-have-recovered
 apud Karolum nunquam boni aliquid acquiretis.
with Charles never of-good anything you-will-acquire

IV · THE BOY AND THE BISHOPRIC

One of the poor boys becomes a clerk in the chapel. Hearing that a bishop died leaving two pounds for his soul, he calls it small provision for so long a journey. Charles hides him behind a curtain and refuses the courtiers lobbying for the see. When Queen Hildegard begs it for her cleric, the boy cries to the king to hold firm, and Charles makes him bishop.

De pauperibus ergo supra dictis quendam optimum
of the-poor therefore above mentioned a-certain excellent
 dictatorem et scriptorem in capellam suam assumpsit;
composer and writer into chapel his-own he-took
 quo nomine Francorum reges propter cappam sancti
by-which name of-the-Franks the-kings on-account-of the-cloak of-saint
 Martini, quam secum propter sui tuicionem et
Martin which with-themselves for of-themselves protection and
 hostium oppressionem iugiter ad bella portabant, sancta
of-the-enemies crushing constantly to wars they-carried holy-things
 sua appellare solebant. Qui puer — cum providissimo
their-own to-call were-accustomed this boy when to-the-most-provident
 regi Karolo quidam episcopus defunctus nunciaretur, et
king Charles a-certain bishop having-died was-announced and
 ille interrogaret, utrum de rebus quas possedit pro anima
he asked whether of the-things which he-possessed for his-soul
 donaverit aliqua, legatusque responderet: Domine, non
he-had-given anything and-the-messenger answered lord not

amplius quam duas libras de argento — suspirans et
more than two pounds of silver sighing and
 vaporem mentis intra pectus continere non valens, audiente
the-steam of-his-mind within the-breast to-hold-in not being-able bearing
 rege in hanc vocem prorupit dicens: Parvum viaticum
the-king into this utterance burst-forth saying small provision
 ad iter longinquum et diuturnum. Cum moderatissimus
for a-journey distant and long when the-most-moderate
 hominum Karolus secum deliberasset, dixit ad puerum:
of-men Charles with-himself had-deliberated he-said to the-boy
 Putasne, quoniam, si episcopatum illum tu acceperis,
do-you-think that if bishopric that you shall-have-received
 plura ad illud longum iter dirigere curabis? Ille
more for that long journey to-send-ahead you-will-take-care he
 confestim, haec pendentia verba quasi praematuras uvas in
at-once these hanging words like premature grapes into
 os hiantis decidentes devorans, cecidit ad pedes eius
the-mouth of-one-gaping falling devouring fell at the-feet of-him
 et dixit: Domine, in Dei nutu et vestra potestate situm
and said lord in of-God nod and your power placed
 est. Cui rex: Sta inquit post cortinam, quae pendet ad
it-is to-whom the-king stand he-says behind the-curtain which hangs at
 dorsum meum; et ausculta, quot adiutores honoris istius
back my and listen how-many helpers of-honor that
 habiturus sis. Audientes itaque palatini recessum episcopi,
about-to-have you-are bearing and-so the-palace-men the-death of-the-bishop
 semper casibus aut certe mortibus aliorum insidiantes,
always on-the-misfortunes or at-least on-the-deaths of-others lying-in-wait
 per familiares imperatori personas unus quisque, morarum
through intimate with-the-emperor persons one each of-delays
 impatiens et alterutrum invidentes, sibimet episcopatum
impatient and each-other envying for-themselves the-bishopric

acquirere satagebant. Sed ille, in consilii sui immutabilitate
to-acquire were-busy but he in of-plan his-own unchangeableness
 persistens, denegavit omnibus; dicens, se iuenculo illi
persisting refused all saying himself to-the-youngster that
 nolle mentiri. Tandem Hildigarda regina misit proceres
to-be-unwilling to-lie at-last Hildegard the-queen sent the-nobles
 regni primum, postea vero per se ipsam accessit ad
of-the-kingdom first afterward but by her self approached to
 regem, ut impetraret episcopium illud cuidam clerico suo.
the-king that she-might-obtain bishopric that for-a-certain cleric her-own
 Cumque petitionem eius iocundissime susciperet dicens, se
and-when the-petition of-her most-pleasantly he-received saying himself
 nihil ei velle aut posse denegare, nisi quod clericulum
nothing to-her to-wish or to-be-able to-refuse except that little-cleric
 illum fallere dedignaretur, ut est omnium consuetudo
that to-deceive he-disdained as is of-all the-habit
 feminarum, ut consilium suum et votum virorum decretis
of-women that the-counsel their-own and wish of-men over-the-decrees
 praeponderare velint, dissimulata iracundia mente concepta et
to-outweigh they-wish dissembled the-anger in-mind conceived and
 grossa voce in exilem conversa, gestibusque languidulis
with-her-thick voice into thin turned and-with-gestures languishing
 inconvulsos imperatoris animos emollire conata, dixit ad
the-unshaken of-the-emperor mind to-soften having-tried she-said to
 eum: Domine mi rex, quid puero illi episcopatus ille ad
him lord my king what to-boy that bishopric that for
 perdendum? Sed obsecro, domine dulcissime, gloria mea et
wasting but I-beseech lord sweetest glory my and
 refugium meum, ut detis illum famulo vestro fideli, clerico
refuge my that you-give it to-servant your faithful cleric
 illi meo. Tunc adolescens ille, quem post cortinam, iuxta quam
that my then youth that whom behind the-curtain near which

rex consederat, stare praecepit, ut audiret quomodo
the-king had-sat-down to-stand he-commanded that he-might-hear how
 singuli supplicarent, cum ipsa cortina eum circumplexus,
each-one pleaded with that-very curtain him having-embraced
 in hos questus erupit: Domine rex, tene fortitudinem
into these complaints burst-out lord king hold strength
 tuam, ne potestatem a Deo tibi collatam de manibus tuis
your lest the-power by God to-you conferred from hands your
 quisquam extorqueat. Tunc vocavit eum in palam fortissimus
anyone wrest then he-called him into the-open the-bravest
 veritatis amator, et dixit illi: Habeas illud volo episcopium;
of-truth lover and said to-him have it I-will bishopric
 et provideas diligenter, ut maiores expensas et viaticum ad
and provide diligently that greater expenses and provision for
 illud iter longum et irrevocabile ante me et te praemittas.
that journey long and irrevocable before me and you you-send-ahead

V • THE NEW CANTOR

A newly named bishop feasts so heavily on the eve of Saint Martin that he misses the night office, where he is to sing a responsory. A despised cleric begins it at the emperor's word and, knowing no verse, sings the Lord's Prayer to its tune until the choir must answer. Charles takes the bishopric from the proud man and gives it to him.

Erat quidam clericus in comitatu regis vilis et
there-was a-certain cleric in the-retinue of-the-king worthless and
 abiectus et scientia litterarum non satis instructus. Quem
abject and in-knowledge of-letters not sufficiently instructed whom
 piissimus Karolus, paupertati eius compassus, licet omnes
the-most-pious Charles with-the-poverty of-him having-sympathized though all

eum odio haberent et expellere niterentur, nunquam
him in-hatred held and to-expel strove never
 tamen ullius suasu abiecit vel a conspectu suo
yet of-anyone by-the-persuasion cast-off or from sight his-own
 amovit. Accidit autem, ut in vigilia sancti Martini quidam
removed it-happened moreover that on the-eve of-saint Martin a-certain
 episcopus imperatori nunciaretur defunctus. Qui vocavit ad
bishop to-the-emperor was-announced having-died who called to
 se unum de clericis suis, nobilitate et doctrina non
himself one of clerics his-own with-nobility and learning not
 mediocriter praeditum, et dedit illi episcopatum illum.
moderately endowed and gave to-him bishopric that
 Qui, laetitia resolutus, convocavit ad mansionem suam multos
who with-joy dissolved called-together to lodging his-own many
 de palatinis; plurimos etiam, de parrochia illa venientes ad
of the-palace-men very-many also from diocese that coming to
 se, cum grandi fastu suscepit; et cunctis permagnificum
himself with great pomp received and for-all a-very-magnificent
 fecit convivium. Dapibus igitur praegravatus, mero
made feast with-dishes therefore weighed-down with-unmixed-wine
 ingurgitatus vinoque sepultus, nocte illa sanctissima ad
gorged and-in-wine buried on-night that most-holy to
 nocturnas vigiliis venire neglexit. Fuit autem consuetudo,
the-nocturnal vigils to-come he-neglected it-was moreover the-custom
 ut magister scholae designaret pridie singulis, quod
that the-master of-the-school should-assign on-the-day-before to-each what
 responsorium cantare deberent in nocte. Huic autem, qui
responsory to-sing they-ought in the-night to-this-one moreover who
 iam episcopatum manu tenebat, responsorium: Domine, si
already the-bishopric in-hand held the-responsory Lord if
 adhuc populo tuo sum necessarius erat iniunctum. Cum
still to-people your I-am necessary was enjoined when

ergo defuisset ille, et post lectionem diuturnum silentium
therefore had-been-absent he and after the-reading a-long silence
transiret, et ad sublevandum responsorium se alterutrum
passed and to raising the-responsory themselves each-other
cohortarentur, et alius atque alius se sibi traditum debere
were-urging and one and another himself to-himself assigned ought
cantare diceret responsorium, tandem imperator: Cantet ait
to-sing said the-responsory at-last the-emperor let-sing he-said
aliquis vestrum. Tunc abiectus ille, numine divino confortatus
one of-you then abject that by-power divine strengthened
et tali auctoritate roboratus, responsorium imposuit. Mox
and by-such authority emboldened the-responsory began soon
clementissimus rex, non sperans quod totum canere nosset,
the-most-merciful king not hoping that the-whole to-sing he-knew
iussit eum adiuvari. Cumque omnes instanter cantarent et
ordered him to-be-helped and-when all urgently sang and
ille miserabilis a nullo versum perdiscere potuisset, finito
he wretched from no-one the-verse to-learn-thoroughly had-been-able finished
responsorio, coepit orationem dominicam congrua modulatione
the-responsory he-began the-prayer Lord's with-fitting modulation
psallere. Omnibus autem illum tanquam fallentem impedire
to-chant all moreover him as-if blundering to-stop
volentibus, probare volens sapientissimus Karolus ad quem
wishing to-test wishing the-most-wise Charles to what
finem ille venturus esset, prohibuit, ne quis ei molestus
end he about-to-come was forbade lest anyone to-him troublesome
esset. Quo versum in haec verba concludente: Adveniat
should-be who the-verse into these words concluding may-come
regnum tuum, caeteri vellent nollent respondere coacti
kingdom your the-others whether-they-wished or-not to-respond compelled
sunt: Fiat voluntas tua. Finitis matutinis laudibus, cum
were let-be-done will your finished the-morning lauds when

rex ad palatium vel caminatam dormitoriam calefaciendi et
the-king to the-palace or chamber sleeping of-warming and
 ornandi se gratia propter instantem festivitatis honorem
of-adorning himself for-the-sake on-account-of the-pressing of-the-festival honor
 rediret, praecepit ad se venire illum abiectum famulum sed
returned he-commanded to himself to-come that abject servant but
 novum cantorem, et ait illi: Quis te iussit responsorium illud
new cantor and said to-him who you ordered responsory that
 cantare? Pavefactus ille respondit: Domine, vos praecepistis
to-sing terrified he answered lord you commanded
 ut cantaret aliquis. Et dixit rex — quod nomen imperii
that should-sing someone and said the-king which the-name of-empire
 veteribus in usu fuit—: Quis de his demonstravit tibi
to-the-ancients in use was who of these showed to-you
 versum illum? Tunc ille verba, quibus eo tempore
verse that then he the-words with-which at-that time
 superiores ab inferioribus honorari demulcerique vel adulari
superiors by inferiors to-be-honored and-to-be-soothed or to-be-flattered
 solebant, instinctu Dei ut creditur animatus, hoc
were-accustomed at-the-prompting of-God as it-is-believed inspired in-this
 modo labravit: Laete vir domine, laetifice rex, cum a nullo
way stammered glad man lord gladdening king since from no-one
 versum alium exquirere potuissem, cogitavi in mente mea, si
verse other to-seek-out I-had-been-able I-thought in mind my if
 aliquem incongruum arripuissem, offensam dominationis vestrae
some unfitting I-had-seized the-offense of-lordship your
 incurrerem. Idcirco eum cantare disposui, cuius finis iuxta
I-should-incur therefore it to-sing I-arranged whose end according-to
 consuetudinem penultimis conveniret responsorii. Tunc
custom with-the-penultimate-words should-suit of-the-responsory then
 moderatissimus imperator, sensim arridens illi, pronunciavit
the-most-moderate emperor gently smiling-at him pronounced

coram principibus suis: Superbus ille, qui nec Deum
before princes his-own proud that-one who neither God
 nec praecipuum eius amicum timuit nec honoravit, ut se
nor the-special his friend feared nor honored so-as himself
 vel ad unam noctem a luxuria sua refrenaret, quatenus
even for one night from luxury his-own to-restrain so-that
 responsorium, quod sicut audio debuit cantare, saltem incipere
the-responsory which as I-hear he-ought to-sing at-least to-begin
 occurrisset, divino et meo iudicio careat episcopatu;
he-should-have-been-present by-divine and my judgment let-him-lack the-bishopric
 et tu illum, Deo donante et me concedente, iuxta
and you it God granting and me conceding according-to
 canonicam et apostolicam auctoritatem regere curato.
canonical and apostolic authority to-rule take-care

VI • THE AGILE BISHOP

When another bishop dies, Charles appoints a young man in his place. As he leaves, his servants bring a horse and a mounting block; offended at being treated as feeble, he leaps from the ground so hard that he nearly goes over the other side. Charles, watching from the palace, calls him back, praises his speed and agility, and keeps him in his own retinue for the wars, since he can mount his horse so quickly.

Defuncto quoque alio pontifice, quendam iuvenem in loco
having-died also another pontiff a-certain young-man in the-place
 eius substituit imperator. Qui cum laetus ad abeundum exiret,
of-him substituted the-emperor who when glad to depart went-out
 et ministri eius iuxta gravitatem episcopalem caballum
and the-attendants of-him according-to the-dignity episcopal a-horse
 et ad ascensionem gradus adducerent, indignatus ille, quod
and for mounting steps brought indignant he that

quasi pro infirmo eum habere voluissent, de plana terra ita
as-if for infirm him to-hold they-had-wished from the-level ground so
 super eum assiliit, ut vix se retineret in eo, ne in alteram
upon it leaped that scarcely himself he-kept on it lest to the-other
 partem decideret. Quod per cancellos palatii rex
side he-should-fall-off which through the-lattices of-the-palace the-king
 prospiciens, cito illum ad se vocari praecepit, et sic eum
looking-out quickly him to himself to-be-called commanded and thus him
 allocutus est: Bone vir, celer es et agilis, pernix et praepes.
addressed has good man swift you-are and agile nimble and winged
 Utique ipse nosti, multis bellorum turbinibus undique
surely yourself you-know by-many of-wars whirlwinds on-all-sides
 serenitatem nostri imperii turbari. Idcirco opus habeo clerico
the-serenity of-our empire to-be-disturbed therefore need I-have of-a-cleric
 tali in comitatu meo. Esto igitur interim socius laborum
such in retinue my be therefore meanwhile companion of-labors
 nostrorum, dum tam celeriter ascendere potes caballum tuum.
our while so swiftly to-mount you-can horse your

VII · THE READINGS

No one in Charles's chapel is assigned the readings in advance; all prepare every lesson in case they are called on. Charles points to the reader with his finger or staff and marks the end with a sound in his throat, and the next reader begins exactly there, however awkward. So all in the palace become excellent readers.

Quod de ordinatione lectionum oblitus sum dicere, cum
what about the-ordering of-the-readings forgotten I-have to-say when
 de responsoriorum dispositione narrarem, hic paucis
about of-the-responsories the-arrangement I-was-narrating here briefly
 liceat absolvere. Nullus in basilica doctissimi Karoli
let-it-be-permitted to-finish no-one in the-basilica of-the-most-learned Charles

lectiones cuiquam recitandas iniunxit, nullus ad terminum
the-readings to-anyone to-be-recited enjoined no-one at the-end
 vel ceram imposuit vel saltem unguibus quantulumcumque
either wax placed or at-least with-the-nails however-small
 signum impressit; sed cuncti omnia, quae legenda erant,
a-mark impressed but all all-things which to-be-read were
 ita sibi nota facere curaverunt, ut, quando inopinato
so to-themselves known to-make took-care that when unexpectedly
 legere iuberentur, inreprehensibiles apud eum invenirentur.
to-read they-were-ordered blameless with him they-might-be-found
 Digito autem vel baculo protento, vel ex latere suo
with-finger moreover or staff stretched-out or from side his-own
 ad procul sedentes aliquo directo, demonstravit, quem
to far-off sitting someone sent he-indicated whom
 legere voluisset. Finem vero lectionis sono gutturis
to-read he-wished the-end but of-the-reading with-a-sound of-the-throat
 designavit. Ad quem universi ita intente suspensi sunt, ut,
be-marked on whom all so intently hung were that
 sive finita sententia sive in media distinctione sive
whether at-the-finished sentence or at the-middle pause or
 subdistinctione significaret, nullus sequentium superius aut
minor-pause he-signaled no-one of-the-following higher or
 inferius incipere praesumeret, quantumcumque incongruum
lower to-begin presumed however-much unfitting
 initium vel finis videretur. Et hoc modo factum est, ut,
the-beginning or the-end seemed and in-this way done it-was that
 etiamsi non intellegerent, omnes in palatio lectores optimi
even-if not they-understood all in the-palace readers excellent
 fuissent. Nullus alienus, nullus etiam notus, non legere
had-been no-one stranger no-one even known not to-read
 sciens et cantare, chorum eius ausus est intrare.
knowing and to-sing the-choir his dared has to-enter

On a journey Charles comes to a great church where a wandering cleric, ignorant of the chant, stands mute in the choir. Threatened by the precentor's stick, he twists his neck and gapes, trying to imitate singing. Everyone else is choking with laughter, but the emperor waits out the mass as if he had noticed nothing. Afterward he calls the wretch, thanks him for his singing and his trouble, and orders him a pound of silver.

Cum autem itinerando venisset Karolus ad quandam grandem
when moreover in-traveling had-come Charles to a-certain great
 basilicam, et quidam clericus de circumcellionibus ignarus
basilica and a-certain cleric of the-wandering-clerics ignorant
 disciplinae Karoli chorum intraret et nihil unquam de
of-the-discipline of-Charles the-choir entered and nothing ever of
 talibus omnino didicisset, in medio cantantium mutus et
such-things at-all had-learned in the-middle of-those-singing mute and
 amens constitit. Ad quem paraphonista levato peniculo ictum
senseless he-stood at whom the-precentor raised the-stick a-blow
 ei, nisi cantaret, minabatur. Tunc ille, nesciens quid ageret
to-him unless he-sang threatened then he not-knowing what he-should-do
 quove se verteret, foras exire non ausus, cervicem
or-where himself he-should-turn outside to-go not having-dared the-neck
 in modum circuli contorquens et dissolutis maxillis hians,
in the-manner of-a-circle twisting and with-loosened jaws gaping
 cantandi qualitatem iuxta possibilitatem imitari conabatur.
of-singing the-quality according-to possibility to-imitate tried
 Caeteris ergo risum tenere non valentibus, fortissimus
the-others therefore laughter to-bold not being-able the-bravest
 imperator, qui ne ad magnas quidem res a statu mentis
emperor who not at great even things from the-state of-mind
 suae moveretur, quasi gestum cantationis eius non adverteret,
his-own was-moved as-if the-gesture of-singing his not he-noticed

ordinatissime finem praestolabatur missae. Postea vero, vocato
most-orderly the-end awaited of-the-mass afterward but called
 ad se misero illo, miseratus labores et angustias illius,
to himself wretch that having-pitied the-labors and distresses of-him
 hoc modo consolatus est eum: Multas gratias habebas, bone
in-this way consoled has him many thanks have good
 clerice, pro cantu et laboribus tuis. Tunc ad sublevandam
cleric for the-singing and labors your then for relieving
 paupertatem eius iussit ei dari libram argenti.
the-poverty of-him he-ordered to-him to-be-given a-pound of-silver

IX · ALBINUS'S DISCIPLES

Every one of Albinus's disciples becomes a holy abbot or famous bishop, the Monk's lord Grimald among them; even two millers' sons govern Bobbio in turn. When Charles wishes for twelve clerics as learned as Jerome and Augustine, Albinus, alone daring to show his indignation, answers that the Creator himself had only two such, and Charles wants twelve.

Ne vero oblivisci vel neglegere videar de Albino, hoc vere
lest but to-forget or to-neglect I-should-seem about Albinus this truly
 de industria vel meritis eius agnovi: quod de discipulis eius
about the-diligence or merits of-him I-have-learned that of disciples his
 nullus remansit, qui non abba sanctissimus vel antistes extiterit
no-one remained who not abbot most-holy or bishop stood-out
 clarissimus. Apud quem et domnus meus G(rimaldus) primo in
most-illustrious with whom also lord my Grimald first in
 Gallia, post vero in Italia, liberalibus est disciplinis imbutus.
Gaul afterward but in Italy in-the-liberal was arts imbued
 Set ne a scientibus rerum illarum arguar mendacii, quoniam
but lest by those-knowing of-things those I-be-accused of-a-lie since

nullum exceperim, fuerunt in scholis eius duo molinariorum
no-one I-have-excepted there-were in the-schools of-him two of-millers
 filii de familia sancti Columbani, quos quia non congruit ad
sons of the-household of-saint Columban whom because not it-befits to
 episcopiorum vel cenobiorum regimen sublevare, tamen, per
of-bishoprics or of-monasteries the-rule to-be-raised yet through
 merita ut creditur magistri sui, praeposituram Bobiensis
the-merits as it-is-believed of-master their-own the-provostship of-the-Bobbio
 monasterii unus post unum strennuissime gubernaverunt.
monastery one after one most-vigorously governed
 Gloriosissimus itaque Karolus, per totum regnum suum
the-most-glorious and-so Charles through the-whole kingdom his-own
 studia litterarum florere conspiciens sed ad maturitatem
the-studies of-letters to-flourish seeing but to the-ripeness
 patrum praecedentium non pervenire dolens et plus quam
of-the-fathers preceding not to-attain grieving and more than
 mortalis laborans, in hanc tediatus vocem erupit: O utinam
mortal laboring into this wearied utterance burst-out O would-that
 haberem duodecim clericos tales, ita doctos et omni
I-had twelve clerics such so learned and in-all
 sapientia tam perfecte instructos, ut fuerunt Hieronimus
wisdom so perfectly instructed as were Jerome
 et Augustinus! Ad quod doctissimus Albinus, ex ipsorum
and Augustine at which the-most-learned Albinus from of-them
 comparatione merito indoctissimum se iudicans, in quantum
comparison deservedly most-unlearned himself judging in as-much-as
 nullus mortalium in conspectu terribilis Karoli audere
no-one of-mortals in the-sight of-the-terrible Charles to-dare
 praesumeret, maxima indignatione concepta sed parumper
would-presume the-greatest indignation conceived but a-little

ostensa, respondit: Creator coeli et terrae similes illis

shown answered the-Creator of-heaven and earth like to-those

plures non habuit, et tu vis habere duodecim!

more not had and you wish to-have twelve

X · THE ROMAN CHANT

Grieved that the churches sing the chant differently, Charles obtains twelve Roman singers from Pope Stephen; in envy they teach it corruptly. When Charles notices, Pope Leo punishes them and secretly trains two of Charles's clerics. One goes to Metz, whose chant spreads through Francia. The other, Peter, Charles settles at Saint Gall, which he enriches with money, estates, and a golden reliquary.

Referendum hoc in loco videtur, quod tamen a nostri

to-be-related this in place it-seems what yet by of-our

temporis hominibus difficile credatur, cum et ego ipse,

time men with-difficulty may-be-believed since also I myself

qui scribo, propter nimiam dissimilitudinem nostrae et

who write on-account-of the-excessive unlikeness of-our and

Romanae cantilenae non satis adhuc credam, nisi quod

of-the-Roman chant not sufficiently still would-believe except that

patrum veritati plus credendum est quam modernae

of-the-fathers to-the-truth more to-be-believed is than of-modern

ignaviae falsitati. Igitur indefessus divinae servitutis amator

sloth to-the-falsehood therefore the-tireless of-divine service lover

Karolus, voti sui compotem se quantum fieri

Charles of-wish his-own possessed himself as-much-as to-be-done

potuit in litterarum scientia effectum esse gratulatus,

it-could in of-letters knowledge made to-have-been having-rejoiced

sed adhuc omnes provincias immo regiones vel civitates

but still all provinces nay regions or cities

in laudibus divinis, hoc est in cantilenae modulationibus,
in praises divine that is in of-chant the-modulations
 ab invicem dissonare perdolens, a beatae memoriae
from each-other to-be-discordant grieving-deeply from of-blessed memory
 Stephano papa — qui, deposito et decalvato ignavissimo
Stephen the-pope who deposed and shaved-bald the-most-slothful
 Francorum rege Hilderico, se ad regni gubernacula
of-the-Franks king Childeric himself for of-the-kingdom the-helm
 antiquorum more patrum perunxit — aliquos carminum
of-the-ancient in-the-manner fathers anointed some of-songs
 divinatorum peritissimos clericos impetrare curavit. Qui, bonae
divine most-skilled clerics to-obtain took-care who to-good
 illius voluntati et studiis divinitus inspiratis assensum
that will and pursuits divinely inspired assent
 praebens, secundum numerum duodecim apostolorum de
giving according-to the-number of-the-twelve apostles from
 sede apostolica duodecim clericos doctissimos cantilenae ad
the-see apostolic twelve clerics most-learned in-chant to
 eum in Franciam direxit. Franciam vero interdum cum
him into Francia sent Francia but sometimes when
 nominavero, omnes cisalpinas provincias significo. Quia, sicut
I-shall-have-named all cisalpine provinces I-mean because as
 scriptum est: In die illa apprehendent decem viri ex
written it-is in day that shall-take-bold ten men out-of
 omnibus linguis gentium fimbriam viri Iudei, in illo
all languages of-the-nations the-hem of-a-man Jewish in that
 tempore propter excellentiam gloriosissimi Karoli Galli
time on-account-of the-excellence of-the-most-glorious Charles the-Gauls
 Aquitani Edui Hispani Alamanni Baioarii non parum se
Aquitanians Aeduans Spaniards Alamanni Bavarians not a-little themselves
 insignitos gloriabantur, si vel nomine Francorum se vorum
distinguished boasted if even by-the-name of-Frankish serfs

censeri mererentur. Cum ergo supra dicti clerici
to-be-reckoned they-might-deserve when therefore the-above mentioned clerics
 Roma digrederentur — ut semper omnes Graeci et Romani
from-Rome were-departing as always all Greeks and Romans
 invidia Francorum gloriae carpebantur — consiliati sunt
by-envy of-the-Franks of-the-glory were-torn consulted they-have
 inter se, quomodo ita cantum variare potuissent, ut
among themselves how so the-chant to-vary they-might-be-able that
 nunquam unitate et consonantia eius in regno et provincia
never in-the-unity and harmony of-it in kingdom and province
 sua letarentur. Venientes autem ad Karolum, honorifice
his-own they-should-rejoice coming moreover to Charles honorably
 suscepti et ad praeminentissima loca sunt dispersi; et
received and to the-most-eminant places they-were scattered and
 singuli in locis singulis diversissime, et quam corruptissime
each in places each most-diversely and as most-corruptly
 excogitare poterant, et ipsi canere et sic alios docere
to-devise they-could both themselves to-sing and so others to-teach
 laborabant. Cum vero ingeniosissimus Karolus quodam
labored when but the-most-ingenuous Charles in-a-certain
 anno festivitates nativitatis et apparitionis Domini apud
year the-festivals of-the-nativity and of-the-appearing of-the-Lord at
 Treverense vel Metense oppidum celebrasset, et vigilantissime
the-Trier or Metz town had-celebrated and most-watchfully
 immo acutissime vim carminum deprehendisset vel potius
may most-keenly the-force of-the-songs had-grasped or rather
 penetrasset, sequenti vero anno easdem solemnitates Parisius
had-penetrated in-the-following but year the-same solemnities at-Paris
 vel Turonis ageret et nihil illius soni audisset, quem
or Tours he-was-keeping and nothing of-that sound heard which
 priori anno in supradictis locis expertus fuerat, sed et
in-the-former year in the-above-mentioned places experienced he-had but also

illos quos ad alia loca disperserat cum tempore procedente ab
those whom to other places he-had-scattered when time going-on from
 invicem discordare sentiret, sanctae recordationis Leoni papae,
each-other to-disagree he-perceived of-holy memory to-Leo the-pope
 successori Stephani, rem detulit. Qui vocatos Romam vel
the-successor of-Stephen the-matter he-brought who called to-Rome either
 exilio vel perpetuis damnavit ergastulis; et dixit illustri
to-exile or to-perpetual condemned prisons and said to-the-illustrious
 Karolo: Si alios tibi praestitero, simili ut anteriores invidentia
Charles if others to-you I-shall-furnish with-like as the-former envy
 caecati, non praeterrmittent illudere tibi. Sed hoc modo
blinded not they-will-fail to-mock you but in-this way
 studiis tuis satisfacere curabo: Da mihi de latere tuo duos
pursuits your to-satisfy I-shall-take-care give to-me from side your two
 ingeniosissimos clericos — ut non advertant, qui mecum
most-ingenuous clerics so-that not they-may-notice who with-me
 sunt, quod ad te pertineant — et perfectam scientiam, Deo
are that to you they-belong and perfect knowledge God
 volente, in hac re quam postulas assequantur. Factumque
willing in this matter which you-ask they-will-attain and-done
 est ita. Et ecce post modicum tempus optime instructos
it-was so and behold after a-short time excellently instructed
 remisit ad Karolum. Qui unum secum retinuit; alterum
he-sent-back to Charles who one with-himself kept the-other
 vero, petente filio suo, Truogone episcopo Metensi, ad
but asking son his-own Drogo bishop of-Metz to
 ipsam direxit aecclesiam. Cuius industria non solum in
that-very he-sent church of-whom by-the-diligence not only in
 eodem loco pollere sed etiam per totam Franciam in
the-same place to-flourish but also through all Francia to
 tantum coepit propagari, ut nunc usque apud eos, qui
such-a-degree began to-be-spread that now still among those who

in his regionibus Latino sermone utuntur, aecclesiastica
in these regions the-Latin speech use the-ecclesiastical
cantilena dicatur Metensis, apud nos vero, qui Teutonica
chant is-called Metz-chant among us but who the-Teutonic
sive Teuthisca lingua loquimur, Mette, vel secundum Grecam
or Teuthisc language speak Mette or according-to the-Greek
dirivationem usitato vocabulo Mettisca nominetur. Sed et
derivation by-the-customary word Mettisca it-is-named but also
piissimus imperator cantorem illum sibi allatum, Petrum
the-most-pious emperor cantor that to-himself brought Peter
quidem nomine, Sancti Galli cenobio immorari aliquantisper
indeed by-name at-Saint Gall's monastery to-stay for-a-while
iusserat. Illic enim et cantariam, sicut hodie est, cum
had-ordered there for both a-singing-school as today it-is with
autentico antiphonario locans, Romane cantari doceri
an-authentic antiphonary placing in-Roman-fashion to-be-sung to-be-taught
et discere, quoniam Sancti Galli fautor validissimus fuit,
and to-learn since of-Saint Gall a-patron most-powerful he-was
sollicite monuit. Cui etiam in denariis et praediis plura
carefully he-advised to-which also in money and estates many-things
contradidit, mæssilis quidem et raûtinis et alia quaedam;
he-gave with-farmsteads indeed and with-clearings and other certain-things
insignem quoque capsam cum reliquiis, quam ipsi Karoli
a-notable also casket with relics which they Charles's
vocant capellam, ex solido auro et gemmis concompactam.
call chapel from solid gold and gems made

In Lent Charles eats at the seventh hour, after mass and vespers. A bishop rebukes him for breaking the fast, and Charles orders him to eat nothing until the court's last servant has eaten. Kings serve Charles, and nobles the kings; then nobles, soldiers, officials, servants, and the servants' servants eat, the last at midnight. At Lent's end Charles says the bishop now sees why he dines early.

Religiosissimus et temperatissimus Karolus hanc consuetudinem

the-most-religious and most-temperate Charles this custom

habuit, ut in quadragesimae diebus septima hora diei,

had that in of-Lent the-days at-the-seventh hour of-the-day

missarum celebritate pariter cum vespertinis laudibus peracta,

of-the-masses the-celebration together with the-evening lauds completed

cibum sumeret, nec tamen idcirco ieiunium violaret, cum

food he-took nor yet for-that-reason the-fast he-violated since

secundum Domini praeceptum ab hora ad horam comederet.

according-to the-Lord's precept from hour to hour he-ate

Quod episcopus quidam, contra dictum sapientis viri multum

which a-bishop a-certain against the-saying of-the-wise man very

iustus et nimium stultus, improvide reprehendit. Sapientissimus

just and too foolish improvidently reproved the-most-wise

autem Karolus, indignatione dissimulata, admonitionem eius

moreover Charles the-indignation dissembled the-admonition of-him

humiliter suscepit, dicens: Bene monuisti, laete vir episcope;

humbly received saying well you-have-warned glad man bishop

ego autem tibi praecipio, ut nichil degustes, antequam extremi

I moreover to-you command that nothing you-taste before the-last

officiales, qui sunt in curte mea, reficiantur. Comedente autem

officials who are in court my be-refreshed eating moreover

Karolo, ministrabant duces et tiranni vel reges diversarum

Charles there-served dukes and rulers or kings of-diverse

gentium. Post cuius convivium cum illi comederent, serviebant
peoples after whose feast when they ate there-served
 eis comites et praefecti vel diversarum dignitatum proceres.
them counts and prefects or of-diverse ranks nobles
 Ispis quoque manducandi finem facientibus, militares viri
they also of-eating an-end making the-military men
 vel scholares alae reficiebantur. Post hos omnimodorum
or of-the-school the-companies were-refreshed after these of-all-kinds-of
 officiorum magistri, deinde ministri, post inde vero eorundem
offices the-masters then the-servants after then but of-the-same
 ministrorum ministri; ita ut ultimi ante noctis medium non
servants the-servants so that the-last before of-night the-middle not
 manducarent. Cumque iam prope finita esset quadragesima,
ate and-when already almost finished was Lent
 et praefatus episcopus in tali castigatione permansisset,
and the-aforsaid bishop in such chastisement had-remained
 dixit ad illum clementissimus Karolus: Ut puto, probasti
said to him the-most-merciful Charles as I-think you-have-proved
 episcopo, quia non intemperate sed providentiae gratia ante
bishop that not intemperately but of-foresight for-the-sake before
 vespertinam horam convivor in quadragesima.
the-evening hour I-dine in Lent

XII • THE BLESSING

When Charles asks another bishop for a blessing, the bishop signs the bread, takes some for himself first, and then offers it to the king. Charles tells him to keep the whole loaf, and so shames him and refuses his blessing.

Ab alio quoque episcopo cum benedictionem peteret, et ille,
from another also bishop when a-blessing he-asked and he
signato pane, primum sibi perciperet deinde honestissimo
the-signed bread first for-himself took then to-the-most-honorable
Karolo porrigere voluisset, dixit ei: Habeas tibi totum
Charles to-hold-out had-wished he-said to-him have for-yourself the-whole
panem illum. Et sic, eo confuso, benedictionem illius
bread that and so him confounded the-blessing of-him
accipere noluit.
to-receive he-refused

XIII • COUNTIES AND ABBEYS

Charles never gives a count more than one county, except on the frontiers, or a bishop an abbey or royal church, except for very good reasons, since with each estate he can win a faithful vassal. For good reasons, though, he gives much to some, such as Udalric, brother of Queen Hildegard. Udalric loses his honors after Hildegard's death, and when a jester cries that he has lost everything with his sister, Charles weeps and restores them.

Providentissimus Karolus nulli comitum, nisi his qui in
the-most-provident Charles to-none of-the-counts except to-those who on
confinio vel termino barbarorum constituti erant, plus quam
the-border or frontier of-the-barbarians stationed were more than
unum comitatum aliquando concessit; nulli episcoporum
one county ever granted to-none of-the-bishops

abbatiam vel aecclesias ad ius regium pertinentes nisi ex
an-abbey or churches to the-right royal belonging except for
 certissimis causis unquam permisit. Cumque a consiliariis suis
most-certain reasons ever allowed and-when by counselors his-own
 sive a familiaribus interrogaretur, cur ita faceret, respondit: Cum
or by intimates he-was-asked why so he-did he-answered with
 illo fisco vel curte, illa abbatiola vel aecclesia, aequè bonum vel
that fiscal-land or estate that little-abbey or church equally good or
 meliorem vasallum, quam ille comes aut episcopus sit, fidelem
better vassal than that count or bishop is faithful
 mihi facio. Ex certis autem causis quibusdam plurima
to-me I-make for certain moreover reasons to-certain-men very-many-things
 tribuit; ut puta Uodalrico, fratri magnae Hildigardae,
he-gave as for-instance to-Udalric the-brother of-the-great Hildegard
 genitricis regum et imperatorum. De quo, cum post
mother of-kings and of-emperors about whom when after
 obitum ipsius Hildigardae pro quodam commisso a Karolo
the-death of-that-very Hildegard for a-certain offense by Charles
 viduaretur honoribus, quidam scurra in auribus misericordissimi
he-was-stripped of-honors a-certain buffoon in the-ears of-the-most-merciful
 Karoli proclamavit: Nunc habet Uodalricus honores perditos
Charles cried-out now has Udalric honors lost
 in oriente et occidente, defuncta sua sorore. Ad quae verba
in the-east and the-west having-died his sister at which words
 illacrimatus, ille pristinos honores statim fecit illi restituì.
having-burst-into-tears he former honors at-once caused to-him to-be-restored
 Ad sancta etiam loca, dictante iusticia, liberalissimas
to holy also places at-the-dictate-of justice most-generous
 manus patenter aperuit; ut ex sequentibus apparebit.
hands openly he-opened as from the-following will-appear

A bishop whose see lies on Charles's road spends all he has on entertaining him. Once, when the emperor arrives unexpectedly, the bishop has even the streets swept. Charles remarks that he always has everything cleaned for their arrival; the bishop answers that it is right that all be cleaned out to the bottom. Charles says he knows how to empty and to fill, and gives the see an estate.

Erat quoddam episcopium itineranti Karolo nimis obvium
there-was a-certain bishopric to-the-traveling Charles very in-the-way
 vel magis inevitabile. Episcopus vero loci illius, cupiens
or rather unavoidable the-bishop but of-place that wishing
 semper satisfacere, cuncta quae habuit in eius obsequium
always to-satisfy all-things which he-had in his service
 profligavit. Cum autem quodam tempore insperato imperator
squandered when moreover at-a-certain time unexpectedly the-emperor
 veniret, tunc episcopus conturbatus, more hirundinis
was-coming then the-bishop thrown-into-confusion in-the-manner of-a-swallow
 huc illucque discurrens et non solum basilicas vel domos
hither and-thither running-about and not only basilicas or houses
 sed et curtes ipsasque plateas verri faciens et purgari,
but also courtyards and-the-very streets to-be-swept causing and to-be-cleaned
 valde lassus et indignatus obviam illi processit. Quod cum
very tired and indignant to-meet him went-forth which when
 piissimus adverteret Karolus, oculos in diversa iaciens
the-most-pious noticed Charles the-eyes in different-directions casting
 et singula quaeque perlustrans, dixit ad antistitem: Semper,
and each thing surveying said to the-bishop always
 hospes optime, bene omnia ad nostrum introitum facis
host best well all-things for our entry you-cause
 emundari. Ille, quasi divinitus allocutus, conquiniscens et
to-be-cleaned he as-if divinely addressed bowing-down and

invictam dexteram complexus et deosculans, indignatione
the-unconquered right-hand having-embraced and kissing the-indignation
 quantum potuit occultata, respondit: Iustum est, domine,
as-much-as he-could hidden answered just it-is lord
 ut, quocumque veneritis vos, omnia expurgentur usque
that wherever you-have-come you all-things should-be-cleaned-out all-the-way
 ad fundum. Tunc sapientissimus regum Karolus, de aliis
to the-bottom then the-most-wise of-kings Charles from some-things
 alia intellegens, dixit ad eum: Si evacuare novi, et
other-things understanding said to him if to-empty I-know-how also
 replere didici. Et adiecit: Habeas fiscum illum episcopo
to-fill-up I-have-learned and be-added have the-fiscal-land that to-bishopric
 tuo proximum et omnes successores tui usque in seculum.
your next and all successors your up-to into eternity

XV · THE CHEESE

On a Friday Charles comes unannounced to a bishop who has no fish and serves him a rich white cheese. Charles cuts away the mold until the bishop tells him that is the best part. He tastes it and orders two cartloads of such cheeses sent to Aachen every year, telling the bishop how to choose them. In the third year he rewards the bishop's trouble with an estate.

In eadem quoque profectione inopinato venit ad quendam
on the-same also journey unexpectedly he-came to a-certain
 episcopum in loco inevitabili constitutum. Cumque ipso
bishop in a-place unavoidable situated and-when on-that-very
 die carnes quadrupedum aut volatilium comedere nolisset,
day the-flesh of-four-footed-beasts or of-birds to-eat he-was-unwilling
 quia sexta esset feria, pontifex ille iuxta facultatem
because the-sixth it-was day bishop that according-to the-resources

loci ipsius, cum repente pisces invenire nequisset, optimum
of-the-place itself when suddenly fish to-find he-could-not excellent
 illi caseum et ex pinguedine canum iussit apponi.
to-him cheese and from the-richness white he-ordered to-be-set-before
 Moderatissimus autem Karolus ubique et in omnibus
the-most-moderate moreover Charles everywhere and in all-things
 institutus, verecundiae praesulis parcens, nihil aliud requisivit;
trained the-embarrassment of-the-bishop sparing nothing else asked
 sed assumpto cultello, abhominabili ut sibi videbatur erugine
but taken a-little-knife the-abominable as to-himself it-seemed mold
 proiecta, albore casei vescebatur. Episcopus autem, qui
thrown-away on-the-white of-the-cheese ate the-bishop moreover who
 more famulorum propter astabat, propius accedens dixit:
in-the-manner of-servants nearby stood nearer approaching said
 Cur ita facis, domne imperator? Nam, quod proicis, illud
why so do-you-do lord emperor for what you-throw-away that
 optimum est. Tunc ille, qui fallere nesciret et a nullo
best is then he who to-deceive did-not-know-how and by no-one
 se falli posse putasset, iuxta suadelam episcopi
himself to-be-deceived to-be-able had-thought according-to the-persuasion of-the-bishop
 eruginis illius partem in os proiecit et sensim masticans
of-mold that part into the-mouth threw and gently chewing
 in modum butyri degluttivit. Et episcopi consilium probans,
in the-manner of-butter swallowed and the-bishop's counsel approving
 dixit: Verum, bone hospes, dixisti; addiditque: Omnibus
said true good host you-have-said and-be-added every
 annis duas carradas talibus caseis plenas ad Aquasgrani mihi
year two cartloads with-such cheeses full to Aachen to-me
 dirigere ne praetermittas. Ad cuius impossibilitatem rei
to-send not you-omit at whose impossibility of-the-thing
 consternatus, episcopus, quasi in periculo status et
dismayed the-bishop as-if in danger of-the-standing and

ministerii sui constitutus, ei suggestit: Domine, caseos
of-the-office his-own placed to-him suggested lord cheeses
 acquirere possum; sed nescio, qui eiusmodi sunt, qui vero
to-acquire I-can but I-do-not-know which of-this-kind are which but
 aliter. Et timeo, ne reprehensibilis inveniar apud vos. Tum
otherwise and I-fear lest blameworthy I-be-found with you then
 Karolus, quem insueta atque incognita nequaquam fugere vel
Charles whom unusual and unknown-things by-no-means to-escape or
 latere potuissent, dixit episcopo, in talibus enutrito et
to-be-bidden-from could said to-the-bishop in such-things brought-up and
 adhuc earundem rerum nescio: Incide omnes per medium;
still of-the-same things ignorant cut all through the-middle
 et quos tales perspexeris, acuminato ligno coniunge
and which such you-shall-have-perceived with-a-sharpened stick join
 et in cubam missos dirige mihi; alios autem tibi et
and into a-vat put send to-me the-others moreover for-yourself and
 clero vel familiae tuae reserva. Quod dum per duos annos
the-clergy or household your keep which when through two years
 factum fuisset, et rex talia munera dissimulanter accipi
done had-been and the-king such gifts without-remark to-be-received
 iuberet, tercio anno iam venit episcopus et per se
ordered in-the-third year now came the-bishop and through himself
 ipsum tanto labore et tam longe adducta repraesentare
self with-so-great labor and so far brought to-present
 curavit. Tunc equissimus Karolus, curis et laboribus
took-care then the-most-fair Charles with-the-cares and labors
 eius compassus, dedit ad eundem episcopatum optimam
of-him having-sympathized gave to the-same bishopric an-excellent
 curtem, unde frumentum et vinum ad suas et suorum
estate whence grain and wine for his-own and his-men's
 necessitates ipse et successores eius habere potuissent.
needs be-himself and successors of-him to-have could

To humble a vain and greedy bishop, Charles has a Jewish merchant sell him a mouse stuffed with spices as a rare animal from Judea. The bishop bids three pounds of silver, then ten, then twenty, and at last a bushel. Charles displays the silver before the assembled bishops, rebukes their greed, and tells how one of them paid it for a spiced mouse. The bishop begs pardon.

Quia retulimus, quomodo sapientissimus Karolus humiles
because we-have-related how the-most-wise Charles the-humble
 exaltaverit, referamus etiam, qualiter superbos humiliaverit.
exalted let-us-relate also how the-proud be-humbled
 Fuit quidam episcopus, vanae gloriae et inanum rerum
there-was a-certain bishop of-vain glory and of-empty things
 valde cupidus. Quod sagacissimus Karolusprehendens,
very desirous which the-most-shrewd Charles detecting
 praecepit cuidam Iudeo mercatori, qui terram repromissionis
commanded a-certain Jew merchant who the-land of-promise
 sepius adire et inde ad cismarinas provincias multa preciosa
often to-visit and from-there to the-cismarine provinces many precious
 et incognita solitus erat afferre, ut eundem episcopum
and unknown-things accustomed was to-bring that the-same bishop
 quolibet modo deciperet aut illuderet. Qui, comprehendens
in-any way he-should-deceive or make-a-fool-of who catching
 unum murem domesticum, diversis aromatibus condivit et
one mouse domestic with-diverse spices seasoned and
 praefato episcopo venalem apportavit; dicens, se de Iudea
to-the-aforesaid bishop for-sale brought saying himself from Judea
 illud preciosissimum animal et ante non visum adtulisse.
that most-precious animal and before not seen to-have-brought
 Ille, ad rem tantam gaudio repletus, optulit ei tres libras
he at a-thing so-great with-joy filled offered to-him three pounds

de argento, ut carissimum illud munus deberet accipere. Tunc
of silver that very-dear that gift he-should to-receive then
dixit Iudeus: Quam decorum precium pro tam caro munere!
said the-Jew how fine a-price for so dear a-gift
Prius hoc in profundum maris proicio, quam quilibet
sooner this into the-depth of-the-sea I-throw than any
hominum tam vili et turpissimo precio illud acquirat. Ille,
of-men for-so cheap and most-shameful a-price it should-acquire he
qui multa habebat et nichil pauperibus unquam praeberat,
who much had and nothing to-the-poor ever had-furnished
promisit ei decem libras, ut incomparabilem illam rem
promised to-him ten pounds that the-incomparable that thing
posset accipere. Tunc astutus homo ille, indignatione
he-might-be-able to-receive then cunning man that with-indignation
simulata, dixit: Nolit Deus Abraham, ut ita perdam
feigned said may-not-will God of-Abraham that so I-should-lose
laborem meum et subvectionem meam. Tunc avarus ille
labor my and transport my then greedy that
episcopus, tam carum munus inhians, proposuit ei viginti
bishop so dear a-gift gaping-after proposed to-him twenty
libras. Iudeus ergo turbidus, murem preciosissimo serico
pounds the-Jew therefore angry the-mouse in-most-precious silk
involvens, cepit abire. Episcopus vero, quasi deceptus sed vere
wrapping began to-go-away the-bishop but as-if deceived but truly
decipiendus, revocavit eum et dedit ei plenum modium de
to-be-deceived called-back him and gave to-him a-full bushel of
argento, ut preciosissimo illo munere potiri potuisset.
silver that of-the-most-precious that gift to-become-master he-might-be-able
Tandem igitur mercator ille, multis precibus ambitus, vix
at-last therefore merchant that with-many prayers solicited scarcely
concessit; et acceptum argentum imperatori pertulit et omnia
yielded and the-received silver to-the-emperor carried and all-things

supra dicta narravit. Post dies autem non multos convocavit
above mentioned narrated after days moreover not many summoned
 rex omnes episcopos et proceres eiusdem provinciae
the-king all the-bishops and nobles of-the-same province
 ad colloquium suum; et post multa tractata necessaria
to conference his-own and after many-things discussed necessary
 praecepit afferri totum illud argentum et in medio
he-commanded to-be-brought all that silver and in the-middle
 palacio poni. Tunc sic pronuntians ait: Vos, patres et
of-the-palace to-be-placed then thus pronouncing he-said you fathers and
 provisosores nostri episcopi, pauperibus immo Christo in ipsis
providers our bishops the-poor nay Christ in them
 debuistis ministrare, non inanibus rebus inhiare. Nunc autem,
you-ought to-serve not empty things to-gape-after now moreover
 in contrarium cuncta vertentes, cenodoxiae vel avariciae super
into the-contrary all-things turning vainglory or avarice above
 omnes mortales intenditis. Et adiecit: Unus vestrum tantum
all mortals you-pursue and he-added one of-you so-much
 argenti pro mure uno domestico pigmentato cuidam dedit
of-silver for a-mouse one domestic spiced to-a-certain gave
 Iudeo. Ille autem, qui tanto flagicio deceptus erat, ad
Jew he moreover who by-so-great a-disgrace deceived was at
 pedes eius corruens, veniam pro commisso precabatur. Quem
the-feet of-him falling pardon for the-offense begged whom
 ipse, digna invectione coercitum, confusum permisit abire.
he with-fitting reproof restrained confounded allowed to-go-away

The same bishop is left to guard Queen Hildegard while Charles fights the Huns, and covets Charles's golden scepter as a crozier. The queen promises in mockery to plead for him. Before an assembly from almost all Europe, Charles declares that bishops ought to despise the world, yet one wants the king's scepter for a crozier. The bishop admits his guilt and is pardoned.

Idem quoque episcopus, cum bellicosissimus Karolus in bello
the-same also bishop when the-most-warlike Charles in war
 contra Hunos esset occupatus, ad custodiam gloriosissimae
against the-Huns was occupied for the-guarding of-the-most-glorious
 Hildegardae relictus est. Qui cum familiaritate illius animari
Hildegard left was who when by-the-intimacy of-her to-be-emboldened
 coepisset, in tantam progressus est proterviam, ut virgam
he-began into such gone-forward has impudence that the-rod
 auream incomparabilis Karoli, quam ad statum suum fieri
golden of-the-incomparable Charles which for stature his-own to-be-made
 iussit, feriatis diebus vice baculi ferendam pro episcopali
he-ordered on-feast days instead of-a-staff to-be-carried for the-episcopal
 ferula improbus ambiret. Quae, illum callide deludens, dixit,
crozier shamelessly he-coveted who him cleverly mocking said
 non audere se eam cuilibet homini dare, sed tamen fidam
not to-dare herself it to-any man to-give but yet faithful
 se adlegationem eius causae apud regem fore. Veniente
herself the-pleader of-his cause with the-king about-to-be coming
 autem eo, suggestit illa ioculariter, quae amens postulavit
moreover him suggested she jestingly what mad asked
 episcopus. Cuius petitioni iocundissime rex assentiens,
the-bishop to-whose petition most-pleasantly the-king assenting
 promisit etiam, se plus facturum quam illa peteret.
promised even himself more about-to-do than she asked

Cum autem cuncta pene Europa ad triumphatorem tantae
when moreover all almost Europe to the-triumpher-over so-great
 gentis Karolum convenisset, pronuntiavit haec in auribus
a-people Charles had-gathered he-pronounced these-things in the-ears
 maiorum et minorum: Episcopi contemptores huius mundi
of-the-greater and lesser the-bishops despisers of-this world
 debuerunt esse et alios exemplo sui ad appetenda
ought to-be and others by-the-example of-themselves to things-to-be-sought
 celestia provocare. Nunc vero prae caeteris mortalibus
heavenly to-incite now but beyond the-other mortals
 tanta ambitione corrupti sunt, ut quidam ex eis,
with-so-great ambition corrupted they-are that a-certain-one of them
 non contentus episcopatu, quem in prima sede Germaniae
not content with-the-bishopric which in the-first see of-Germany
 retinet, sceptrum nostrum, quod pro significatione regiminis
he-holds the-scepter our which for the-signifying of-rule
 nostri aureum ferre solemus, pro pastoralis baculo, nobis
our golden to-carry we-are-accustomed for the-pastoral staff with-us
 ignorantibus, sibi vendicare voluisset. Reus, reatum
not-knowing for-himself to-claim would-have-wished the-culprit guilt
 suum cognoscens, indulgentia percepta, recessit.
his-own recognizing pardon received withdrew

The author fears offending the clergy by carrying out the emperor's command. When Charles orders every bishop to preach or lose his see, the vain bishop calls two palace nobles to a feast day, has a poor red-haired man dragged forward for covering his head with a boot, and proclaims him a sluggard. He feasts the nobles and bribes them to praise him, but Charles, learning the truth, lets him keep the see.

Nimium pertimesco, o domne imperator Karole, ne, dum
too-much I-am-afraid O lord emperor Charles lest while
 iussionem vestram implere cupio, omnium professionum et
the-command your to-fulfill I-desire of-all professions and
 maxime summorum sacerdotum offensionem incurram. Sed
chiefly of-the-highest priests the-offense I-incur but
 tamen de his omnibus non grandis mihi cura est, si
yet about these all not great to-me care is if
 tantum vestra defensione non destituar.

only by-your defense not I-be-abandoned

Precepit aliquando religiosissimus Karolus imperator, ut omnes
commanded once the-most-religious Charles emperor that all
 episcopi per latissimum regnum suum aut ante praefinitum
bishops through the-very-broad kingdom his-own either before the-predetermined
 diem, quem ipse constituerat, in aecclesiasticae sedis basilica
day which he-himself had-appointed in of-the-episcopal see the-basilica
 praedicarent aut, quicumque non faceret, episcopatus honore
should-preach or whoever not did of-the-bishopric of-the-honor
 careret. Sed quid dico: honore? cum apostolus protestetur: Si
should-lack but why do-I-say honor when the-apostle declares if
 quis episcopatum desiderat, bonum opus desiderat. Sed vere
anyone a-bishopric desires a-good work he-desires but truly
 vobis, serenissime regum, occulte fateor: quia magnus honor
to-you most-serene of-kings secretly I-confess that great honor

in eo; opus vero bonum nec minimum requiritur in illo.
in it work but good nor the-least is-required in it
 Supra dictus igitur episcopus, primo ad tale praeceptum
the-above mentioned therefore bishop first at such a-command
 contrerritus, cum nichil aliud sciret nisi deliciis affluere et
terrified since nothing else he-knew except in-luxuries to-abound and
 superbia, timens autem, ne, si episcopatu careret, luxuria
in-pride fearing moreover lest if of-the-bishopric he-were-deprived of-the-luxury
 sua pariter viduaretur, vocavit duos de primoribus palatinis
his-own equally should-be-bereft called two of the-chief palace-men
 ad diem festum, et post lectionem euangelii ascendit in
to a-day festal and after the-reading of-the-gospel ascended onto
 gradus, quasi ad alloquendum illum populum. Cumque ad
the-steps as-if for addressing that people and-when at
 tam inopinatam rem omnes admirati concurrerent, excepto
so unexpected a-thing all having-wondered ran-together except
 uno pauperculo valde rufo, gallicula, quia pilleum non
one poor-little-man very red-haired with-a-boot because a-cap not
 habuit et de colore suo nimium erubuit, caput induto,
he-had and of color his-own too-much blushed the-head covered
 tunc dixit — nominetenus non re vera episcopus —
then said in-name not in-reality true bishop
 ad hostiarium vel scarionem suum, cuius dignitatis aut
to doorkeeper or steward his-own of-which rank or
 ministerii viri apud antiquos Romanos ediliciorum nomine
office men among the-ancient Romans of-aediles by-the-name
 censebantur: Voca ait ad me pilleatum illum hominem,
were-reckoned call he-said to me capped that man
 qui stat iuxta ostium ecclesiae. Festinans ille mandatum
who stands near the-door of-the-church hastening he the-command
 domini implere, apprehendens miserum, coepit trahere illum
of-the-lord to-fulfill seizing the-wretch began to-drag him

ad episcopum. Qui timens, ne gravi multaretur vindicta,
to the-bishop who fearing lest with-heavy he-be-punished vengeance
 quod tecto capite stare in domo Dei praesumeret, totis
because with-covered head to-stand in the-house of-God he-presumed with-all
 viribus coepit reniti, ne quasi ad tribunal severissimi iudicis
strength began to-resist lest as-if to the-tribunal of-a-most-severe judge
 traheretur. Tunc episcopus, de eminentioribus prospiciens
he-be-dragged then the-bishop from the-higher-place looking-out
 et nunc vasallum suum alloquens nunc illum misellum
and now vassal his-own addressing now that wretch
 increpitans, excelsa voce clamando praedicavit: Attrahe illum
rebuking in-a-lofty voice shouting preached drag him
 huc; cave ne dimittas! Velis nolis, huc debes venire.
hither take-care not you-let-go whether-you-will or-not hither you-must to-come
 Cum ergo aut vi aut metu devictus appropinquaret,
when therefore either by-force or by-fear overcome he-approached
 dixit episcopus: Accede propius; appropinqua etiam! Atque
said the-bishop come nearer approach even and
 deinde apprehensum capitis tegmen abstraxit, et ad plebem
then seized of-the-head the-covering pulled-off and to the-people
 proclamavit: Ecce videtis o populi; rufus iste ignavus
proclaimed behold you-see O peoples red-head this a-sluggard
 est. Et reversus ad altare, solemnities consecravat vel
is and having-retuned to the-altar the-solemnities consecrated or
 se consecrare simulavit. Talibus ergo missis ad finem
himself to-consecrate pretended such therefore masses to the-end
 perductis, ingrediuntur in aulam, variis tapetibus et
brought they-enter into the-hall with-various carpets and
 omnigenis ornatam palliis; ubi oppipare illud convivium,
with-all-kinds-of adorned hangings where sumptuously that feast
 auro vel argento sive gemmeis vasis innisum, fastidio
with-gold or silver or jeweled vessels resting with-loathing

vel nausea laborantes in sui desiderium possit allicere.
or with-nausea those-laboring into of-itself desire could to-allure
 Sedebat autem ipse super mollissimas plumas, preciosissimo
sat moreover he-himself upon softest feathers in-most-precious
 serico vestitus, imperatoria purpura indutus, ita ut nichil
silk clothed with-imperial purple dressed so that nothing
 illi nisi sceptrum et nomen regium deesset; ditissimorum
to-him except the-scepter and the-name royal was-lacking of-the-richest
 militum cohortibus septus, in quorum comparatione illi
soldiers by-cohorts surrounded in whose comparison those
 palatini, hoc est invictissimi Karoli proceres, vilissimi
palace-men that is of-the-most-unconquered Charles the-nobles most-worthless
 sibimet ipsis viderentur. Qui cum post admirabile illud
to-themselves selves seemed who when after admirable that
 et regibus inusitatum convivium licentiam abeundi peterent,
and to-kings unusual feast leave of-departing they-asked
 ille, ut eis magnificentiam suam et gloriam manifestus
he that to-them magnificence his-own and glory more-manifestly
 ostenderet, iussit procedere peritissimos cantandi magistros
he-might-show ordered to-come-forth the-most-skilled of-singing masters
 cum omnibus organis musicorum, de quorum vocibus et
with all instruments of-musicians of whose voices and
 sonitu fortissima quoque corda mollescerent et liquidissima
sound the-strongest also hearts would-soften and the-most-liquid
 Reni fluentia durescerent. Potuum vero diversissima genera,
of-the-Rhine streams would-harden of-drinks but most-diverse kinds
 variis pigmentis aut medicaminibus contemperata, herbis
with-various spices or drugs blended with-herbs
 et floribus, gemmarum vel auri fulgorem in se
and flowers of-gems or of-gold the-gleam into themselves
 trahentibus suumque ruborem illis infundentibus, coronata,
drawing and-their-own redness on-them pouring crowned

restagnantibus iam stomachis, tepebant in manibus. Interea
with-overflowing already stomachs grew-warm in hands meanwhile
 vero pistorum, lanii, coqui et fartores plenis ventribus
but bakers butchers cooks and sausage-makers with-full bellies
 omnimoda gulae irritamenta exquisitis artibus praeparabant,
all-kinds-of of-gluttony incitements with-exquisite arts prepared
 qualis nunquam coena magno Karolo composita est.
such-as never a-dinner for-the-great Charles composed was
 Mane autem facto, cum aliquantis per ad sobrietatem rediret
morning moreover come when somewhat to sobriety returned
 episcopus et luxum, quem pridie coram satellitibus
the-bishop and the-luxury which the-day-before before the-attendants
 imperatoris expenderat, perhorresceret, iussit eos adduci
of-the-emperor he-had-spent shuddered-at he-ordered them to-be-brought
 ad se; et regiis muneribus honoratos adiuravit: ut de
to himself and with-royal gifts honored adjured that about
 se bona et modesta apud terribilem Karolum narrare
himself good and modest-things before the-terrible Charles to-tell
 dignarentur et quia publice in ecclesia ipsis audientibus
they-would-deign and that publicly in the-church them bearing
 praedicaret. Quos cum reversos imperator interrogaret, cur
he-preached whom when returned the-emperor asked why
 eos episcopus ille vocaret, procidentibus ad eius pedes dixerunt:
them bishop that called falling at his feet they-said
 Domine, ut nos in vestro nomine supra mediocritatem
lord that us in your name beyond middling-station
 nostram honoraret. Et adiecerunt: Fidelissimus vobis est
our he-might-honor and they-added most-faithful to-you is
 et omnibus vestris optimus ille episcopus summoque
and to-all yours excellent that bishop and-of-the-highest
 sacerdotio dignissimus. Nam si nostrae vilitati credere
priesthood most-worthy for if our lowliness to-believe

dignamini, fatemur sublimitati vestrae, quoniam declamatorie
you-deign we-confess to-highness your that declamatorily
 audivimus illum praedicare. Cumque imperator, imperitiae
we-heard him preach and-when the-emperor of-the-unskill
 illius non ignarus, de modo praedicationis interrogaret, illi,
of-him not ignorant about the-manner of-the-preaching asked they
 fallere non audentes, omnia per ordinem retexuerunt. Tunc
to-deceive not daring all-things in order unfolded then
 intellegens, timoris sui causa magis aliquid illum loqui
understanding of-fear his-own for-the-sake more something him to-say
 conatum quam praeceptum suum praetermittere ausum,
to-have-tried than command his-own to-neglect to-have-dared
 licet indignum, retinere permisit episcopatum.
though unworthy to-keep he-allowed the-bishopric

XIX • THE ALLELUIA

When a young kinsman of the king sings the Alleluia beautifully on a feast day, Charles remarks to the same bishop how well their cleric has sung. Not knowing who the singer is, the bishop jokes that any rustic can drone like that to his plowing oxen. The emperor turns such a thunderous glare on him that he falls to the ground.

Post tempus vero non longum cum quidam iuvenis, cognatus
after a-time but not long when a-certain youth a-kinsman
 regis, optime in quadam festivitate caneret Alleluia, dixit
of-the-king excellently on a-certain festival was-singing Alleluia said
 imperator ad eundem episcopum: Bene cantavit modo ille
the-emperor to the-same bishop well has-sung just-now that
 noster clericus. Qui, iuxta stulticiam suam ioculariter illa
our cleric who according-to foolishness his-own jestingly those
 verba suscipiens, et illum imperatoris cognatum esse nesciens,
words taking and him of-the-emperor a-kinsman to-be not-knowing

respondit: Sic omnes perriparii possunt bubus agricolantibus
answered so all rustics can to-oxen plowing
 veterinare. Ad quod responsum improbissimum fulmineas in
to-drone at which answer most-shameless lightning-like on
 eum acies imperator intorquens attonitum terrae prostravit.
him glances the-emperor hurling thunderstruck to-the-earth laid-low

XX · THE FOX

A bishop of a tiny city wants to be honored as a saint in his lifetime. A vassal who can win no kind word from him sets his dogs on a fox, rescues it alive, and brings it as a gift, swearing he stopped it in the name of his lord Recho. The bishop declares that his holiness is now plain, and from then on loves the man he hated.

Fuit alius episcopus parvissimae civitatulae, qui se, dum
there-was another bishop of-a-very-small little-city who himself while
 adhuc in carne viveret, non apostolorum et martyrum
still in the-flesh he-lived not of-the-apostles and martyrs
 more intercessorem ad Deum haberi sed ipse divinis
in-the-manner an-intercessor to God to-be-held but himself with-divine
 cultibus voluit honorari. Sed talem superbiam hoc modo
worship wished to-be-honored but such pride in-this way
 statuit occultare, ut sanctus Dei diceretur, ne omnibus
he-decided to-conceal that holy of-God he-might-be-called lest to-all
 abominabilis cum idolis gentium reputaretur. Hic habuit
abominable with the-idols of-the-beathens he-be-reckoned he had
 unum vasallum, non ignobilem civium suorum, valde
one vassal not low-born of-citizens his-own very
 strenuum et industrium; cui tamen ille, non dicam
vigorous and diligent to-whom yet he not I-will-say
 aliquod beneficium, sed ne ullum quidem aliquando blandum
any benefit but not any even ever flattering

sermonem impendit. Qui, nesciens quid agere posset ut
speech bestowed who not-knowing what to-do he-could that
 immites eius animos placaret, excogitavit, ut, si aliquod
the-barsb his mind he-might-appease devised that if some
 signum in nomine illius se fecisse comprobaret, ad gratiam
miracle in the-name of-him himself to-have-done he-proved to the-favor
 ipsius pervenire valeret. Cum ergo de domo sua
of-him to-come he-might-be-able when therefore from house his-own
 ad episcopum venire diserneret, assumpsit duas caniculas
to the-bisbop to-come he-was-arranging he-took two little-dogs
 in manu sua, quas Gallica lingua veltres nuncupat, quae,
in hand his-own which the-Gallic language veltres calls which
 agilitate sua vulpes et ceteras minores bestiolas facillime
by-agility their-own foxes and the-other smaller little-beasts most-easily
 capientes, caras etiam et alia volatilia ascensu celeriore sepe
catching cara-birds also and other birds by-a-leap swifter often
 deciperent. Et dum in via vulpem muribus insidiantem
would-ensnare and when on the-way a-fox for-mice lying-in-wait
 videret, ex improvise canes illi tacitus immisit. Quae,
he-saw from the-unforeseen the-dogs at-it silently he-let-loose which
 volatu rapidissimo ruentes post illam, intra iactum sagittae
with-flight most-swift rushing after it within the-cast of-an-arrow
 comprehenderunt. Ipse quoque cursu praepeti subsecutus,
seized he-himself also at-pace swift having-followed-after
 vivam et sanam dentibus canum et unguibus excussit.
alive and sound from-the-teeth of-the-dogs and claws shook-out
 Canes autem ubi potuit abscondens, tripudians cum illo
the-dogs moreover where he-could biding dancing-with-joy with that
 munere ad dominum suum introivit; et suppliciter inquit: Ecce,
gift to lord his-own he-went-in and humbly begins behold
 domine, quale munus ego pauperculus acquirere potui.
lord what-sort-of a-gift I poor-little to-acquire have-been-able

Tunc episcopus, parum arridens, interrogavit, quomodo illam
then the-bishop a-little smiling asked how it
 ita sanam comprehenderet. At ille, propius accedens et per
so sound he-caught but he nearer approaching and by
 salutem ipsius domini sui iurans quod veritatem non
the-salvation of-that-very lord his-own swearing that the-truth not
 celaret, intulit: Domine, per campum istum caballicans, et
he-would-hide declared lord through field that riding and
 vulpem istam non longinquam aspiciens, laxis habenis post
fox that not distant seeing with-loose reins after
 illam tendere coepi. Porro, cum ipsa tam pernicious aufugeret,
it to-press-on I-began further when she so swiftly fled
 ut vix eam videre iam potuissem, elevata manu adiuravi
that scarcely her to-see now I-could raised the-hand I-adjured
 illam dicens: „In nomine domini mei Rechonis sta et non
her saying in the-name of-lord my Recho stand and not
 movearis ultra“. Et ecce quasi catenis obligata stetit in
be-moved further and behold as-if with-chains bound she-stood in
 loco fixa, donec eam quasi ovem derelictam tollerem. Tunc
the-place fixed until her like a-sheep abandoned I-took-up then
 ille, inani gestione perflatus, dixit coram omnibus: Nunc
be with-empty exultation puffed-up said before all now
 apparet sanctitas mea, nunc scio quis sim, nunc agnosco
appears holiness my now I-know who I-am now I-recognize
 quid futurus sim. Ex illo die exosum illum hominem super
what about-to-be I-am from that day hated that man above
 omnes familiares suos miro coluit amore.
all intimates his-own with-wonderful he-cherished love

Tempted by the devil to crave meat in Lent, a holy bishop eats a little and despairs. To atone he fasts and on Holy Saturday bathes and shaves the needy. At the church the devil meets him as a foul leper. He shaves the leper, but the hair regrows and an eye opens in its throat; the bishop crosses himself, and the devil vanishes, saying the eye watched him eat meat.

Hec, quia ita se obtulit occasio, extrinsecus cum
these-things because so itself offered the-occasion from-outside although
 sint inserta, non ab re videtur, etiam caetera,
they-are inserted not from the-matter it-seems also the-other-things
 quae hisdem temporibus memoria digna sunt gesta, stili
which in-the-same times of-memory worthy were done of-the-pen
 officio religare. Erat quidam episcopus in Francia nova
by-the-service to-bind there-was a-certain bishop in Francia new
 mirae sanctitatis et abstinenciae, incomparabilis etiam
of-wonderful holiness and abstinence incomparable also
 liberalitatis et misericordiae. Cuius bonitate invidus omnis
of-liberality and mercy by-whose goodness envious of-all
 iusticiae hostis antiquus nimium exasperatus tale illi
justice the-enemy ancient too-much exasperated such on-him
 desiderium edendae carnis in diebus quadragesimae inmisit, ut
a-desire of-eating of-flesh in the-days of-Lent cast that
 absque recrastinatione se moriturum putaret, nisi eiusmodi
without postponement himself about-to-die he-thought unless with-such
 recrearetur edulio. Consilio tamen multorum sanctorum et
he-were-refreshed food by-the-counsel yet of-many holy and
 venerabilium patrum et sacerdotum roboratus, ut carnes pro
venerable fathers and priests strengthened that flesh for
 recuperatione sanitatis acciperet et postea per totum annum
the-recovery of-health he-should-take and afterward through the-whole year

more solito se maceraret, ne ipsis inoboediens et
in-the-manner accustomed himself should-mortify lest to-them disobedient and
 vitae suae perditor inveniretur, eorum cedens auctoritati et
of-life his-own a-destroyer he-should-be-found of-them yielding to-the-authority and
 ultima necessitate coactus, parum quid de quadrupedante
by-the-last necessity compelled a-little something of four-footed
 carne misit in buccam. Quod cum masticare coepisset et
flesh he-put into the-mouth which when to-chew he-had-begun and
 gustum illius sensu palati tenuissime percepisset, tanto
the-taste of-it with-the-sense of-the-palate most-faintly had-perceived with-such
 mox fastidio vel odio non solum carnum seu caeterarum
soon loathing or hatred not only of-meats or of-the-other
 escarum sed et lucis ipsius et vitae praesentis cum salutis
foods but also of-light itself and of-life present with of-salvation
 suae desperatione correptus est, ut ultra nec manducare
his-own despair seized he-was that further neither to-eat
 vellet nec bibere, aut spem suam in salvatore perditorum
he-wished nor to-drink or hope his-own in the-savior of-the-lost
 ponere confideret. Cum autem haec prima ebdomada
to-place dared when moreover these-things in-the-first week
 quadragesimae gererentur, suggerebant ei praefati patres,
of-Lent were-being-done suggested to-him the-aforsaid fathers
 ut, quoniam diabolica se illusione deceptum cognosceret,
that since by-diabolical himself illusion deceived he-knew
 acrioribus ieiuniis et contricione cordis elemosinarumque
by-sharper fasts and contrition of-heart and-of-alsms
 largitate momentaneum illud peccatum superducere extenuare
by-the-largess momentary that sin to-cover-over to-lessen
 vel abluere niteretur. Qui — ut erat optime institutus
or to-wash-away he-should-strive who as he-was excellently trained
 cunctis, eorum consilio parens, ut et diaboli maliciam
in-all-things of-them to-the-counsel obeying that both of-the-devil the-malice

confunderet et apud innocentiae restitutorem commissi
he-might-confound and with of-innocence the-restorer for-the-offense
 veniam impetraret, biduanis vel triduanis ieiuniis se affligens,
pardon he-might-obtain with-two-day or three-day fasts himself afflicting
 somni quietem fugiens, pauperibus et peregrinis per se
of-sleep the-rest fleeing to-the-poor and pilgrims through himself
 ipsum cottidie ministrans eorumque pedes abluens, vestesque
self daily ministering and-their feet washing and-garments
 et pecunias iuxta facultatem illis offerens et ultra
and money according-to his-means to-them offering and further
 etiam impendere volens — die sancto sabbati paschalis
even to-spend wishing on-the-day holy of-Saturday of-Easter
 plurima dolia de tota civitate postulavit, et calidas balneas
very-many casks from the-whole city he-asked-for and hot baths
 a mane usque ad vesperam cunctis indigentibus exhibere
from morning all-the-way to evening for-all the-needy to-furnish
 curavit, et colla singulorum ipse manu sua rasis, et
took-care and the-necks of-each he-himself with-hand his-own shaved and
 purulentas scabies et hirsutorum corporum vepres unguibus
the-festering scabs and of-the-hairy bodies thorns with-his-nails
 extraxit, et ungentis delibutos candidis vestibus quasi modo
drew-out and with-ointments anointed in-white garments as-if just-now
 regeneratos induit. Cum autem sol appropinquaret occasui,
reborn he-clothed when moreover the-sun was-approaching its-setting
 et nullus iam maneret qui talibus indigeret obsequiis,
and no-one now remained who such needed services
 intravit ipse in balneum; et exiens, mundata conscientia,
entered he-himself into the-bath and going-out cleansed in-conscience
 mundissimis opertus est lineis, ut iudicio sanctorum
in-most-clean covered was linens that by-the-judgment of-the-holy
 episcoporum solemnia populo celebraret. Cumque iam
bishops the-solemnities for-the-people he-might-celebrate and-when already

ad aecclesiam procederet, callidus adversarius — propositum
to the-church he-was-proceeding the-crafty adversary the-purpose
 illius violare cupiens, quasi contra votum suum aliquem
of-him to-violate wishing as-if against vow his-own some
 pauperem non lotum episcopus dimitteret — assumpta
poor-man not washed the-bishop had-dismissed taken
 specie foedissimi luridissimique leprosi, sanie fluvidi,
the-appearance of-a-most-foul and-most-sallow leper with-pus flowing
 tabo pannis rigentibus amicti, gressu tremente nutabundi,
with-gore in-rags stiff clothed with-step trembling tottering
 nimia raucedine miserandi, ante limen aecclesiae se
with-excessive hoarseness pitiable before the-threshold of-the-church himself
 illi obvium tulit. Tunc sanctus antistes, instinctu
to-him to-meet brought then the-holy bishop at-the-prompting
 divino regressus, ut cognosceret, quali nuper inimico
divine having-returned that he-might-know to-what-sort-of lately enemy
 succumberet, extractis albis, aquam sine mora calefieri
he-was-submitting drawn-off the-white-vestments water without delay to-be-beated
 et ipsum misellum in ipsam fecit imponi. Assumptaque
and the-very wretch into it he-caused to-be-placed and-taken
 novacula, turpissimum collum eius coepit radere. Cumque
a-razor the-most-foul neck of-him he-began to-shave and-when
 ab una aure usque ad medias derasisset arterias, coepit
from one ear all-the-way to the-middle he-bad-shaved-off of-the-arteries he-began
 ab alia, ut ad eundem locum rasuram perduceret. Illuc
from the-other that to the-same place the-shaving he-might-bring there
 autem rasorio perveniens, setas longiores quam absciderat,
moreover with-the-razor arriving bristles longer than he-bad-cut-off
 mira dictu, renatas invenit. Et cum hoc sepe fieret, et
wonderful to-say grown-again he-found and when this often happened and
 ille radere non cessaret, ecce inter manus radentis episcopi
he to-shave not ceased behold between the-hands of-the-shaving bishop

— horresco referens — oculus mirae magnitudinis in
I-shudder relating an-eye of-wonderful size in
 arteriarum medio coepit apparere. Tunc ille pavefactus
of-the-arteries the-middle began to-appear then he terrified
 a tali monstro prosiluit et se in Christi nomine
from such a-monster leaped-back and himself in Christ's name
 cum ingenti clamore consignavit. Ante cuius invocationem
with huge shouting signed before whose invocation
 fraudulentus hostis, ultra fallaciam suam abscondere non
the-deceitful enemy further deception his-own to-hide not
 valens, ceu fumus evanuit; et abscedens dixit: Iste oculus
able like smoke vanished and departing said this eye
 vigilanter intendit, quando tu carnem in ieiunio comedisti.
watchfully attended when you flesh in the-fast ate

XXII • THE FALLEN BISHOP

Another holy bishop lets young nuns lodge with him for study. After the Easter vigil, warmed by Alsatian wine, he defiles a beautiful woman. Next morning he freezes at the altar, lays down his vestments, and confesses to the people, weeping. The people insist that he alone celebrate the feast, and after almost three hours God gives him back the courage to celebrate.

In eadem quoque regione fuit alius episcopus incomparabilis
in the-same also region there-was another bishop of-incomparable
 sanctitatis. Qui incauta securitate, iam quasi ignarus
holiness who with-incautious security now as-if ignorant
 feminei sexus, sanctimoniales iuenculas non minus quam
of-the-female sex nuns young no less than
 grandevos sacerdotes discendi gratia diversari permisit
aged priests of-learning for-the-sake to-lodge allowed

secum. Cum autem in ipsa festivitate paschali post
with-himself when moreover on the-very festival Easter after
 officium divinum, quod super mediam noctem protraxit,
the-office divine which beyond the-middle of-night he-prolonged
 Alasatiensi illo Sigultario se licentius indulisset, et simul
with-Alsatian that Sigolsheimer himself too-freely had-indulged and together
 cum illo fortiori Falerno cuiusdam venustissimae feminae
with that stronger Falernian of-a-certain most-beautiful woman
 vultus et meretricios gestus heu nimis enerviter in se
the-face and barlot's gestures alas too weakly into himself
 pertraxisset, recedentibus caeteris, illam ad lectum suum
had-drawn withdrawing the-others her to bed his-own
 vocatam lugubriter stupravit. Mane vero rutilante, citus
called mournfully he-defiled morning but reddening quickly
 exurgens et iuxta gentiles noctem flumine purgans, ante
rising and according-to the-beathen the-night in-the-river cleansing before
 inevitabiles verae deitatis oculos maculata conscientia processit.
the-inescapable of-true deity eyes with-stained conscience he-went-forth
 Cumque, praemissis melodiis, ipse iuxta ministerium
and-when the-preceding melodies he-himself according-to office
 suum imponere debuisset ymnum angelicum, pavefactus
bis-own to-begin had-been-due the-hymn angelic terrified
 obstupuit; et sacri ministerii vestes super altare
he-was-struck-dumb and of-the-sacred office the-vestments upon the-altar
 posuit atque, ad populum conversus, reatum suum confessus
placed and to the-people turned guilt his-own confessed
 est. Deinde corruens ad crepidinem altaris, inaestimabilibus
has then falling at the-step of-the-altar with-inestimable
 ablutus est lacrimarum fluentis. Populo vero instante, ut
bathed he-was of-tears streams the-people but pressing that
 exurgeret, et se terribilibus sacramentis astringente, quod
he-should-rise and themselves by-terrible oaths binding that

illa praecipua die non sibi ab alio aliquo quam ab
on-that special day not for-themselves by another anyone than by
 ipso pastore sacra missarum celebrari paterentur, et
the-very shepherd the-sacred-rites of-the-masses to-be-celebrated they-would-allow and
 ille loco moveri non posset, atque haec concertatio
he from-the-place to-be-moved not could and this contest
 per trium fere horarum spacia transiret; tandem clementia
through of-three almost hours the-space passed at-last the-clemency
 Conditoris, et vota devoti populi et contritum cor
of-the-Creator both the-prayers of-the-devout people and the-contrite heart
 episcopi miserata, sic in pavimento iacentem revestivit et,
of-the-bishop having-pitied thus on the-pavement lying reclined and
 de sua certioratum indulgentia, ad contrectanda coelestia
of his-own assured pardon to handling the-heavenly
 et metuenda misteria — in exemplum verae poenitentiae
and to-be-feared mysteries as an-example of-true penitence
 vel cautelam nusquam et nunquam in hoc seculo tutae sed
or a-warning nowhere and never in this world safe but
 semper et ubique vanae securitatis — misericorditer animavit.
always and everywhere vain of-security mercifully emboldened

In a famine a miserly bishop sells his grain dear. A hobgoblin who plays with a smith's hammers by night promises the smith a full cup every day, and steals wine from the bishop's cellar. The bishop seals the cellar with holy water and the cross, and the goblin, caught there in human form, is beaten as a thief. The tale shows how much God's name avails.

In Francia quoque quae antiqua dicitur fuit alius
in Francia also which old is-called there-was another
 episcopus supra modum tenacitate constrictus. Cum autem
bishop beyond measure by-stinginess bound when moreover
 sterilitas omnium terrae proventuum quodam anno insolito
a-barrenness of-all of-the-earth produce in-a-certain year unusual
 orbem depopularetur universum, tunc avarus ille negotiator,
the-world was-ravaging whole then greedy that trader
 omnium mortalium immo iam morientium ultima necessitate
of-all mortals nay already dying in-the-last necessity
 gavisus, repositoria sua praecepit aperire, nimium care
having-rejoiced storehouses his-own he-commanded to-open too dearly
 venundanda. Tunc demon qui dicitur larva, cui curae est
to-be-sold then the-demon who is-called larva to-whom for-care it-is
 ludicris hominum vel illusionibus vacare, fecit consuetudinem
to-the-sports of-men or to-the-illusions to-attend made a-custom
 ad cuiusdam fabri ferrarii domum venire et per noctes
to of-a-certain smith iron-working the-house to-come and through the-nights
 malleis et incudibus ludere. Cumque pater ille familias
with-hammers and anvils to-play and-when father that of-the-household
 signo salutiferae crucis se suaque munire conaretur,
by-the-sign of-the-saving cross himself and-bis-own to-protect tried
 respondit pilosus: Mi compater, si non vetaveris me in
answered the-hairy-one my gossip if not you-shall-forbid me in

officina tua ioculari, appone hic poticulam tuam; et cottidie
workshop your to-play put here little-cup your and daily
 plenam invenies illam. Tunc miser ille, plus penuriam
full you-will-find it then wretched that-one more want
 metuens corporalem quam aeternam animae perditionem,
fearing bodily than eternal of-the-soul perdition
 fecit iuxta suasionem adversarii. Qui, assumpto pergrandi
did according-to the-persuasion of-the-adversary who taken a-very-large
 flascone, cellarium Bromii vel Ditis illius sepius irrumpens,
flask the-cellar of-Bromius or of-Dis that often breaking-into
 rapina perpetrata, reliqua in pavementum fluere permisit.
the-robbery perpetrated the-rest onto the-pavement to-flow allowed
 Cumque iam tali modo plurimae cuppe exinanitae fuissent,
and-when already in-such way very-many casks emptied had-been
 animadvertens episcopus, quoniam daemonum fraude tanta
noticing the-bishop that of-demons by-the-fraud so-much
 perissent, benedicta aqua cellam aspersit et invictae
had-perished with-blessed water the-cellar sprinkled and of-the-unconquered
 crucis signaculo tutavit. Nocte autem facta, iterum larva cum
cross by-the-sign protected night moreover come again the-larva with
 flascone venit, et cum vinaria vasa propter impressionem
the-flask came and when the-wine vessels on-account-of the-impression
 sanctae crucis non auderet attingere neque ei liceret
of-the-holy cross not he-dared to-touch nor to-him was-it-permitted
 exire, in humana specie repertus et a custode domus
to-go-out in human appearance found and by the-keeper of-the-house
 alligatus, pro fure ad publicum ductus et ad palam cesus,
bound for a-thief to the-public led and in open beaten
 inter cedendum hoc solum proclamavit: Ve mihi, quia
amid being-beaten this only he-cried-out woe to-me because
 poticulam compatris mei perdidit! Hoc, licet historia sit
the-little-cup of-gossip my I-have-lost this although a-story it-be

verum, iccirco protulerim, ut sciatur: cui proveniant
true for-this-reason I-have-brought-forward that it-be-known to-whom come
 abiurata et in diebus necessitatis abstrusa; et quantum valeat
things-forsworn and in days of-necessity hidden and how-much avails
 divini nominis invocatio, etiam per non bonos adhibita.
of-the-divine name the-invocation even by not good-men applied

XXIV · THE DEVIL AS A MULE

In Italy the devil offers a poor, greedy man riches: he will become a splendid mule for the man to sell dear to a bishop who loves fine things. The bishop pays a fortune, rides the mule proudly through the city at midday, and takes it to the river to cool. The mule plunges into a whirlpool with him, and fishermen barely pull him out.

Dum autem oculos ad Francorum caput intendo eiusque
while moreover the-eyes to of-the-Franks the-head I-direct and-its
 membra perlustro, reliquarum gentium summos et infimos
limbs I-survey of-the-remaining peoples the-highest and lowest
 post tergum reliqui. Sed iam ad vicinos nostros Italos, una
behind the-back I-have-left but now to neighbors our the-Italians by-one
 tantummodo macheria divisos, veniendum est. Erat ibi
only wall divided to-be-come it-is there-was there
 quidam episcopus, inanium rerum valde cupidissimus. Quod
a-certain bishop of-empty things very most-desirous which
 diabolus advertens cuidam pauperculo avaritia tamen habundo
the-devil noticing to-a-certain poor-little-man in-avarice yet abounding
 in humana se obvium tulit specie, pollicitus: non
in human himself to-meet brought form having-promised not
 mediocriter illum esse ditandum, si societatis vinculo in
moderately him to-be to-be-enriched if by-the-bond of-partnership for
 perpetuum sibi delegisset adnecti. Quod cum miser
ever to-himself he-should-have-chosen to-be-bound which when the-wretch

profiteri non abnueret, dixit hostis callidus: Converto me in
to-profess not refused said the-enemy crafty I-turn myself into
 mulum praestantissimum; tu vero ascende super me, et perge
a-mule most-excellent you but mount upon me and go
 ad curtim episcopi. Cum autem ille ad mulum illum emendum
to the-court of-the-bishop when moreover he for mule that to-be-bought
 ceperit inhiare, tu rem protrahe, differ, abnue, precium
shall-have-begun to-gape you the-matter drag-out delay refuse the-price
 exaggera, indignationemque simulans, recedere para. Tum
exaggerate and-indignation feigning to-withdraw prepare then
 necesse est, ut ille mittat post te et plurima promittat.
necessary it-is that he send after you and very-much promise
 Tandem, precibus exoratus et infinita pecunia cumulatus,
at-last by-prayers prevailed-upon and with-boundless money heaped
 quasi non libenter et coacte mulum illi trade; et
as-if not willingly and under-compulsion the-mule to-him hand-over and
 concitus aufugiens latibulum quacumque require. Quod cum
swiftly fleeing a-hiding-place wherever seek which when
 factum fuisset, et episcopus, usque ad sequentem diem
done had-been and the-bishop all-the-way to the-following day
 expectare non sustinens, in ipso fervore meridiano sonipedem
to-wait not enduring in the-very heat of-midday the-steed
 ascendens, per urbem superbiens equitaret, in campum
mounting through the-city proudly was-riding into the-field
 volitaturus exibat, ad fluvium refrigerandi gratia properabat.
about-to-fly went-out to the-river of-cooling for-the-sake was-hastening
 In cuius favorem omnis sequebatur aetas, ambulationem
in whose favor every was-following age the-gait
 volubilissimam, cursum rapidissimum, natatumque delfinis
most-nimble the-run most-swift and-the-swimming to-dolphins
 simillimum cernere gestiens. Et ecce antiquus ille Belial, velut
most-like to-see eager and behold the-ancient that Belial as-if

chami frenique inpatiens, et verae gehennae ignibus
of-the-muzzle and-of-the-bridle impatient and of-true Gehenna with-the-fires
 aestuans, in profundum gurgitis sese demergere et
burning into the-depth of-the-whirlpool himself to-plunge and
 secum episcopum trahere coepit; ita ut vix militari manu
with-himself the-bishop to-drag began so that scarcely by-soldierly hand
 et industria piscatorum, qui prope navigabant, extraheretur.
and by-the-diligence of-fishermen who nearby were-sailing he-was-drawn-out

XXV · THE PRIEST AND THE COLD SPRING

A priest is accused of fornication, and when the rumor reaches Charles, he sends two palace men to make the priest say mass for them at dawn. Having sinned that very night, and fearing men more than God, the priest bathes in an ice-cold spring to cleanse himself before the sacrament. He is seized by such a chill and fever that no physician can help him, and he dies by the judgment of God.

Insidiarum etenim peritus adversarius, in via qua
of-snares for skilled the-adversary in the-way in-which
 ambulamus laqueos nobis abscondere solitus, alium quidem
we-walk traps for-us to-bide accustomed one indeed
 hoc alium vero alio vicio subplantare non desistit. Cuiusdam
by-this another but by-another vice to-trip not ceases of-a-certain
 episcopi sacerdoti — nomen in tali re suppressendum
bishop to-the-priest the-name in such a-matter to-be-suppressed
 est — fornicationis crimen imponebatur. Cumque hoc iam
is of-fornication the-charge was-imputed and-when this already
 ita in noticiam populorum devenisset, ut a referentibus
so into the-knowledge of-the-peoples had-come that by those-reporting
 etiam episcoporum episcopo, religiosissimo Karolo, notissimum
even of-bishops to-the-bishop the-most-religious Charles very-well-known

fieret et ille sapientissimus, aliquandiu rem dissimulans,

it-became and he most-wise for-some-time the-matter dissembling

frivolis verbis fidem accommodare noluisset, sed

to-frivolous words belief to-lend had-been-unwilling but

Fama malum, quo non velocius ullum

rumor an-evil than-which not swifter any

Mobilitate viget,

by-motion thrives

de minima meisa super aquilarum magnitudinem excresceret,

from the-smallest gnat beyond of-eagles the-size grew

ut nequaquam iam celari potuisset, districtissimus

so-that by-no-means now to-be-hidden it-could the-strictest

iusticiae inquisitor Karolus misit duos de palatinis; qui, ad

of-justice inquirer Charles sent two of the-palace-men who to

proximum civitati locum vespere divertentes, mane primo

the-nearest to-the-city place at-evening turning-aside at-morning first

ad sacerdotem inopinato venirent et ipsum sibi missam

to the-priest unexpectedly should-come and him for-themselves the-mass

celebrare postularent; et si nimis abnueret, illi ex suo nomine

to-celebrate should-ask and if too-much he-refused they from his name

constringerent eum, quatinus per se ipsum sacrosancta

should-compel him so-that through himself self the-sacrosanct

mysteria celebraret. Qui nesciens quid ageret, quoniam et

mysteries he-should-celebrate who not-knowing what he-should-do since both

ante superni spectatoris oculos ipsa nocte peccasset et

before of-the-heavenly beholder the-eyes on-that-very night he-had-sinned and

illos offendere non auderet, plus tamen homines quam Deum

them to-offend not he-dared more yet men than God

metuens, frigidissimo fonte estuantia membra baptizans, ad

fearing in-a-very-cold spring the-burning limbs baptizing for

afferenda terribilia sacramenta processit. Et ecce, vel conscientia
bringing the-terrible sacraments went-forward and behold either the-conscience
 cor quatiente vel aqua venas penetrante, tanto frigore
the-heart shaking or the-water the-veins penetrating by-such cold
 correptus est, ut nullo medicorum adminiculo posset adiuvari,
seized he-was that by-no of-physicians help he-could to-be-helped
 sed immanissima febrium valitudine perductus ad mortem,
but by-the-most-monstrous of-fevers sickness brought to death
 districti et aeterni iudicis decreto animam reddere cogeretur.
of-the-strict and eternal judge by-the-decree the-soul to-give-back he-was-compelled

XXVI · POPE LEO AND THE IMPERIAL TITLE

Some Romans try to blind Pope Leo but only slash his eyes. Refused help by Constantinople, Leo summons Charles. Leo clears himself by oath on the Gospel; the conspirators, made to swear at Saint Pancras's tomb, stiffen or go mad, and Charles punishes them. Then the pope proclaims Charles emperor, and he accepts unwillingly, fearing Greek envy. God restores Leo's eyes, leaving only a fine scar.

Sed caeteris mortalibus his et huiusmodi fraudibus a
but the-other mortals by-these and of-this-kind frauds by
 diabolo vel satellitibus eius illusis, libet intueri sententiam
the-devil or the-attendants of-him deceived it-pleases to-consider the-sentence
 Domini, qua firmissimam sancti Petri confessionem
of-the-Lord by-which the-most-firm of-saint Peter confession
 remunerans ait: Quia tu es Petrus, et super hanc
rewarding he-says that you are Peter and upon this
 petram aedificabo ecclesiam meam, et portae inferi non
rock I-will-build church my and the-gates of-hell not
 praevallebunt adversus eam. Quam videlicet ecclesiam in his
shall-prevail against it which namely church in these

etiam periculosissimis et nequissimis diebus inconcussam
even most-dangerous and most-wicked days unshaken
 immobilemque dedit permanere. Nam ut inter emulos semper
and-immovable he-granted to-remain for as among rivals always
 bachatur invidia, sollemne Romanis et consuetudinarium
rages envy customary for-the-Romans and habitual
 fuit, ut omnes papatibus alicuius momenti ad sedem
it-was that all to-popes of-any importance to the-see
 apostolicam per tempora subrogatis iugiter essent
apostolic through the-times appointed continually they-should-be
 infensi vel potius infesti. Unde contigit, ut quidam illorum,
hostile or rather dangerous whence it-happened that certain-ones of-them
 invidia cecati, sanctae recordationis Leoni papae, cuius supra
by-envy blinded of-holy memory to-Leo the-pope of-whom above
 mentionem fecimus, mortiferum crimen imponentes, eum
mention we-made a-deadly crime imputing him
 cecare fuissent aggressi. Sed divino nutu conterriti sunt et
to-blind had attempted but by-divine nod terrified they-were and
 retracti, ut nequaquam oculos eius eruerent, sed rasoriis
drawn-back so-that by-no-means the-eyes of-him they-tore-out but with-razors
 per medios inciderent. Quod cum clanculo per familiares
through the-middle they-cut which when secretly through intimates
 suos Michahelo imperatori Constantinopoleos indicari
his-own to-Michael the-emperor of-Constantinople to-be-made-known
 fecisset, et omne ille auxilium abnueret dicens: Ille papa
he-had-caused and all he help refused saying that pope
 regnum habet per se, et nostro praestantius; ipse per
a-kingdom has by himself and than-ours more-excellent he-himself through
 se se vindicet de adversariis suis, tunc sanctus ille
himself himself let-him-avenge on adversaries his-own then holy that-man
 — divinam constitutionem secutus: ut, qui iam re
the-divine dispensation having-followed that he-who already in-fact

ipsa rector et imperator plurimarum erat nationum, nomen
itself the-ruler and emperor of-very-many was nations the-name
 quoque imperatoris caesaris et augusti apostolica auctoritate
also of-emperor of-caesar and of-augustus by-apostolic authority
 gloriosus assequeretur — invictum Karolum Romam venire
glorious might-attain the-unconquered Charles to-Rome to-come
 postulavit. Qui, ut semper in expeditione et praecinctu
asked who as always on campaign and in-girded-readiness
 bellico erat, statim cum apparitoribus et scola tyronum,
warlike he-was at-once with attendants and the-school of-recruits
 causae vocationis suae penitus ignarus, ipse caput
of-the-cause of-summons his-own utterly ignorant he-himself the-head
 orbis ad quondam caput orbis absque mora perrexerit.
of-the-world to the-former head of-the-world without delay proceeded
 Cumque perditissimi populi inopinatum illius comperissent
and-when the-most-abandoned people the-unexpected his had-learned
 adventum, quasi passeret a conspectu domini sui
arrival as-if sparrows from the-sight of-the-lord their-own
 cognomine nuncupati solent celari, ita per diversa latibula
by-surname named are-went to-hide so through various hiding-places
 criptas et profugia sunt abstrusi. Sed cum industriam
crypts and refuges they-were thrust-away but when the-diligence
 eius et sagacitatem sub coelo non possent evitare, ad
of-him and shrewdness under heaven not could to-escape to
 basilicam sancti Petri capti et catenati sunt perducti. Illic
the-basilica of-saint Peter captured and chained they-were brought there
 intemeratus pater Leo, assumens euangelium domini nostri
the-inviolate father Leo taking the-gospel of-the-Lord our
 Iesu Christi posuit super caput suum et in conspectu Karoli
Jesus Christ placed upon head his-own and in the-sight of-Charles
 eiusque militum, assistentibus quoque persecutoribus suis,
and-of-his soldiers standing-by also the-persecutors his-own

in haec verba iuravit: Sic in die magni iudicii sim
in these words swore so in the-day of-the-great judgment may-I-be
 particeps euangelii, sicut immunis sum criminis, falso mihi ab
a-sharer of-the-gospel as innocent I-am of-the-crime falsely to-me by
 istis obiecti. Erant autem plurimi inter vinctos, qui, se
these charged there-were moreover very-many among the-bound who themselves
 immunes huius criminis esse, in lecto sancti Petri se
innocent of-this crime to-be on the-tomb of-saint Peter themselves
 iurare rogabant permitti. Sed papa, levitatem illorum non
to-swear asked to-be-permitted but the-pope the-levity of-them not
 ignorans, Karolo dixit: Ne, queso, invicte Dei, eorum
ignorant-of to-Charles said do-not I-beg unconquered-one of-God of-them
 assenseris calliditati; ipsi enim sanctum Petrum ad veniam
assent to-the-cunning they for saint Peter to pardon
 sciunt maxime flexibilem. Queratur ergo inter tumulos
know most flexible let-there-be-sought therefore among the-tombs
 martyrum titulus, cui trecennis puer inscriptus sit
of-the-martyrs the-inscription on-which as-a-thirteen-year-old boy inscribed is
 Pancrati; in eo enim si tibi iuraverint, securos habeto.
Pancras on it for if to-you they-shall-have-sworn secure have-them
 Factum est autem, ut papa voluerat. Plurimo autem populo
done it-was moreover as the-pope had-wished very-many moreover people
 fiducialiter accedente, quidam ipsorum supini riguerant,
confidently approaching certain-ones of-them on-their-backs stiffened
 quidam satana arrepti insaniebant. Mox terribilis Karolus
certain-ones by-Satan seized went-mad soon the-terrible Charles
 dixit ad suos: Cavete, ne quisquam de illis evadat. Omnes
said to his-men beware lest anyone of them escape all
 itaque comprehensos vel diversis mortibus vel inremeabilibus
and-so seized either to-various deaths or to-irrevocable
 dampnavit exiliis. Cum autem ibidem aliquot diebus reparandi
be-condemned exiles when moreover there for-some days of-refitting

exercitus gratia moraretur, convocavit antistes apostolicus
the-army for-the-sake he-was-staying summoned the-bishop apostolic
 de vicinis partibus, quoscumque potuit, et coram
from the-neighboring parts whomever he-could and before
 positis illis et invictis Karoli gloriosissimi comitibus,
placed them and the-unconquered of-Charles the-most-glorious companions
 nichil minus suspicantem ipsum pronunciavit imperatorem
nothing less suspecting him he-proclaimed emperor
 defensoremque ecclesiae Romanae. Quod cum ille non
and-defender of-the-church Roman which since he not
 potuisset abnuere, quia divinitus sic praedestinatum crederet,
could to-refuse because divinely so predestined he-believed
 non tamen gratanter suscepit; pro eo quod putaret: Grecos,
not yet gladly he-accepted for that that he-thought the-Greeks
 maiore succensus invidia, aliquid incommodi regno
by-greater inflamed envy something of-harm against-the-kingdom
 Francorum machinatu-; immo potiori cautela provisuros,
of-the-Franks about-to-contrive nay with-stronger caution about-to-provide
 ne, sicut tunc fama ferebat, Karolus insperato veniens
lest as then rumor carried Charles unexpectedly coming
 regnum illorum suo subiugaret imperio; et maxime,
the-kingdom of-them to-his-own should-subjugate empire and chiefly
 quia pridem magnanimus Karolus, cum legati regis
because formerly the-great-souled Charles when the-envoys of-the-king
 Bizantini venirent ad se et de domino suo illi
of-Byzantium came to himself and about lord their-own to-him
 suggererent, quia fidelis ipsi amicus esse voluisset et, si
suggested that faithful to-him a-friend to-be he-wished and if
 viciniores essent, eum filii loco nutrire et paupertatem
nearer they-were him of-a-son in-the-place to-bring-up and the-poverty
 illius relevare decrevisset, ferventissimo igne se intra pectus
of-him to-relieve he-had-decided the-most-burning fire itself within the-breast

retinere non queunte, in haec verba prorupit: O utinam non
to-hold not being-able in these words burst-out O would-that not
 esset ille gurgitulus inter nos; forsitan divitias orientales aut
were that little-whirlpool between us perhaps the-riches eastern either
 partiremur aut pariter participando communiter haberemus.
we-would-divide or equally sharing in-common we-would-have
 Quod ignari paupertatis Africanæ solent de Afrorum
which those-ignorant of-the-poverty African are-wont of the-Africans'
 rege narrare. Innocentiam vero beati Leonis papæ ita
king to-tell the-innocence but of-blessed Leo the-pope so
 donator et restitutor sanitatis approbavit Dominus, ut
the-giver and restorer of-health approved the-Lord that
 post illam poenalem et crudelissimam incisionem clariores
after that penal and most-cruel cutting brighter
 quam ante fuerint ei donaverit oculos; excepto, quod
than before they-had-been to-him he-gave eyes except that
 in signum virtutis illius pulcherrima cicatrix in modum
as a-sign of-the-virtue of-him a-most-beautiful scar in the-manner
 fili tenuissimi turturinas acies niveo candore decorabat.
of-a-thread most-fine the-dove-like eyes with-snowy whiteness adorned

Lest the unlearned doubt that a sea separated the Franks from the Greeks, the Monk explains that the Huns, the Bulgars, and other peoples then blocked the land route, until Charles leveled the Slavs and Bulgars and destroyed the Huns. Before telling of those wars, he will say a little about the buildings Charles raised at Aachen, after Solomon's example, for God, himself, and his guests.

Ne vero ab imperitis arguar imperitiae, quia mare, quod
lest but by the-unskilled I-be-accused of-unskill because the-sea which
 nomine gurgituli maximus appellavit imperator, inter nos
by-the-name of-little-whirlpool the-greatest called emperor between us
 et Grecos ex eius ore situm retulerim, noverint qui
and the-Greeks from his mouth situated I-have-reported let-them-know who
 volunt: adhuc Hunos et Bulgares et plures alias immanissimas
wish still the-Huns and the-Bulgars and several other most-monstrous
 gentes intactas et integras iter ad Greciam terrestre negare.
peoples untouched and unimpaired the-route to Greece by-land to-deny
 Quas tamen postea bellicosissimus Karolus vel terrae
which yet afterward the-most-warlike Charles either to-the-ground
 coaequavit, ut omne Sclavorum genus et Bulgarum, vel
leveled as all of-the-Slavs the-race and of-the-Bulgars or
 penitus eradicavit, ut ferreorum adamantinorumve progeniem
utterly uprooted as of-the-iron or-adamantine the-offspring
 et nomen Hunorum. De quibus mox docebo, si prius
and name of-the-Huns about whom soon I-will-teach if first
 de edificiis, quae cesar augustus imperator Karolus apud
about the-buildings which caesar augustus emperor Charles at
 Aquasgrani iuxta sapientissimi Salemonis exemplum Deo
Aachen according-to of-the-most-wise Solomon the-example for-God
 vel sibi vel omnibus episcopis abbatibus comitibus et
or for-himself or for-all bishops abbots counts and

cunctis de toto orbe venientibus hospitibus mirifice
 all from the-whole world coming guests wonderfully
 construxit, iuxta pauca satis et minima commemorem.
 built according-to a-few-things enough and very-small I-recall

XXVIII · THE ABBOT AND THE BASILICA

Charles builds on his native soil a basilica finer than the works of the Romans, with craftsmen from every land. The abbot he sets over the work takes bribes and drives the workers as the Egyptians drove the Israelites, amassing treasure. When his house catches fire, he rushes in for his chests, and a burning beam falls on him. So divine judgment keeps watch for Charles.

Cum strennuissimus imperator Karolus aliquam requiem habere
 when the-most-vigorous emperor Charles some rest to-have
 potuit, non ocio torpere sed divinis servitiis voluit
 could not in-idleness to-be-sluggish but over-divine services he-wished
 insudare; adeo ut, in genitali solo basilicam, antiquis
 to-sweat so that on native soil a-basilica than-the-ancient
 Romanorum operibus praestantiolem, fabricare propria
 of-the-Romans works more-excellent to-build by-his-own
 dispositione molitus, in brevi se compotem voti sui
 arrangement having-undertaken in short-time himself possessed of-wish his-own
 gauderet. Ad cuius fabricam de omnibus cismarinis regionibus
 he-rejoiced for whose building from all cismarine regions
 magistros et opifices omnium id genus artium advocavit.
 masters and workmen of-all that kind of-arts he-summoned
 Super quos quendam abbatem cunctorum peritissimum ad
 over whom a-certain abbot of-all most-skilled for
 executionem operis, ignarus eius fraudium, constituit. Qui,
 the-carrying-out of-the-work ignorant of-bis frauds he-appointed who

mox ut augustus quoquam secessit, precio accepto, quos volebat
as-soon as the-augustus somewhere withdrew a-price received whom he-wished
 ad propria remisit. Qui vero se redimere nequiverunt vel
to their-own sent-back who but themselves to-buy-off could-not or
 a dominis suis absoluti non sunt, sicut quondam Egyptii
by lords their-own released not were as once the-Egyptians
 populum Dei iniquis operibus afflixerunt, ita immensis
the-people of-God with-wicked works afflicted so with-immense
 laboribus oppressit, ut nunquam eos aliquantulum requiescere
labors he-oppressed that never them a-little to-rest
 pateretur. De tali igitur fraudulentia cum infinitum pondus
he-allowed from such therefore fraud when a-boundless weight
 auri vel argenti sericorumque palliorum congregasset et,
of-gold or of-silver and-of-silk cloaks he-had-gathered and
 viliora queque suspendens in camera, preciosiora queque
the-cheaper every-thing hanging in the-chamber the-more-precious every-thing
 in archis vel in scriniis absconsa concluderet, ecce repente
in chests or in coffer bidden he-shut-up behold suddenly
 domus eius inflammata a referentibus est illi nunciata.
the-house of-him set-on-fire by those-reporting was to-him announced
 Qui, concitus accurrens et per medios flammarum globos
who swiftly running-up and through the-middle of-the-flames balls
 in conclave, quo scrinia auro plena servabantur, irrumpens
into the-room where the-coffers with-gold full were-kept bursting-in
 et cum uno tantum exire nolens, singula singulis humeris
and with one only to-go-out unwilling one on-each shoulder
 imposuit et exire cepit. Inter ea trabes una pergrandis
placed and to-go-out began among these a-beam one very-large
 ignibus evicta cecidit super eum, et corpus quidem materiali
by-the-fires overcome fell upon him and the-body indeed with-material
 combussit incendio, anima vero ad inextinguibilem transiit
burned fire the-soul but to the-inextinguishable passed

ignem. Ita divinum iudicium pro religiosissimo Karolo vigilavit,
fire so the-divine judgment for the-most-religious Charles kept-watch
 ubi ipse, regni negotiis occupatus, minus intendit.
where he-himself of-the-kingdom with-the-affairs occupied less attended

XXIX · THE BELLFOUNDER

A master bronze-worker offers to cast Charles a bell far better than Tancho's, if given copper and a hundred pounds of silver instead of tin. He keeps the silver, uses tin, and presents the bell. When no one can make it ring, he pulls the rope himself, and the clapper falls on his head and kills him. Charles has the silver distributed among the poor of the palace.

Erat ibidem alius opifex, in omni opere aeris et
there-was in-the-same-place another craftsman in every work of-bronze and
 vitri cunctis excellentior. Cumque Tancho, quondam monachus
of-glass than-all more-excellent and-when Tancho once monk
 Sancti Galli, campanum optimum conflaret et eius sonitum
of-Saint Gall a-bell excellent was-casting and its sound
 imperator non mediocriter miraretur, dixit ille praestantissimus
the-emperor not moderately admired said that most-outstanding
 sed infelicissimus in aere magister: Domne imperator, iube
but most-unhappy in bronze master lord emperor order
 mihi cuprum multum afferri, ut excoquam illud ad purum;
to-me copper much to-be-brought that I-may-refine it to pure
 et in vice stagni fac mihi, quantum opus est, de argento
and in place of-tin cause to-me as-much-as need is of silver
 dari saltem centum libras; et fundo tibi tale campanum,
to-be-given at-least a-hundred pounds and I-cast for-you such a-bell
 ut istud in eius comparatione sit mutum. Tunc liberalissimus
that that-one in its comparison be dumb then the-most-generous

regum Karolus — cui licet affluerent diviciae, cor tamen
of-kings Charles who though abounded riches the-heart yet
 non apposuit — facile iussit omnia quae petebat exhibere.
not set easily ordered all-things which he-asked to-furnish
 Quae miser ille assumens laetus exit. Et aes quidem
which wretch that taking glad went-out and the-bronze indeed
 conflans et emundans, in locum argenti vero purgatissimum
melting and cleansing in place of-silver but most-purified
 stagnum subiciens, multo melius approbato illo de
tin substituting much better than-the-approved that-one from
 adulterato metallo campanum in brevi tempore perfecit,
the-adulterated metal a-bell in short time he-completed
 probatissimumque cesari praesentavit. Quod ille propter
and-most-tested to-the-caesar presented which he on-account-of
 incomparabilem conformationem satis admiratus, immisso
the-incomparable shape quite having-admired put-in
 pulsatorio ferro, iussit in campanario suspendi. Quod cum
the-striking iron ordered in the-bell-tower to-be-hung which when
 sine mora factum fuisset, et custos aecclisiae vel reliqui
without delay done had-been and the-keeper of-the-church or the-other
 capellani nec non et erronei tyrones, alii aliis succedentes,
chaplains nor not also the-wandering recruits some to-others succeeding
 illud ad sonitum perducere niterentur et nichil efficere
it to sound to-bring strove and nothing to-accomplish
 potuissent, tandem indignatus auctor operis et commentor
had-been-able at-last indignant the-author of-the-work and contriver
 inauditae fraudis apprehenso fune attraxit aeramentum.
of-an-unheard-of fraud seized the-rope pulled the-bronze
 Et ecce ferrum de medio lapsum in verticem ipsius
and behold the-iron from the-middle slipped onto the-crown of-him
 cum iniquitate sua descendit et, per cadaver iam iamque
with iniquity his-own came-down and through the-corpse now and-now

defunctum transiens, ad terram cum intestinis et virilibus
having-died passing to the-ground with the-entrails and the-genitals
 venit. Memoratum autem pondus argenti repertum praecepit
came the-mentioned moreover weight of-silver found commanded
 iustissimus Karolus inter indigentes palatinos distribui.
the-most-just Charles among the-needy palace-men to-be-distributed

XXX · PUBLIC WORKS

Lesser works such as bridges and roads fall to the counts' deputies, but great new works are the duty of every bishop, duke, count, and abbot, as the bridge at Mainz was built by all Europe. At Aachen the houses stand around the palace so that Charles sees from his gallery all who come and go; the nobles' houses are raised to shelter all.

Fuit consuetudo in illis temporibus, ut, ubicumque aliquod
there-was a-custom in those times that wherever some
 opus ex imperiali praecepto faciendum esset — siquidem
work from imperial command to-be-done was indeed
 pontes vel naves aut traiecti sive purgatio seu stramentum vel
bridges or ships or ferries or the-cleaning or the-paving or
 impletio coenosorum itinerum — ea comites per vicarios
the-filling of-muddy roads these the-counts through deputies
 et officiales suos exequerentur, in minoribus dumtaxat
and officials their-own carried-out in lesser only
 laboribus; a maioribus autem, et maxime noviter exstruendis,
labors from greater moreover and chiefly newly to-be-built
 nullus ducum vel comitum, nullus episcoporum vel abbatum
no-one of-the-dukes or of-the-counts no-one of-the-bishops or of-the-abbots
 excusaretur aliquo modo. Cuius rei testes adhuc sunt arcae
was-excused in-any way of-which thing witnesses still are the-piers

pontis Magontiacensis; quem tota Europa communi quidem
of-the-bridge of-Mainz which all Europe by-common indeed
 sed ordinatissimae participationis opere perfecit, fraudulentia
but of-most-orderly of-participation by-the-work completed the-fraud
 vero quorundam malivolorum et de navium subvectione
but of-certain malicious-men and from of-ships the-transport
 mercedes iniquissimas compilare volentium consumpsit. Si
wages most-wicked to-scrape-together wishing consumed if
 vero essent ecclesiae, ad ius regium proprie pertinentes,
but there-were churches to the-right royal properly belonging
 laquearibus vel muralibus adornandae picturis, id a vicinis
with-ceilings or with-wall to-be-adorned paintings this by neighboring
 episcopis aut abbatibus curabatur. Quodsi novae fuissent
bishops or abbots was-taken-care-of but-if new had-been
 instituendae, omnes episcopi duces et comites, abbates etiam
to-be-founded all bishops dukes and counts abbots also
 vel quicumque regalibus ecclesiis praesidentes cum universis,
or whoever over-royal churches presiding with all
 qui publica consecuti sunt beneficia, a fundamentis usque
who public obtained have benefices from the-foundations all-the-way
 ad culmen instantissimo labore perduxerunt; sicut adhuc probat
to the-roof with-most-urgent labor brought as still proves
 non solum basilica illa divina sed et humana apud Aquasgrani
not only basilica that divine but also human at Aachen
 et mansiones omnium cuiusquam dignitatis hominum, quae
and the-dwellings of-all of-any rank men which
 ita circa palatium peritissimi Karoli eius dispositione
so around the-palace of-the-most-skilled Charles of-him by-the-arrangement
 constructae sunt, ut ipse per cancellos solarii sui
built were that he-himself through the-lattices of-the-upper-room his-own
 cuncta posset videre, quaecumque ab intrantibus vel exeuntibus
all-things could to-see whatever by those-entering or going-out

quasi latenter fierent. Sed et ita omnia procerum habitacula
as-if secretly might-be-done but also so all of-the-nobles the-dwellings
 a terra erant in sublime suspensa, ut sub eis non
from the-ground were into the-height raised that under them not
 solum militum milites et eorum servitores sed omne genus
only of-soldiers the-soldiers and their servants but every kind
 hominum ab iniuriis imbrium vel nivium, gelu vel caumatis
of-men from the-injuries of-rains or of-snows of-frost or of-beat
 possent defendi, et nequaquam tamen ab oculis acutissimi
could to-be-defended and by-no-means yet from the-eyes of-the-most-keen
 Karoli valerent abscondi. Cuius edificii descriptionem ego
Charles could to-be-bidden of-which building the-description I
 inclusus absolutis cancellariis vestris relinquens, ad iudicium
a-recluse to-the-released chancellors your leaving to the-judgment
 Dei, quod circa illud factum est, explicandum revertor.
of-God which about it done was to-be-unfolded I-return

XXXI • LIUTFRID'S TREASURE

Charles has his steward Liutfrid feed and clothe the craftsmen from abroad, but Liutfrid grows rich on their sufferings. A cleric dozing before the morning office dreams of a giant leading a laden camel to Liutfrid's house to drag him to hell. Just then word comes that Liutfrid has died in the privy, and Charles has his treasure given to the workmen and the poor.

Providentissimus igitur Karolus quibuscumque primoribus in
the-most-provident therefore Charles to-whatever chief-men in
 proximo constitutis praecepit, ut opifices a se directos
the-neighborhood stationed commanded that the-workmen by himself sent
 omni industria sustentare et cuncta ad opus illud necessaria
with-all diligence to-support and all-things for work that necessary

subministrare curarent. Qui vero ex longinquis partibus
to-supply they-should-take-care who but from distant parts
 advenissent, commendavit eos praeposito domus suae nomine
had-come be-entrusted them to-the-steward of-house his-own by-name
 Liutfrido; ut eos de publicis rebus aleret et vestiret,
Liutfrid that them from public resources he-should-feed and clothe
 sed et cuncta, quae ad constructionem illam pertinerent,
but also all-things which to construction that pertained
 sedulus impendere semper instaret. Quod cum, illo in
diligent to-spend always he-should-press which when he in
 eodem loco sedente, aliquantulum faceret, recedente vero
the-same place sitting somewhat did withdrawing but
 omnimodo cessaret, tantas pecunias idem praepositus de
altogether ceased such sums the-same steward from
 miserorum illorum cruciatibus aggregavit, ut eas mammonas
of-wretches those the-tortures amassed that them riches
 Pluto atque Dis non aliter quam vehiculo cameli possent
Pluto and Dis not otherwise than by-the-vehicle of-a-camel could
 ad inferna perducere. Quod et ita mortalibus compertum
to the-underworld bring which also so to-mortals discovered
 est: Gloriosissimus Karolus ad nocturnas laudes pendulo et
was the-most-glorious Charles for the-nocturnal lauds with-a-hanging and
 profundissimo pallio, cuius iam usus et nomen recessit,
very-deep cloak of-which now the-use and name has-gone-away
 utebatur; expletis vero ymnis matutinalibus, ad caminatam
used finished but the-hymns of-matins to the-chamber
 reversus, imperialibus vestimentis pro tempore ornabatur.
having-returned in-imperial garments according-to the-season was-adorned
 Clerici vero cuncti ita parati ad antelucana veniebant officia,
the-clerics but all so prepared to the-before-dawn came offices
 ut vel in ecclesia vel in porticu, que tunc curticula
that either in the-church or in the-portico which then little-court

dicebatur, imperatorem ad missarum sollempnia processurum
was-called the-emperor to of-the-masses the-solemnities about-to-proceed
 vigilantes expectarent aut, qui opus haberet, in sinu comparis
watching they-might-await or who need had on the-lap of-companion
 sui caput paululum reclinaret. Quidam ergo pauperculus
his-own the-head a-little might-lean a-certain-one therefore poor-little-man
 ex eis, qui domum supradicti Liutfridi abluendarum
of them who the-house of-the-above-mentioned Liutfrid to-be-washed
 seu resarciendarum, sicut exiguis opus est palatinis, vestium
or to-be-mended as for-meager need is palace-men of-garments
 vel potius pannorum causa frequentare solebat, super
or rather of-rags for-the-sake to-frequent was-accustomed upon
 genua socii sui dormiens, vidit gigantem Antoniano
the-knees of-companion his-own sleeping saw a-giant than-Anthony's
 illo adversario procriorem de curte regia super rivulum
that adversary taller from the-court royal over brook
 illum per traiectum ad domum illius properantem et
that by the-ferry to the-house of-him hastening and
 camelum immanissimum, inaestimabili sarcina praegravatum,
a-camel most-monstrous with-an-ineestimable load weighed-down
 ad ulteriora trahentem. Et obstupefactus in somnio quesivit
to the-farther-side dragging and astonished in the-dream he-asked
 ab eo, de qua regione veniret aut quo tendere voluisset.
of him from what region he-came or whither to-make-for he-wished
 Qui respondit: De domo regis ad domum Liutfridi pergo;
who answered from the-house of-the-king to the-house of-Liutfrid I-go
 et eum super hos fasces imponam et pariter in infernum
and him upon these bundles I-will-place and together into hell
 cum eis dimergam. Ad quam visionem expergefactus clericus
with them I-will-plunge at which vision awakened the-cleric
 et maiore metu contrerritus, ne eum terribilis Karolus
and by-greater fear terrified lest him the-terrible Charles

dormientem reperiret, mox caput elevans et caeteros ad
sleeping should-find soon the-head raising and the-others to
vigilandum provocans, in haec verba prorupit: Si vultis, audite
waking calling into these words burst-forth if you-wish hear
somnia meum. Videbar mihi videre Poliphemum illum, qui
dream my I-seemed to-myself to-see Polyphemus that-one who
in terra gradiens alta pulsata sydera et in medio Ionio
on the-earth walking the-high strikes stars and in the-middle-of the-Ionian
latera non tinguunt ardua, de hac curte regia ad domum
bis-sides not wets lofty from this court royal to the-house
Liutfridi cum onerario properantem camelo. Cumque
of-Liutfrid with a-burden-bearing hastening camel and-when
causam itineris eius inquisissem, dixit ille: „Liutfridum
the-cause of-the-journey of-him I-had-asked said he Liutfrid
super haec onera ponere et ad infernum contendo perducere“.
upon these burdens to-place and to hell I-strive to-bring
Hac relatione nondum expleta, venit puella de domo eius,
this report not-yet completed came a-girl from the-house of-him
omnibus notissima, et ante pedes eorum procidit, implorans,
to-all best-known and before the-feet of-them fell imploring
ut memoriam amici sui Liutfridi dignarentur habere.
that the-memory of-friend their-own Liutfrid they-would-deign to-have
Illis autem interrogantibus, quid causae haberet, dixit illa:
they moreover asking what of-cause she-had said she
Domini mei, sanus ad latrinam exiit; et dum diutius
lords my healthy to the-privy went-out and while longer
ibi moraretur, egredientes defunctum invenimus illum. Cuius
there he-stayed going-out having-died we-found him whose
cum subitanea mors imperatori comperta fuisset, et ab
when sudden death to-the-emperor discovered had-been and by
opificibus et reliqua familia tenacia vel avaritia illius
the-workmen and the-remaining household the-stinginess or avarice of-him

iam libere proderetur, iussit thesauros eius perquiri.

now freely was-disclosed he-ordered the-treasures of-him to-be-searched-out

Qui cum inaestimabiles invenirentur sciretque iudex post

which when inestimable they-were-found and-he-knew the-judge after

Deum iustissimus, de quali iniquitate congregati fuissent,

God most-just from what-sort-of iniquity gathered they-had-been

publice pronunciavit: Non potest aliquid ex his, quae

publicly he-pronounced not can anything of these-things which

ipse iniuste fraudavit, ad liberationem illius miseri proficere.

he-himself unjustly defrauded for the-liberation of-that wretch avail

Dividantur itaque inter operarios huius aedificii nostri et

let-them-be-divided therefore among the-workers of-this building our and

tenuiores palatii nostri.

the-poorer-men of-palace our

XXXII · THE SPIDER

A vain deacon, shaven and polished, presumes to read the Gospel before Charles with a polluted conscience. A spider drops from the ceiling and stings his head, two and three times; Charles sees it and lets it happen, and the deacon dares not brush it away. After the office he swells up and dies within an hour, and Charles does public penance for his death.

Duo sunt adhuc referenda, quae in eodem loco contigerunt.

two are still to-be-related which in the-same place happened

Quidam diaconus, iuxta consuetudinem cisalpinorum contra

a-certain deacon according-to the-custom of-the-cisalpinos against

naturam pugnare solitus, balneas intrans et caput suum

nature to-fight accustomed the-baths entering and head his-own

pressissime radi faciens, cutem expoliavit, ungues murcavit

very-closely to-be-shaved causing the-skin polished the-nails trimmed

capillosque brevissimos quasi ad circinum tornando decurtavit,
and-the-hair very-short as-if to compasses turning cut-short
 lineas et camisiā candidissimā induit, et quia vicem
linens and a-shirt most-white put-on and because turn
 suam devitare non potuit, quin potius ut per hoc gloriosior
his-own to-avoid not he-could nay rather that through this more-glorious
 appareret, sponte coram summo Deo et sanctis
he-might-appear of-his-own-accord before the-biggest God and the-holy
 angelis et in conspectu severissimi regis et procerum eius
angels and in the-sight of-the-most-severe king and of-the-nobles of-him
 euangelium, ut in consequentibus patuit polluta conscientia,
the-gospel as in the-following was-plain with-polluted conscience
 legere praesumpsit. Tunc inter legendum aranea, de laqueari per
to-read presumed then during reading a-spider from the-ceiling by
 fila sua subito descendens, caput eius aculeo infecit et
threads its-own suddenly descending the-head of-him with-its-sting infected and
 se celerrime ad superiora retraxit. Quod cum districtissimus
itself most-swiftly to the-upper-parts drew-back which when the-most-strict
 Karolus secundo ac tercio videret et dissimulando id
Charles a-second-time and a-third-time saw and by-dissembling this
 fieri pateretur, clericus vero propter praesentiam illius
to-happen allowed the-cleric but on-account-of the-presence of-that
 aspectus se manu defendere non auderet, maxime
gaze himself with-the-band to-defend not dared chiefly
 cum non araneam se impetere sed muscas inquietare
since not a-spider himself to-attack but flies to-bother
 putaret, euangelica lectione perlecta, reliquum etiam complevit
he-thought the-gospel reading read-through the-remaining also he-completed
 officium. Egressus autem de basilica, mox intumuit;
office having-gone-out moreover from the-basilica soon he-swelled-up
 et infra unius horae spacium defecit. Religiosissimus vero
and within of-one hour the-space failed the-most-religious but

Karolus, quia causam periculi eius vidit et non prohibuit,
Charles because the-cause of-the-danger of-him he-saw and not prevented
 quasi homicidii reum, publica se ipsum poenitentia multavit.
as-if of-homicide guilty by-public himself self penance punished

XXXIII · THE VANISHED CLERIC

Charles has a cleric who surpasses everyone in learning, in sacred and secular song, in composition, and in the sweetness of his voice. Unlike the saints, who knew where their gifts came from and gave thanks, he never thanks their giver. As he stands beside the emperor, he suddenly vanishes. Charles crosses himself and finds on the spot only something like a black coal, newly extinguished.

Habuit gloriosissimus Karolus quendam in comitatu
had the-most-glorious Charles a-certain in the-retinue
 incomparabilem clericum in omnibus. De quo illud ferebatur
incomparable cleric in all-things of whom this was-said
 quod nunquam de ullo mortalium: quia videlicet et
which never of any of-mortals that namely both
 scientia litterarum secularium atque divinarum cantileneque
in-knowledge of-letters secular and divine and-of-chant
 ecclesiasticae vel iocularis, novaque carminum compositione
ecclesiastical or jocular and-in-new of-songs composition
 sive modulatione, insuper et vocis dulcissima plenitudine
or modulation moreover also of-voice in-the-sweetest fullness
 inestimabilique delectatione cunctos praecelleret; cum et ipse
and-inestimable delight all he-surpassed although also himself
 legislator ex instructione divina sapientissimus de gracilitate
the-lawgiver from instruction divine most-wise of the-thinness
 vocis vel dispendio linguae tardioris causetur et discipulum,
of-voice or the-loss of-tongue slower complains and the-disciple

ex auctoritate inhabitantis in se Dei elementis celestibus
from the-authority of-indwelling in himself God the-elements heavenly
 imperantem, mittat ad consulta Eleazari; dominus noster
commanding sends to the-counsels of-Eleazar lord our
 Christus eum, quo inter natos mulierum maiorem non
Christ him than-whom among the-born of-women greater not
 surrexisse testatur, nullum in corpore signum operari concesserit;
to-have-arisen he-testifies no in the-body sign to-work granted
 et eum, quem paterna revelatione se ipsum agnoscere
and him whom by-paternal revelation himself self to-recognize
 voluit clavibusque regni celorum donavit, Pauli sapientiam
he-wished and-with-the-keys of-the-kingdom of-heaven endowed Paul's wisdom
 mirari voluerit, discipulumque plus caeteris dilectum in
to-admire wished and-the-disciple more than-the-others loved into
 tantam cadere trepidationem permiserit, ut in locum sepulchri
such to-fall trepidation allowed that into the-place of-the-tomb
 eius ingredi non praesumpserit, cum illud inbecilles mulieres
of-him to-enter not he-dared though it weak women
 sepius frequentarent. Sed illi, sicut scriptum est: Omni
often frequented but they as written it-is to-every-one
 habenti dabitur, scientes a quo haberent, etiam, quae
having it-shall-be-given knowing from whom they-had even what-things
 minus habuere, consecuti sunt; iste vero, nesciens unde
less they-had obtained have this-one but not-knowing whence
 haberet vel sciens, auctori donorum dignas gratias non egit,
he-had or knowing to-the-author of-the-gifts worthy thanks not gave
 unde pariter cuncta amisit. Nam cum veluti familiarissimus
whence equally all-things lost for when as-if most-intimate
 iuxta gloriosissimum caesarem constitisset, subito non
beside the-most-glorious caesar he-had-stood suddenly not
 comparuit. Cumque ad tam inauditam et incredibilem rem
he-appeared and-when at so unheard-of and incredible a-thing

invictissimus Karolus imperator obstupefactus fuisset et se
the-most-unconquered Charles emperor astonished had-been and himself
 cruce Domini consignaret, invenit in eodem loco, in quo
with-the-cross of-the-Lord signed he-found in the-same place in which
 steterat ille, quasi carbonem teterrimum et noviter extinctum.
had-stood he as-if a-coal most-black and newly extinguished

XXXIV · FRANKISH DRESS

The Monk describes the old Frankish dress: gilded shoes with long laces, scarlet leg bands over linen leggings, a sword, a white or blue cloak, and an applewood staff, as he saw the head of the Franks wear it at Saint Gall. When the Frisians sell the Gauls' short striped cloaks as dear as long ones, Charles bans it. Werinbert has died, and his account ends here.

Nocturnum illud atque pendulum augusti pallium adhuc nos
nocturnal that and hanging of-the-augustus cloak still us
 a bellico procinctu retrahit. Erat antiquorum ornatus
from the-warlike readiness draws-back there-was of-the-ancient the-adornment
 vel paratura Francorum: calciamenta forinsecus aurata, corrigiis
or equipment of-the-Franks shoes on-the-outside gilded with-laces
 tricubitalibus insignita, fasciolae crurales vermiculatae; et
three-cubit distinguished bands for-the-legs scarlet and
 subtus eas tibialia vel coxalia linea, quamvis ex eodem colore
under them leggings or thigh-coverings linen although of the-same color
 tamen opere artificiosissimo variata. Super quae et fasciolas
yet with-work most-artful varied over which also the-bands
 in crucis modum, intrinsecus et extrinsecus, ante et retro,
in of-a-cross the-manner inside and outside in-front and behind
 longissimae illae corrigiae tendebantur. Deinde camisia clizana;
very-long those laces were-stretched then a-shirt of-glossy-linen

post haec balteus spate colligatus. Quae spata primum
after these a-belt to-the-sword bound which sword first
 vagina, secundo corio qualicunque, tercio lintheamine
with-a-scabbard second with-leather of-some-kind third with-a-linen-wrapping
 candidissimo cera lucidissima roborato ita cingebatur, ut
most-white with-wax most-shining strengthened so was-girt that
 per medium cruciculis eminentibus ad peremptionem
through the-middle with-little-crosses projecting for the-slaughter
 gentilium duraretur. Ultimum habitus eorum erat pallium
of-the-beatbens it-was-hardened the-last of-the-dress of-them was a-cloak
 canum vel saphirinum, quadrangulum duplex; sic formatum, ut,
white or sapphire four-cornered double so shaped that
 cum imponeretur humeris, ante et retro pedes tangeret, de
when it-was-placed on-the-shoulders in-front and behind the-feet it-touched at
 lateribus vero vix genua contegeret. Tunc baculus de arbore
the-sides but scarcely the-knees it-covered then a-staff from the-tree
 malo, nodis paribus admirabilis, rigidus et terribilis, cuspede
apple with-knots equal admirable stiff and terrible with-a-point
 manuali ex auro vel argento cum celaturis insignibus praefixo,
hand-shaped of gold or silver with carvings notable fixed-at-the-tip
 portabatur in dextera. Quo habitu lentus ego et testudine
was-carried in the-right-hand in-which dress slow I and than-a-tortoise
 tardior, cum in Franciam nunquam venirem, vidi caput
slower since into Francia never I-came I-saw the-head
 Francorum in monasterio sancti Galli praefulgens, duosque
of-the-Franks in the-monastery of-saint Gall shining-forth and-two
 flores auricomos ex eius femoribus progressos; quorum
flowers golden-haired from his thighs having-come-forth of-which
 qui prior egressus est, proceritatem illius adaequabat,
the-one-who first came-out has the-height of-him equaled
 posterior autem, paulatim excrescens, verticem stipitis sui
the-later moreover gradually growing the-top of-stock his-own

summa gloria decoravit et transcendendo contextit. Sed
with-the-highest glory adorned and by-surpassing covered but
 ut se mos humani habet ingenii, cum inter Gallos Franci
as itself the-way of-human has nature when among the-Gauls the-Franks
 militantes virgatis eos sagulis lucere conspicerent, novitate
serving with-striped them little-cloaks to-shine they-saw in-the-novelty
 gaudentes, antiquam consuetudinem dimiserunt et eos imitari
rejoicing the-ancient custom they-dropped and them to-imitate
 coeperunt. Quod interim rigidissimus imperator idcirco non
began which meanwhile the-most-rigid emperor for-this-reason not
 prohibuit, quia bellicis rebus aptior ille videretur habitus.
forbade because for-warlike affairs more-suitable that seemed dress
 Sed cum Fresones hac licentia abutentes adverteret et
but when the-Frisians this license abusing he-noticed and
 brevissima illa palliola sicut prius maxima vendere comperisset,
very-short those little-cloaks as before the-largest to-sell he-had-found
 praecepit: ut nullus ab eis nisi grandia latissimaque illa
he-commanded that no-one from them except large and-very-broad those
 longissima pallia consuetudinario precio coemeret; adiciens:
very-long cloaks at-the-customary price should-buy adding
 Quid prosunt illa pittaciola? In lecto non possum eis
what are-of-use those little-rags in bed not I-can with-them
 cooperiri; caballicans contra ventos et pluvias nequeo defendi;
to-be-covered riding against winds and rains I-cannot to-be-protected
 ad necessaria naturae secedens, tibiarum congelatione deficio.
for the-necessities of-nature withdrawing of-the-legs by-the-freezing I-fail
 In praefatione huius opusculi tres tantum auctores me
in the-preface of-this little-work three only authors myself
 secuturum spondi. Sed quia praecipuus eorum Werinbertus
about-to-follow I-pledged but because the-chief of-them Werinbert
 septimo die de hac vita recessit, et debemus hodie id
on-the-seventh day from this life withdrew and we-ought today that

est 3 die Kal. Iunii commemorationem illius —
is on-the-third day Kalends of-June the-commemoration of-him
orbi filii discipulique — agere, hic fiat terminus libelli
bereaved sons and-disciples to-bold here let-there-be the-end of-book
istius, qui ex sacerdotis eiusdem ore de religiositate et
this which from of-the-priest the-same the-mouth about the-religiousness and
aecclesiastica domni Karoli cura processit. Sequens vero de
the-ecclesiastical of-lord Charles care proceeded the-following but about
bellicis rebus acerrimi Karoli ex narratione Adalberti,
the-warlike affairs of-the-most-fierce Charles from the-narration of-Adalbert
patris eiusdem Werinberti, cudatur; qui cum domino
the-father of-the-same Werinbert let-it-be-forged who with lord
suo Keroldo et Hunisco et Saxonico vel Sclavico bello
bis-own Gerold both in-the-Hunnish and Saxon and Slavic war
interfuit et, cum valde senior parvulum me nutriret,
took-part and when very old a-little-one me he-was-bringing-up
renitentem et sepius effugientem, vi tandem coactum
resisting and often running-away by-force at-last compelled
de his instruere solebat.
about these-things to-instruct he-was-accustomed

BOOK II

I • THE RING OF THE HUNS

After Julian's death the western provinces fall from Rome, and the Huns plunder Francia and Spain. Adalbert tells the Monk that their land is girded by nine rings, each a rampart of stakes, stones, and clay twenty feet wide and high, with villages within earshot inside. There the Huns hoard the wealth of the West for two hundred years, until Charles crushes them in eight.

Ex relatione secularis hominis et in scripturis minus eruditi
 from the-account of-a-secular man and in scriptures less learned
 sermonem hunc facturi, non ab re credimus, si
 discourse this about-to-make not from the-matter we-believe if
 iuxta scriptorum fidem pauca de superioribus ad
 according-to of-writers the-faith a-few-things about earlier-times to
 memoriam revocemus. Cum Deo odibilis Iulianus in Persico
 memory we-recall when by-God hateful Julian in the-Persian
 bello celitus fuisset interemptus, et a Romanorum
 war from-heaven had-been slain and from of-the-Romans
 regno non solum transmarinae provinciae sed et proxima
 realm not only the-overseas provinces but also nearby
 Pannonia Noricus Recia vel Germania Francique vel Galli
 Pannonia Noricum Raetia or Germany and-the-Franks or the-Gauls
 defecissent, ipsique reges Gallorum vel Francorum propter
 had-fallen-away and-the-very kings of-the-Gauls or of-the-Franks on-account-of
 interfectionem sancti Desiderii Viennensis episcopi et
 the-killing of-saint Desiderius of-Vienne bishop and
 expulsionem sanctissimorum advenarum Columbani et Galli
 the-expulsion of-the-most-holy strangers Columban and Gall
 retro labi cepissent, gens Hunorum, prius per Franciam
 backward to-slide had-begun the-people of-the-Huns before through Francia

et Equitaniam vel Gallias sive Hispanias latrocinari solita,
and Aquitaine or the-Gauls or the-Spains to-plunder accustomed
 tota simul egressa quasi latissimum incendium cuncta
all at-once having-gone-out like a-very-broad fire all-things
 devastans, reliquias, quae remanere poterant, ad tutissima
laying-waste the-remains which to-remain could to the-safest
 latibula comportavit. Quae huiusmodi fuerunt, sicut praefatus
hiding-places carried which of-this-kind were as the-aforesaid
 Adalbertus mihi narrare consueverat: Terra inquiring Hunorum
Adalbert to-me to-tell was-accustomed the-land saying of-the-Huns
 novem circulis cingebatur. Et cum ego, alios circulos nisi
with-nine circles was-girded and when I other circles except
 vimineos cogitare nescius, interrogarem: Quid illud miraculi
of-wicker to-imagine not-knowing asked what that of-a-marvel
 fuit, domine? respondit: Novem hegin muniebatur. Cumque
was lord he-answered with-nine hedges it-was-fortified and-when
 et illos alterius generis esse nescirem, nisi quales segetibus
also those of-another kind to-be I-did-not-know except such-as before-crops
 solent praetendi, inquisitus etiam de hoc, dixit: Tam latus
are-wont to-be-set asked also about this he-said so broad
 fuit unus circulus, hoc est tantum intra se comprehendit,
was one circle that is so-much within itself it-enclosed
 quantum spacium est de castro Turico ad Constantiam;
as-much-as the-distance is from the-fort of-Zurich to Constance
 ita stipitibus quernis faginis vel abiegnis exstructus, ut de
so with-stakes of-oak of-beech or of-fir built that from
 margine ad marginem 20 pedes tenderetur in latum, et
edge to edge twenty feet it-stretched in breadth and
 totidem subrigeretur in altum; cavitas autem universa aut
as-many it-was-raised in height the-hollow moreover whole either
 durissimis lapidibus aut creta tenacissima repletur; porro
with-the-hardest stones or with-clay most-tenacious was-filled further

superficies vallorum eorundem integerrimis cespitibus
the-surface of-the-ramparts the-same with-the-most-unbroken turfs
 tegeretur. Inter quorum confinia plantabantur arbusculae,
was-covered between whose borders were-planted little-trees
 quae, ut cernere solemus, abscisae atque proiectae comas
which as to-see we-are-wont cut-off and thrown-down hair
 caudicum foliorumque proferunt. Inter hos igitur aggeres
of-shoots and-of-leaves put-forth between these therefore mounds
 ita vici et villae erant locatae, ut de aliis ad alias
so villages and estates were placed that from some to others
 vox humana posset audiri. Contra eadem vero aedificia
the-voice human could to-be-beard opposite the-same but buildings
 inter inexpugnabiles illos muros portae non satis amplae
in the-impregnable those walls gates not sufficiently ample
 et latae erant constitutae; per quas latrocinandi gratia
and broad were set through which of-plundering for-the-sake
 non solum exteriores sed etiam interiores exire solebant.
not only the-outer but also the-inner to-go-out were-accustomed
 Item de secundo circulo, qui similiter ut primus erat
likewise from the-second circle which likewise as the-first was
 exstructus, 20 miliaria Theutonica, quae sunt 40 Italica,
built twenty miles German which are forty Italian
 ad tertium usque tendebantur; similiter usque ad nonum;
to the-third all-the-way they-stretched likewise all-the-way to the-ninth
 quamvis ipsi circuli alius alio multo contractiones
although the-very circles one than-another much narrower
 fuerint. De circulo quoque ad circulum sic erant possessiones
were from circle also to circle so were the-estates
 et habitacula undique ordinata, ut clangor tubarum inter
and dwellings on-all-sides arranged that the-blast of-trumpets between
 singula posset cuiusque rei significativus adverti. Ad
each could of-every thing as-a-signal to-be-perceived to

has ergo munitiones per ducentos et eo amplius
these therefore fortifications through two-hundred and than-that more
 annos qualescunque omnium occidentalium divitias Huni
years whatever of-all the-westerners riches the-Huns
 congregantes, cum et Gothi et Wandali quietem mortalium
gathering since both the-Goths and the-Vandals the-rest of-mortals
 perturbarent, orbem occiduum pene vacuum dimiserunt. Quos
disturbed the-world western almost empty left whom
 tamen invictissimus Karolus ita in annis octo perdomuit,
yet the-most-unconquered Charles so in years eight thoroughly-subdued
 ut de eis ne minimas quidem reliquias remanere permiserit.
that of them not smallest even remains to-remain be-allowed
 A Bulgaribus vero ideo manum retraxit, quia, videlicet
from the-Bulgars but for-this-reason the-hand he-withdrew because namely
 Hunis extinctis, regno Francorum nichil nocituri
the-Huns destroyed to-the-kingdom of-the-Franks nothing about-to-harm
 viderentur. Porro praedam in Pannonia repertam per
they-seemed further the-plunder in Pannonia found among
 episcopia vel monasteria liberalissima divisione distribuit.
bishoprics or monasteries with-most-generous division he-distributed

II • THE TWO SOLDIERS

In the Saxon war two private soldiers, whose names the Monk withholds, destroy the walls of a strong city under a tortoise of shields. Charles makes the first prefect between the Rhine and the Alps, with his lord Gerold's consent, and enriches the other with estates.

In bello autem Saxonico, cum per semet ipsum aliquando
in the-war moreover Saxon when by himself self once
 fuisset occupatus, duo quidam privati homines, quorum
he-had-been occupied two certain private men whose

etiam nomina designarem nisi notam arrogantiae vitarem,
also the-names I-would-indicate unless the-mark of-arrogance I-should-avoid
 testudine facta, muros firmissimae civitatis vel aggeris acerrime
a-tortoise made the-walls of-a-most-strong city or rampart most-fiercely
 destruebant. Quod videns, iustissimus Karolus primum illorum
were-destroying which seeing the-most-just Charles the-first of-them
 cum consensu domini sui Keroldi praefectum inter Renum
with the-consent of-lord his-own Gerold prefect between the-Rhine
 et alpes Italicas instituit, alterum praediis admodum ditavit.
and the-Alps Italian he-established the-other with-estates very enriched

III • THE DRUNKEN GUARDS

The sons of two dukes, set to guard the king's tent, lie drunk as the dead. Charles, making his rounds as usual, returns unrecognized. In the morning he asks his nobles what a man deserves who has betrayed the Franks' head into the enemy's hands. The dukes, not knowing, condemn such a man to death; Charles rebukes their sons harshly and lets them go unharmed.

Ibidem vero cum duorum ducum filii ad tentorium
in-the-same-place but when of-two dukes the-sons at the-tent
 regis excubare deberent et potibus ingurgitati iacerent
of-the-king to-keep-watch ought and with-drinks gorged lay
 ut mortui, porro ille, iuxta consuetudinem suam sepius
as-if dead further he according-to custom his-own often
 evigilans et castra circuiens, sensim et pene nullo
waking and the-camp going-around gently and almost no-one
 cognoscente ad tabernaculum regressus est. Mane autem facto,
recognizing to the-tent returned has morning moreover come
 convocatis ad se cunctis regni primoribus, interrogavit,
summoned to himself all of-the-kingdom the-chief-men he-asked

qua poena dignus esset, qui caput Francorum in manus
of-what penalty worthy would-be one-who the-head of-the-Franks into the-hands
 hostium tradidisset. Tunc praefati duces, earundem
of-the-enemies should-have-betrayed then the-aforesaid dukes of-the-same
 rerum penitus ignari, eiusmodi hominem condempnaverunt ad
things utterly ignorant such a-man condemned to
 mortem. Ipso vero durissimis verbis coercitos dimisit inlesos.
death he-himself but with-very-harsh words restrained dismissed unbarred

IV · THE TWO BASTARDS

Two bastards born in the women's workshop of Colmar fight bravely in the Saxon war. Charles calls them to his tent and says he wants them to serve him in his chamber. Concealing their indignation, they wait until he sleeps, ride out to the enemy camp, and wash away the stain of servitude in their own and the enemy's blood.

Erant quoque ibi duo nothi, de genicio Columbrensi
there-were also there two bastards from the-women's-workshop of-Colmar
 procreati. Qui cum fortissime in bello dimicarent, requisivit
begotten who when most-bravely in battle they-fought asked
 imperator ab illis, qui et unde nati essent. Quo comperto,
the-emperor of them who and whence born they-were which learned
 meridiano tempore eos ad tabernaculum suum vocatos sic
at-midday time them to tent his-own called thus
 allocutus est: Boni iuvenes, volo ut mihi non alii serviatis.
addressed has good youths I-wish that me not another you-serve
 Qui cum se ad hoc venisse testarentur, ut vel ultimi
who when themselves for this to-have-come testified that even the-last
 in eius essent obsequio, dixit ille: Ad cameram meam
in his they-might-be service said he in chamber my

servire debetis. Quod etiam dum indignatione dissimulata
 to-serve you-ought which also while with-indignation dissembled
 libenter se facturos esse faterentur, captato tempore quo
 gladly themselves about-to-do to-be professed seized the-time when
 imperator somno quiescere coepisset, exierunt ad castra
 the-emperor in-sleep to-rest had-begun they-went-out to the-camp
 adversariorum et, tumultu concitato, suo vel hostium
 of-the-adversaries and an-uproar stirred-up with-their-own and of-the-enemies
 sanguine servitutis notam diluerunt.
 blood of-servitude the-mark washed-away

V • THE EMPEROR AT CONSTANTINOPLE

Amid his wars Charles keeps sending letters and gifts to distant kings. When his envoy tells the emperor at Constantinople that Charles's kingdom is at peace except for the Saxons' raids, the emperor, sluggish with idleness, asks why his son labors against so few and feeble enemies, and gives the envoy that people. When the envoy reports this, Charles smiles and says the emperor would have done better to give him a pair of linen drawers for the journey.

Inter huiusmodi tamen occupationes nullo modo magnanimus
 among of-this-kind yet occupations in-no way the-great-souled
 praetermisit imperator, quin ad longinquissimarum partium
 omitted emperor but-that to of-the-most-distant parts
 reges alios atque alios dirigeret litterarum vel munerum
 kings other and other he-sent of-letters or of-gifts
 portitores; a quibus illi omnium provinciarum sunt
 bearers from whom to-him of-all provinces were
 honores directi. Cum igitur de sede Saxonici belli legatos
 honors sent when therefore from the-seat of-the-Saxon war envoys
 ad regem Constantinopoleos destinaret, interrogavit ille:
 to the-king of-Constantinople he-dispatched asked he

utrum pacatum esset regnum filii sui Karoli vel si a
whether at-peace was the-kingdom of-son his-own Charles or if by
 finitimis gentibus incursaretur. Cumque missorum primus
neighboring peoples it-was-attacked and-when of-the-envoys the-first
 alias omnia pacata referret, nisi quod gens quaedam,
otherwise all-things peaceful reported except that a-people a-certain
 qui Saxones vocitantur, creberrimis latrociniiis Francorum
which Saxons are-called with-very-frequent raids of-the-Franks
 fines inquietarent, dixit homo torpens ocio nec utilis
the-borders harassed said the-man torpid with-idleness nor useful
 belli negotio: Hiû, quare laborat filius meus contra hostes
of-war for-the-business ab why labors son my against enemies
 paucissimos nullius nominis nulliusque virtutis? Habeas tu
very-few of-no name and-of-no valor have you
 gentem illam cum omnibus ad eam pertinentibus. Quod
people that with all-things to it belonging which
 cum reversus bellicosissimo Karolo nuntiaret, arridens ille
when having-retuned to-the-most-warlike Charles he-announced smiling he
 dixit ei: Multo melius tibi rex ille consulisset, si
said to-him much better for-you king that would-have-provided if
 unum lineum femorale ad tantum iter tibi tribuisset.
one linen pair-of-drawers for so-long a-journey to-you he-had-given

Charles's envoy, starved by a bishop, tells the Greek emperor the bishop is as holy as one can be without God; condemned for turning a fish, he escapes by a trick. Heito, ill used by the Greeks, makes their envoys bow to one official after another until they see Charles and fall senseless.

Non videtur occultanda sapientia, quam sapienti Graeciae
 not it-seems to-be-hidden the-wisdom which to-wise Greece
 idem missus aperuit. Cum autumnali tempore ad urbem
 the-same envoy disclosed when in-autumn time to the-city
 quondam regiam cum sociis venisset, aliis alio
 formerly royal with companions he-had-come others to-another-place
 divis, ipse cuidam episcopo commendatus est. Qui, cum
 divided he-himself to-a-certain bishop entrusted was who since
 ieiuniis et orationibus incessanter incumberet, legatum illum
 to-fasts and prayers unceasingly he-applied-himself envoy that
 pene continua mortificavit inedia; vernali autem temperie
 almost with-continual put-to-death fasting vernal moreover the-mildness
 iam aliquantulum arridente, praesentavit eum regi. Qui
 now somewhat smiling he-presented him to-the-king who
 interrogavit eum, qualis sibi idem videretur episcopus. At
 asked him what-sort to-him the-same seemed bishop but
 ille, ex imis praecordiis alta suspiria trahens: Sanctissimus
 he from the-deepest heart deep sighs drawing most-holy
 est ait ille vester episcopus, quantum sine Deo possibile
 is he-said that your bishop as-far-as without God possible
 est. Ad quod stupefactus rex: Quomodo inquit sine Deo
 it-is at which astounded the-king how he-says without God

aliquis sanctus esse potest? Tum ille: Scriptum est inquit
anyone holy to-be can then he written it-is he-says

„Deus caritas est“; qua iste vacuus est.

God love is of-which this-one empty is

Tunc rex vocavit eum ad convivium suum et inter medios
then the-king called him to feast his-own and among the-midst-of

proceres collocavit. A quibus talis lex constituta erat: ut
nobles placed by whom such a-law established was that

nullus in mensa regis, indigena sive advena, aliquod animal
no-one at the-table of-the-king native or stranger any animal

vel corpus animalis in partem aliam converteret; sed ita
or body of-an-animal onto side other should-turn but so

tantum, ut positum erat, de superiori parte manducaret.
only as placed it-was from the-upper side should-eat

Allatus est autem piscis fluvialis et pigmentis infusus, in
brought was moreover a-fish of-the-river and with-spices steeped on

disco positus. Cumque hospes idem, consuetudinis illius
a-dish placed and-when guest the-same of-custom that

ignarus, piscem illum in partem alteram giraret, exurgentes
ignorant fish that onto side other turned rising

omnes dixerunt ad regem: Domine, ita estis inhonorati,
all said to the-king lord so you-are dishonored

sicut nunquam anteriores vestri. At ille ingemiscens dixit
as never predecessors your but he groaning said

ad legatum illum: Obstaré non possum istis, quin morti
to envoy that withstand not I-can these but-that to-death

continuo tradaris. Aliud pete, quodcunque volueris;
at-once you-be-banded-over something-else ask whatever you-may-wish

et complebo. Tunc, parumper deliberans, cunctis audientibus
and I-will-fulfill then for-a-little deliberating all hearing

in haec verba prorupit: Obsecro, domne imperator, ut
into these words burst-out I-beseech lord emperor that

secundum promissionem vestram concedatis mihi unam
according-to promise your you-grant to-me one
 petitionem parvulam. Et rex ait: Postula, quodcunque
petition little and the-king said ask whatever
 volueris, et impetrabis; praeter quod contra legem Grecorum
you-may-wish and you-will-obtain except that against the-law of-the-Greeks
 vitam tibi concedere non possum. Tum ille: Hoc inquit
life to-you to-grant not I-can then be this be-says
 unum moriturus flagito: ut, quicumque me piscem illum girare
one about-to-die I-demand that whoever me the-fish that to-turn
 conspexit, oculorum lumine privetur. Obstupefactus rex ad
saw of-the-eyes of-the-light be-deprived astounded the-king at
 talem conditionem, iuravit per Christum, quod ipse hoc
such a-condition swore by Christ that he-himself this
 non videret sed tantum narrantibus crederet. Deinde regina
not saw but only to-those-telling believed then the-queen
 ita se coepit excusare: Per laeticam theotocon, sanctam
so herself began to-excuse by the-gladdening God-bearer holy
 Mariam, ego illud non adverti. Post reliqui proceres,
Mary I it not noticed afterward the-remaining nobles
 alius ante alium tali se periculo exuere cupientes, hic
one before another from-such themselves danger to-free desiring this-one
 per clavigerum coeli, ille per doctorem gentium, reliqui
by the-key-bearer of-heaven that-one by the-teacher of-the-nations the-rest
 per virtutes angelicas sanctorumque omnium turbas ab hac
by the-virtues angelic and-of-the-saints all the-crowds from this
 se noxa terribilibus sacramentis absolvere conabantur. Tum
themselves guilt with-terrible oaths to-absolve tried then
 sapiens ille Francigena, vanissima Hellade in suis sedibus
wise that Frank most-vain Hellas in its-own seats
 exsuperata, victor et sanus in patriam suam reversus est.
overcome victor and safe into homeland his-own returned has

Post annos autem aliquot direxit illuc indefessus Karolus

after years moreover some sent thither the-tireless Charles

quendam episcopum, praecellentissimum mente et corpore

a-certain bishop most-excellent in-mind and body

virum, adiuncto ei comite nobilissimo duce Hugone.

a-man joined to-him as-companion the-most-noble duke Hugh

Qui, diutissime protracti, tandem ad praesentiam regis

who very-long delayed at-last to the-presence of-the-king

perducti et indigne habiti, per diversissima sunt loca

brought and unworthily treated through most-diverse were places

divisi. Tandem vero aliquando dimissi, cum magno navis

divided at-last but at-some-time dismissed with great of-ship

et rerum spendio redierunt.

and of-goods loss they-retained

Non post multum autem direxit idem rex legatarios suos

not after much moreover sent the-same king envoys his-own

ad gloriosissimum Karolum. Forte vero contigit, ut tunc

to the-most-glorious Charles by-chance but it-happened that then

idem episcopus cum duce praefato apud imperatorem

the-same bishop with the-duke aforesaid with the-emperor

fuissent. Nunciatis igitur legatis venturis, dederunt consilium

had-been announced therefore the-envoys about-to-come they-gave counsel

sapientissimo Karolo: ut circumducerentur per alpes et

to-the-most-wise Charles that they-should-be-led-around through the-Alps and

invia, donec, attritis omnibus et consumptis, ingenti

pathless-places until worn-down all and consumed by-huge

penuria confecti ad conspectum illius venire cogerentur.

want exhausted to the-sight of-him to-come they-should-be-compelled

Cumque tandem venissent, fecit idem episcopus vel socius

and-when at-last they-had-come caused the-same bishop or companion

eius comitem stabuli in medio subiectorum suorum sublimi

his the-count of-the-stable in the-middle of-subordinates his-own on-a-lofty

throno considerare, ut nequaquam alius quam imperator
throne to-sit that by-no-means other than the-emperor
 credi potuisset. Quem ut legati viderunt, corruentes
to-be-believed he-could-have whom when the-envoys saw falling
 in terram adorare voluerunt. Sed a ministris repulsi, ad
to the-ground to-adore they-wished but by the-attendants pushed-back to
 anteriora progredi sunt compulsi. Quo cum venirent,
the-farther-parts to-advance they-were compelled whither when they-came
 videntes comitem palatii in medio procerum concionantem,
seeing the-count of-the-palace in the-midst-of the-nobles haranguing
 imperatorem suspicati, terratenus sunt prostrati. Cumque
the-emperor having-suspected to-the-ground they-were prostrated and-when
 et inde colaphis propellerentur, dicentibus qui aderant: Non
also thence with-blows they-were-driven saying those-who were-present not
 hic est imperator, in ulteriora progressi et invenientes
here is the-emperor into the-farther-parts having-advanced and finding
 magistrum mensae regiae cum ministris ornatissimis, putantes
the-master of-the-table royal with attendants most-adorned thinking
 imperatorem, devoluti sunt in humum. Indeque repulsi,
the-emperor rolled-down they-were onto the-ground and-thence pushed-back
 reppererunt in consistorio cubicularios imperatoris circa
they-found in the-consistory the-chamberlains of-the-emperor around
 magistrum suum, de quo non videretur dubium, quin ille
master their-own of whom not it-seemed doubtful but-that he
 princeps posset esse mortalium. Qui, cum se quod non erat
the-prince could to-be of-mortals who when himself what not he-was
 abnegaret, pollicebatur tamen, quod cum primoribus palatii
denied he-promised yet that with the-chief-men of-the-palace
 moliretur, quatinus, si fieri potuisset, in praesentiam
he-would-strive so-that if to-be-done it-could into the-presence
 imperatoris augustissimi pervenire deberent. Tunc ex latere
of-the-emperor most-august to-come they-should then from the-side

caesaris directi sunt, qui eos honorifice introducerent.
of-the-caesar sent were men-who them honorably should-bring-in
 Stabat autem gloriosissimus regum Karolus iuxta fenestram
stood moreover the-most-glorious of-kings Charles beside a-window
 lucidissimam, radians sicut sol in ortu suo, gemmis
most-bright radiant as the-sun in rising its-own with-gems
 et auro conspicuus, innixus super Heitonem; hoc quippe
and gold conspicuous leaning upon Heito this indeed
 nomen erat episcopi ad Constantinopolim quondam destinati.
the-name was of-the-bishop to Constantinople formerly sent
 In cuius undique circuitu consistebat instar militiae coelestis,
in whose on-all-sides circuit stood like the-army heavenly
 tres videlicet iuvenes filii eius, iam regni participes
three namely youths sons of-him already of-the-kingdom sharers
 effecti, filiaeque cum matre non minus sapientia vel
made and-the-daughters with the-mother no less with-wisdom or
 pulchritudine quam monilibus ornatae, pontifices forma et
beauty than with-necklaces adorned bishops in-form and
 virtutibus incomparabiles, praestantissimique nobilitate simul
virtues incomparable and-most-outstanding in-nobility together
 et sanctitate abbates; duces vero tales, qualis quondam
and holiness abbots dukes but such as once
 apparuit Iosue in castris Galgalae; exercitus vero talis,
appeared Joshua in the-camp of-Gilgal the-army but such
 qualis de Samaria Siros cum Assiriis effugavit; ut, si
as from Samaria the-Syrians with the-Assyrians put-to-flight so-that if
 David medius esset, haec non inmerito praecinisset:
David in-the-middle were these-things not undeservedly he-would-have-sung
 Reges terrae et omnes populi, principes et omnes
kings of-the-earth and all peoples princes and all
 iudices terrae, iuvenes et virgines, senes cum iunioribus
judges of-the-earth young-men and maidens old-men with the-younger

laudent nomen Domini. Tunc consternati missi Grecorum,
let-them-praise the-name of-the-Lord then dismayed the-envoys of-the-Greeks
 deficiente spiritu et consilio perduto, muti et exanimes
failing with-breath and with-counsel lost dumb and lifeless
 in pavementum deciderunt. Quos benignissimus imperator
onto the-pavement fell whom the-most-kind emperor
 elevatos consolatoriis allocutionibus animare conatus est.
raised with-consoling addresses to-revive tried has
 Tandem itaque recreato spiritu, cum exosum quondam et
at-last and-so recovered the-breath when bated formerly and
 abiectum a se Heitonem in tali gloria vidissent, iterum
cast-off by themselves Heito in such glory they-had-seen again
 pavefacti tam diu volutabantur humi, donec eis rex
terrified so long they-were-rolling on-the-ground until to-them the-king
 per regem coelorum iuraret, nihil se illis mali in nullo
by the-king of-heaven swore nothing himself to-them of-evil in nothing
 aliquo facturum. Qua sponsione roborati, aliquantulum
whatever about-to-do by-which pledge strengthened somewhat
 fiducialius agere coeperunt. Patriamque reversi, non
more-confidently to-act they-began and-to-their-homeland having-retuned not
 sunt ulterius ad nostra progressi.
they-have further to our-parts advanced
 Hic replicandum videtur, quam sapientissimos homines
here to-be-unfolded it-seems how most-wise men
 praeclarissimus Karolus habuerit in omnibus.
the-most-illustrious Charles had in all-things

When the Greek envoys sing antiphons in their own language at the octave of the Theophany, Charles has a chaplain who knows Greek translate them into Latin, a syllable for each note, which is why they share one tone. The envoys also bring instruments, which Charles's craftsmen copy, above all an organ with bronze casks and bellows that roars like thunder and chatters like a lyre; how it was lost is not for this place.

Cum igitur Greci post matutinas laudes imperatori
when therefore the-Greeks after the-morning lauds for-the-emperor
 celebratas in octava die theophaniae secreto in sua lingua
celebrated on the-octave day of-the-Theophany secretly in their-own language
 Deo psallerent antiphonas eius melodiae et materiae, cuius
to-God were-chanting antiphons of-that melody and matter of-which
 sunt: Veterem hominem cum sequentibus, precepit imperator
are the-old man with the-following commanded the-emperor
 capellano cuidam suo Grecismi perito: ut ipsam materiam
to-a-chaplain a-certain his-own of-Greek skilled that the-very matter
 in eadem modulatione Latinis redderet, et singulis eius
in the-same modulation into-Latin he-should-render and to-the-single of-its
 modulaminis motibus singulas syllabas dare sollicite curaret,
tune movements single syllables to-give carefully take-care
 ne, quantum natura sineret, in illo dissimiles forent.
lest as-far-as nature allowed in that unlike they-should-be
 Inde est, quod omnes eiusdem sunt toni, et quod in
from-this it-is that all of-the-same are tone and that in
 una ipsarum pro contrivit „conteruit“ positum invenitur.
one of-them for contrivit conteruit placed is-found
 Adduxerunt etiam idem praefati Grecorum missi omne genus
brought also the-same aforesaid of-the-Greeks envoys every kind
 organorum sed et variarum rerum secum. Quae cuncta
of-instruments but also of-various things with-themselves which all

ab opificibus sagacissimi Karoli, quasi dissimulanter aspecta,
by the-craftsmen of-the-most-shrewd Charles as-if without-remark looked-at
 accuratissime sunt in opus conversa; et praecipue illud
most-carefully were into work turned and especially that
 musicorum organum praestantissimum, quod, doliis ex aere
of-the-musicians organ most-excellent which with-casks from bronze
 conflatis follibusque taurinis per fistulas aereas mire
cast and-bellows of-bull's-hide through pipes bronze wonderfully
 perflantibus, rugitum quidem tonitruui boatu, garrulitatem vero
blowing the-roar indeed of-thunder in-booming the-chatter but
 lyrae vel cymbali dulcedine coaequabat. Quod ubi positum
of-the-lyre or of-the-cymbal in-sweetness equaled which where placed
 fuerit quamdiuque duraverit et quomodo inter alia rei
it-was and-how-long it-lasting and how among other of-the-state
 publicae damna perierit, non est huius loci vel temporis enarrare.
public losses it-perished not is of-this place or time to-relate

VIII · THE PERSIAN ENVOYS

Persian envoys find Charles at Aachen at Easter and say they have seen earthen men before and now see golden ones. When a beast grazes Charles's leg on the hunt, the disgraced Isambard kills it, and the queen wins back his honors. The envoys bring gifts, say the East fears Charles more than Harun, and complain of his nobles, whom Charles strips and fines.

Per idem tempus etiam legati Persarum ad eum directi
through the-same time also envoys of-the-Persians to him sent
 sunt. Qui, situm Franciae nescientes, pro magno duxerunt,
were who the-position of-Francia not-knowing for great held-it
 si litus Italiae propter famositatem Romae, cui
if the-shore of-Italy on-account-of the-fame of-Rome over-which

tunc illum imperare cognoverant, apprehendere valuissent.

then him to-rule they-had-learned to-reach they-had-been-able

Cumque episcopis Campaniae vel Tusciae, Emiliae vel Liguriae

and-when to-the-bishops of-Campania or of-Tuscany of-Emilia or of-Liguria

Burgundiaeque sive Galliae, simul et abbatibus vel comitibus

and-of-Burgundy or of-Gaul together and to-the-abbots or counts

causam adventus sui indicassent, dissimulanterque ab

the-cause of-the-coming their-own they-had-indicated and-without-remark by

eisdem suscepti vel repulsi fuissent, tandem post anni

the-same received or repulsed they-had-been at-last after of-a-year

revolutum circulum apud Aquasgrani famosissimum virtutibus

the-revolved circle at Aachen most-famous for-virtues

Karolum, defessi et nimio defecti circuitu, reppererunt.

Charles tired and by-excessive worn-out circuit they-found

Venerunt autem illuc in maioris quadragesimae ebdomada

they-came moreover thither in of-the-greater Lent the-week

maiori. Nuntiatique imperatori, dilati sunt ab eius

greater and-announced to-the-emperor put-off they-were from his

conspectu usque in vigiliam paschae. Cumque in festivitate

sight up-to into the-vigil of-Easter and-when on the-festival

praecipua incomparabilis ille incomparabiliter adornatus

chief incomparable that-one incomparably adorned

fuisse, iussit introduci personas eius gentis, quae cuncto

had-been he-ordered to-be-brought-in the-persons of-that people which to-the-whole

quondam esset orbi terribilis. Quibus tamen excellentissimus

formerly was world terrifying to-whom yet the-most-excellent

Karolus ita terrificus videbatur prae omnibus, quasi nunquam

Charles so terrifying seemed beyond all as-if never

regem vel imperatorem prius vidissent. Quos ille blande

a-king or emperor before they-had-seen whom he kindly

susceptos hoc munere ditavit: ut, quasi unus de filiis eius,

received with-this gift enriched that as-if one of the-sons of-him

ubicunque vellent ambulandi et singula quaeque perspicendi
wherever they-wished of-walking and each thing of-viewing
 et quaecunque rogandi vel interrogandi licentiam habent.
and whatever of-asking or of-inquiring license they-should-have
 Quo tripudio gestientes, ipsi adherere, ipsum inspicere
at-which joy exulting to-him to-cling him to-look-at
 ipsumque admirari cunctis orientalibus praeposuerunt divitiis.
and-him to-admire to-all eastern they-preferred riches
 Ascendentesque in solarium, quod ambit aedem basilicae,
and-ascending into the-gallery which surrounds the-building of-the-basilica
 et inde despectantes clerum vel exercitum, iterumque ad
and thence looking-down-on the-clergy or the-army and-again to
 imperatorem regredientes, propterque leticiae magnitudinem
the-emperor returning and-because-of of-joy the-greatness
 risum retinere nequeunt, complois manibus aiebant: Prius
laughter to-hold not-being-able with-clapped hands they-said before
 terreos tantum homines vidimus, nunc autem aureos. Deinde
earthen only men we-saw now moreover golden then
 ad singulos procerum accedentes, novitatemque vestimentorum
to each of-the-nobles approaching and-the-novelty of-the-garments
 sive armorum admirati, ad mirabiliorem sunt augustum
or of-the-arms having-admired to the-more-wonderful they-have augustus
 regressi. Quod cum eadem nocte et sequenti dominica
returned which when on-the-same night and on-the-following Sunday
 pasce iugiter in ecclesia facerent, in ipsa sacrosancta die
of-Easter continually in the-church they-did on that-very sacrosanct day
 ad opipare convivium opulentissimi Karoli cum Franciae
to the-sumptuous feast of-the-most-opulent Charles with of-Francia

Europaeque proceribus sunt invitati. Inde vero insolitarum

and-of-Europe the-nobles they-were invited thence but of-unusual

rerum miraculo percussi, propemodum exsurrexere ieiuni.

things by-the-wonder struck almost they-rose fasting

Postera Phebea spargebat lampade terras,

the-next with-Phoebean was-sprinkling lamp the-lands

Titoni croceum linquens Aurora cubile,

of-Titbonus the-saffron leaving Dawn bed

cum ecce quietis et otii impatientissimus Karolus ad

when behold of-quiet and of-leisure most-impatient Charles to

venatum bissonium vel urorum in nemus ire et Persarum

the-hunting of-bison or of-aurochs into the-forest to-go and of-the-Persians

nuncios secum parat educere. Qui cum ingentia illa viderent

the-envoys with-himself prepares to-lead-out who when huge those they-saw

animalia, nimio pavore percussi, in fugam conversi sunt.

animals with-excessive fear struck into flight turned were

At non territus heros Karolus, ut in equo sedebat acerrimo,

but not terrified the-hero Charles as on the-horse he-sat most-spirited

appropinquans uni eorum, extracta spata cervicem eius

approaching one of-them drawn the-sword the-neck of-it

abscidere conabatur. Sed frustrato ictu, galliculam regis

to-cut-off tried but frustrated the-blow the-boot of-the-king

et fasciolam ferus immanissimus dirumpens tibiamque illius

and band the-beast most-monstrous tearing and-the-leg of-him

summo licet cornu perstringens, paulo tardiore reddidit;

with-the-tip although of-the-born grazing a-little slower rendered

et in convallem tutissimam, lignis et lapidibus asperatam,

and into a-valley most-safe with-trees and stones made-rough

casso vulnere irritatus aufugit. Cumque ad obsequium domini

with-vain wound irritated fled and-when to the-service of-the-lord

cuncti pene hossas suas vellent extrahere, ille prohibuit,
all almost hosed their-own wished to-draw-off he forbade
 dicens: Sic affectus ad Hildigardam venire debeo. Consecutus
saying thus affected to Hildegard to-come I-ought having-pursued
 autem feram Isambardo filius Warini, persecutoris patroni vestri
moreover the-beast Isambard the-son of-Warin the-persecutor of-patron your
 Othmari, cum propius non fuisset ausus accedere, librata lancea
Othmar when nearer not he-had dared to-approach poised the-lance
 inter armum et guttur cor eius penetravit et imperatori
between the-shoulder and the-throat the-heart of-it pierced and to-the-emperor
 palpitantem consignavit. Quod cum ille quasi non advertisset,
quivering delivered which when he as-if not he-had-noticed
 cadavere sociis relicto, reversus est domum; advocataque
the-carcass to-the-companions left returned has home and-summoned
 regina, ostendit ocreas disruptas et dixit ei: Quid dignus
the-queen showed the-greaves torn and said to-her what worthy
 est, qui de hoste haec infligente me liberavit? Illaque
is he-who from the-enemy these-things inflicting me freed and-she
 respondente: Omni bono, enarravit imperator cuncta per
answering of-every good-thing related the-emperor all-things through
 ordinem; et immanissimis cornibus in testimonium prolatis,
order and with-the-most-monstrous horns as testimony brought-forth
 ad lacrimas et suspiria pugnosque pectoris dominatricem coegit.
to tears and sighs and-blows of-the-breast the-mistress compelled
 Quae cum audisset, quod tunc odibilis et cunctis honoribus
who when she-had-heard that then hated and of-all honors
 exspoliatus Isambardo imperatorem de tali adversario vindicasset,
stripped Isambard the-emperor on such an-adversary had-avenged
 eius pedibus advoluta, impetravit ei omnia, quaecunque
of-him at-the-feet rolled obtained for-him all-things whatever
 illi fuerant ablata; sed et ipsa eidem est munera largita.
from-him had-been taken but also she-herself to-the-same has gifts bestowed

Attulerunt autem idem Persae imperatori elephantum et
brought moreover the-same Persians to-the-emperor an-elephant and
 simias, opobalsamum, nardum, unguentaque varia, pigmenta,
monkeys balsam nard and-ointments various spices
 odoramenta vel medicamenta diversissima; adeo ut orientem
perfumes or medicines most-diverse so-much that the-east
 evacuasse et occidentem viderentur implesse. Cumque multa
to-have-emptied and the-west they-seemed to-have-filled and-when much
 apud imperatorem familiaritate uti coepissent, quadam die,
with the-emperor familiarity to-enjoy they-had-begun on-a-certain day
 cum iam laetiores essent et graecingario fortiori incaluissent,
when already more-merry they-were and with-Greek-wine stronger had-grown-warm
 ad Karolum, serietate sobrietateque semper armatum,
to Charles with-seriousness and-sobriety always armed
 ioculariter haec prolocuti sunt: Magna quidem est, o
jestingly these-things spoke-out have great indeed is O
 imperator, potentia vestra, sed multo minor rumore, quo
emperor power your but much less than-the-rumor by-which
 apud orientalia regna diffamati polletis. Quo ille audito et
among the-eastern kingdoms spread-abroad you-are-strong which he heard and
 profundissima indignatione dissimulata, ioculariter inquisivit
the-deepest indignation dissembled jestingly inquired
 ab eis: Cur ita filii mei dicitis? vel hoc vobis unde videtur?
of them why so sons my do-you-say or this to-you whence does-it-seem
 At illi, repetentes a principio, narraverunt ei cuncta, quae
but they repeating from the-beginning narrated to-him all-things which
 sibi in cismarinis partibus contigerunt; dicentes: Nos
to-themselves in the-cismarine parts happened saying we
 Persae vel Medi Armeniique vel Indi, Parthi et Elamitae
Persians or Medes and-Armenians or Indians Parthians and Elamites
 omnesque orientales multo magis vos quam dominatorem
and-all easterners much more you than lord

nostrum Aaron timemus. De Macedonibus autem vel omnibus
our Harun fear about the-Macedonians moreover or all
 Achivis quid dicamus? qui iam iamque magnitudinem vestram
the-Achaeans what shall-we-say who now and-now the-greatness your
 plus se fluctibus Ioniis oppressuram pavitant. Insulani
more themselves than-the-waves Ionian about-to-crush dread the-islanders
 autem omnes, per quos iter habuimus, ad obsequium
moreover all through whom journey we-had to service
 vestrum ita prompti sunt et intenti, quasi in palacio vestro
your so ready are and intent as-if in palace your
 nutriti fuerint et beneficiis ingentibus honorati. Istarum
brought-up they-had-been and with-benefits huge honored of-these
 autem partium primores, ut nobis videtur, non satis curant
moreover parts the-chief-men as to-us it-seems not enough care
 de vobis, nisi tantum in praesentia vestra. Nam cum
about you except only in presence your for when
 eis, utpote peregrini, perinde suggereremus, ut aliquid
to-them as foreigners in-the-same-way we-suggested that some
 nobis humanitatis in vestri amore, quoniam vos quaereremus,
to-us of-kindness in your love since you we-were-seeking
 exhibere dignarentur, inadiutos et vacuos dimiserunt. Tunc
to-show they-might-deign unbelped and empty they-dismissed then
 imperator omnes comites et abbates, per quos idem missi
the-emperor all counts and abbots through whom the-same envoys
 profecti sunt, cunctis honoribus denudavit; episcopos autem
traveled they-have of-all honors stripped the-bishops moreover
 infinita pecunia multavit; legatos vero cum ingenti cautela
with-boundless money fined the-envoys but with huge caution
 et honore ad usque proprios fines deduci praecepit.
and honor to all-the-way their-own borders to-be-escorted he-commanded

The king of Africa sends Charles a lion and a bear, and Charles sends the Africans grain, wine, and oil. To the Persian emperor he sends horses, Frisian cloaks, and dogs. When the dogs seize a lion and the Franks kill it, Harun says Charles tames all things, and gives him the Holy Land, himself its steward. So envoys travel easily between Parthia and Germany.

Venerunt quoque ad eum legatarii regis Afrorum,
came also to him envoys of-the-king of-the-Africans
 deferentes leonem Marmaricum ursumque Numidicum cum
bringing a-lion Marmarican and-a-bear Numidian with
 ferrugine Hibera Tyrioque murice et caeteris earundem
rust-red Spanish and-Tyrian purple and the-other of-the-same
 regionum insignibus. Quem liberalissimus Karolus Libicosque
regions distinctive-things whom the-most-generous Charles and-the-Libians
 omnes iugi penuria semper confectos Europe divitiis,
all by-continual want always worn-out of-Europe with-the-riches
 frumento videlicet vino et oleo, non solum tunc sed et
grain namely wine and oil not only then but also
 omni tempore vitae suae remunerans et larga manu
in-all the-time of-life his-own rewarding and with-generous hand
 sustentans, subiectos sibi atque fideles in perpetuum
sustaining subject to-himself and faithful for ever
 retentavit; et ab eis non vilia tributa suscepit.
kept and from them not cheap tributes received
 Porro autem imperatori Persarum direxit indefessus augustus
further moreover to-the-emperor of-the-Persians sent the-tireless augustus
 equos et mulos Hispanos; palliaque Fresonica, alba, cana,
horses and mules Spanish and-cloaks Frisian white gray
 vermiculata vel saphirina, quae in illis partibus rara et
scarlet or sapphire which in those parts rare and

multum cara comperit; canes quoque agilitate et ferocia
very dear he-learned dogs also in-agility and ferocity
 singulares, quales ipse prius ad capiendos vel propellendos
singular such-as he-himself before for catching or driving-off
 leones et tigrides postulavit. Qui, caeteris muneribus quasi
lions and tigers had-asked who the-other gifts as-if
 neglegenter inspectis, requisivit a missis, quas feras et
negligently looked-at asked of the-envoys what wild-beasts and
 bestias canes illi debellare solerent. Cumque responsum
beasts dogs those to-overcome were-accustomed and-when the-answer
 acciperet, quia cuncta, quibus inmissi fuissent, absque mora
he-received that all-things on-which let-loose they-had-been without delay
 discernerent, Hoc inquit rei probabit eventus. Et ecce
they-tore-apart this he-says of-the-thing will-prove the-outcome and behold
 crastina die factus est maximus pastorum clamor, a facie
on-the-next day made was the-greatest of-the-shepherds about from the-face
 leonis fugientium. Quod cum in aula regis fuisset auditum,
of-a-lion of-them-fleeing which when in the-hall of-the-king had-been heard
 dixit ad legatos: O socii Franci, ascendite in equos vestros
he-said to the-envoys O comrades Franks mount onto horses your
 et exite post me. Qui statim, quasi nihil umquam laboris
and come-out after me who at-once as-if nothing ever of-labor
 aut lassitudinis passi fuissent, alacriter sunt regem prosecuti.
or of-weariness suffered they-had eagerly have the-king followed
 Cum autem ad conspectum leonis, eminus licet, ventum
when moreover to the-sight of-the-lion from-afar although come
 fuisset, dixit satraparum satrapa: Instigate canes vestros in
it-had-been said of-satraps the-satrap urge-on dogs your against
 leonem. Qui, iussa complentes et acerrime advolantes, a
the-lion who the-commands fulfilling and most-fiercely flying-at by
 Germanicis canibus Persicum leonem comprehensum Yperboreae
the-German dogs the-Persian lion seized of-Hyperborean

venae gladiis in Saxonum duratis sanguine peremerunt.
of-vein by-the-swords in of-the-Saxons hardened blood they-killed

Quo viso, nominis sui fortissimus heres Aaron, ex rebus
which seen of-name his-own the-bravest heir Harun from things

minimis fortiozem Karolumprehendens, his verbis in eius
very-small the-stronger Charles perceiving in-these words in his

favorem prorupit: Nunc cognosco, quam sint vera, quae
favor burst-forth now I-know how are true the-things-which

audivi de fratre meo Karolo; quia scilicet assiduitate venandi
I-heard of brother my Charles that namely by-assiduity of-hunting

et infatigabili studio corpus et animam exercendi cuncta,
and by-tireless zeal the-body and the-soul of-exercising all-things

quae sub coelo sunt, consuetudinem habet edomandi. Quid
which under heaven are the-habit he-has of-taming what

igitur ei possum condignum rependere, qui ita me curavit
therefore to-him can-I worthy to-repay who so me took-care

honorare? Si terram promissam Abrahae et exhibitam Iosuae
to-honor if the-land promised to-Abraham and shown to-Josua

dedero illi, propter longinquitatem locorum non potest eam
I-shall-give to-him on-account-of the-distance of-the-places not he-can it

defensare a barbaris; vel si iuxta magnanimitatem suam
to-defend from the-barbarians or if according-to magnanimity his-own

defendere coeperit, timeo, ne finitimae regno Francorum
to-defend he-begins I-fear lest bordering on-the-kingdom of-the-Franks

provinciae discedant ab eius imperio. Sed tamen hoc modo
provinces depart from his empire but yet in-this way

liberalitati eius gratificari temptabo. Dabo quidem illam
to-the-generosity of-him to-show-gratitude I-shall-try I-will-give indeed it

in eius potestatem, et ego advocatus eius ero super eam;
into his power and I advocate of-him I-will-be over it

ipse vero, quandocunque voluerit vel sibi oportuna
he-himself but whenever he-may-wish or to-himself suitable

visum fuerit, dirigat ad me legatos suos, et fidelissimum
seemed shall-have-been let-him-send to me envoys his-own and most-faithful
 me procuratorem eiusdem provinciae reddituum inveniet. Hoc
me the-steward of-the-same province of-revenues he-will-find in-this
 ergo modo factum est, ut, quod pro impossibili dixit poeta:
therefore way done it-was that what as impossible said the-poet

Aut Ararim Parthus bibet aut Germania Tigrim,
either the-Arar the-Parthian shall-drink or Germany the-Tigris

propter industriam vigorosissimi Karoli et itus et reditus
on-account-of the-diligence of-the-most-vigorous Charles both the-going and return
 legatorum eius et profectio et reversio missorum Aaron
of-the-envoys of-him and the-setting-out and returning of-the-envoys of-Harun
 de Parthia in Germaniam sive de Germania in Parthiam
from Parthia into Germany or from Germany into Parthia
 iuvenibus pueris et senioribus non solum possibilis sed et
to-young-men to-boys and to-old-men not only possible but also
 facillimus videretur omnino; utrumlibet Ararim quidem velint
very-easy seemed altogether either the-Arar indeed may-wish
 accipere grammatici, eum videlicet qui Rhenum vel illum
to-take the-grammarians that-one namely which into-the-Rhine or that-one
 qui Rhodanum precipitat, quia hoc locorum confuderunt
which into-the-Rhône plunges because this of-places they-confused
 ignari. Ad huius rei testimonium totam ciebo Germaniam;
ignorant to of-this thing testimony all I-will-summon Germany
 quae temporibus gloriosissimi patris vestri Hludowici de
which in-the-times of-the-most-glorious father your Louis from
 singulis huobis possessionum legalium singulos denarios
each hide of-holdings lawful each penny
 reddere compulsa est, qui darentur ad redemptionem
to-pay compelled was which should-be-given for the-redemption

christianorum, terram repromissionis incolentium, hoc pro
of-the-Christians the-land of-promise inhabiting this for
 antiqua dominatione atavi vestri Karoli avique vestri
the-ancient dominion of-forefather your Charles and-of-grandfather your
 Hludowici ab eo miserabiliter implorantium.
Louis from him pitiably imploring

X • THE PROPHECY OF LOUIS

When Louis the German is six, his father brings him to court. Charles kisses him and sends him back; the boy, knowing his new rank, stands level with his father, saying that as his father's vassal he stood with his fellows, but as his comrade he stands beside him. Charles declares that he will be something great. Louis later becomes Saint Gall's advocate.

Et quia ita se obtulit occasio, ut de indicibili patre
and because so itself offered the-occasion that of indescribable father
 vestro incideret honoranda mentio, libet commemorare
your should-fall to-be-honored mention it-pleases to-recall
 praesagium, quod de illo sapientissimum constat protulisse
the-prophecy which about him the-most-wise it-is-agreed to-have-uttered
 Karolum. Nam cum, natus et sex annis in domo patris
Charles for when born and for-six years in the-house of-the-father
 cautissime nutritus, sexagenariis hominibus sapientior haut
most-carefully brought-up than-sixty-year-old men wiser not
 inmerito videretur, genitor indulgentissimus, qui hoc vix
undeservedly he-seemed the-father most-indulgent who this scarcely
 egre expectaret, ut ad conspectum avi eum
with-difficulty awaited that to the-sight of-the-grandfather him
 perducere potuisset, assumens puerum a matre delicatissime
to-bring he-might-be-able taking the-boy by the-mother most-delicately

curatum coepit instruere, quam serie vel quam timorate
cared-for began to-instruct in-what order or how fearfully
 ante imperatorem se agere aut, forte interrogatus, ei
before the-emperor himself to-conduct or perhaps asked to-him
 respondere nec non et sibi deferre deberet. Et sic eum
to-answer nor not also to-himself to-defer be-ought and so him
 ad palatium produxit. Cumque prima die vel secunda inter
to the-palace brought-forth and-when on-the-first day or the-second among
 reliquos statores eum imperator curiosioribus oculis intueretur,
the-other attendants him the-emperor with-more-curious eyes regarded
 dixit ad filium: Cuius est ille puerulus? Illo respondente: Quia
he-said to the-son whose is that little-boy he answering that
 meus et vester, si dignamini, postulabat eum, dicens: Da
mine and yours if you-deign he-was-asking-for him saying give
 illum mihi. Quod cum factum fuisset, deosculatum serenissimus
him to-me which when done had-been kissed the-most-serene
 augustus pusionem remisit ad stationem pristinam. Ille, mox
augustus the-little-fellow sent-back to the-station former he soon
 dignitatem suam cognoscens et cuiquam post imperatorem
dignity his-own knowing and to-anyone after the-emperor
 secundus remanere despiciens, collectis animis et membris
second to-remain scorning gathered the-spirits and the-limbs
 compositissime collocatis, aequato gradu stetit iuxta patrem
most-composedly placed with-equal step stood beside father
 suum. Quod providentissimus aspectans Karolus vocato ad
his-own which the-most-provident observing Charles called to
 se filio Hludowico praecepit, ut interrogaret cognominem
himself the-son Louis commanded that he-should-ask namesake
 suum, cur ita faceret vel qua fiducia se patri
his-own why so he-did or with-what confidence himself to-the-father
 adaequare praesumeret. Ille vero ratione subnixum reddidit
to-equal he-presumed he but by-reason supported gave

responsum: Quando inquiring vester eram vassallus, post vos
an-answer when saying your I-was vassal after you
 ut oportuit inter commilitones meos steteram; nunc autem,
as it-behooved among fellow-soldiers my I-had-stood now moreover
 vester socius et commilito, non inmerito me vobis coaequo.
your comrade and fellow-soldier not undeservedly myself to-you I-equal
 Quod cum Hludowicus imperatori retulisset, ille huiusmodi
which when Louis to-the-emperor had-reported he of-this-kind
 sententiam promulgavit: Si vixerit puerulus iste, aliquid magni
a-sentence published if he-lives little-boy this something great
 erit. Quae verba ideo de Ambrosio mutuati sumus,
he-will-be which words for-that-reason from Ambrose borrowed we-have
 quia, Karolus quae dixit, non possunt ex amussim in Latinum
because Charles what he-said not can by the-rule into Latin
 converti. Nec inmerito prophetiam de sancto Ambrosio
to-be-turned nor undeservedly a-prophecy about saint Ambrose
 magno accommodaverim Hludowico, qui — exceptis eis rebus
great I-would-apply to-Louis who excepted those things
 et negociis, sine quibus res publica terrena non subsistit,
and affairs without which the-state public earthly not subsists
 coniugio videlicet usuque armorum — per omnia simillimus
marriage namely and-the-use of-arms in all-things most-like
 immo etiam quantum potentia regni tantum religionis
may even as-much-as in-power of-kingdom so-much of-religion
 studio, si dici liceat, quodammodo maior exstiterit
in-zeal if to-be-said it-be-permitted in-a-way greater stood
 Ambrosio; fide scilicet catholicus, Dei cultor eximius,
than-Ambrose in-faith namely catholic of-God a-worshiper outstanding
 servorum Christi socius tutor et defensor indefessus.
of-the-servants of-Christ comrade guardian and defender tireless

Quod adeo verum est, ut, cum fidelis eius abba noster
which so true is that when faithful-man his abbot our
 Hartmutus, nunc autem vester inclusus, ei retulerit,
Hartmut now moreover your recluse to-him reported
 quod reiculae Sancti Galli, non ex regalibus donariis sed
that the-little-goods of-Saint Gall not from royal gifts but
 ex privatorum tradiciunculis collectae, nullum privilegium
from of-private-men little-donations gathered no privilege
 aliorum monasteriorum vel communes populorum cunctorum
of-other monasteries or the-common of-peoples all
 leges haberent et ideo neminem sui defensorem
laws had and therefore no-one of-themselves defender
 vel advocatum repperire potuissent, ipse, se cunctis
or advocate to-find had-been-able he-himself himself to-all
 adversariis nostris opponens, advocatum se vilitatis nostrae
adversaries our opposing advocate himself of-lowliness our
 coram cunctis principibus suis profiteri non erubuerit. Quo
before all princes his-own to-profess not blushed at-which
 etiam tempore epistolam ad vestram indolem direxit, ut
also time a-letter to your nobility he-sent that
 per vestram auctoritatem iuramento coacticio, quaecunque
through your authority by-oath compulsory whatever
 opus habuerimus, licenter quaerere deberemus. Sed heu,
need we-had freely to-seek we-ought but alas
 quam stultus ego, qui propter specialem benignitatem, ab
how foolish I who on-account-of the-special kindness by
 eo nobis praebitam, a generali et ineffabili eius bonitate
him to-us furnished from the-general and ineffable his goodness
 et magnitudine vel magnanimitate parum consulte, privato
and greatness or great-soulness little advisedly with-private
 gaudio retrahente, digressus sum.
joy drawing-back digressed I-have

Louis, king of all Germany, is stout and handsome, with radiant eyes and a manly voice, wise and quick to foresee plots. He sheds Christian blood only once and afterward will condemn no one to death. He walks barefoot in the litanies, builds chapels from city walls whose hollows yield gold, keeps no cleric who cannot read and sing, and corrects wrongs with a glance.

Erat itaque Hludowicus, rex vel imperator totius Germaniae
was and-so Louis king or emperor of-all Germany
 Rhetiarumque et antiquae Francia nec non Saxoniae Turingiae
and-of-the-Raetias and of-ancient Francia nor not of-Saxony of-Thuringia
 Norici Pannoniarum atque omnium septentrionalium nationum,
of-Noricum of-the-Pannonias and of-all northern nations
 statura opimus, forma decorus, oculis astrorum more
in-stature stout in-form handsome with-eyes of-stars in-the-manner
 radiantibus, voce clara et omnino virili, sapientia
radiant with-voice clear and altogether manly in-wisdom
 singularis; quam, acutissimo fretus ingenio, scripturarum
singular which on-the-sharpest relying intelligence of-the-scriptures
 assiduitate cumulationem reddere non cessabat. Ideoque ad
by-assiduity more-heaped-up to-render not he-ceased and-therefore for
 anticipandas vel superandas omnes inimicorum insidias et
anticipating or overcoming all of-the-enemies the-plots and
 subiectionum litigia terminanda, fidelibusque suis universa
of-the-subjects the-lawsuits to-be-ended and-for-the-faithful his-own all
 commoda providenda, incomparabili vivacitate pollebat. Cunctis
advantages to-be-provided with-incomparable liveliness he-was-strong to-all
 gentilibus circumquaque versis anterioribus suis magis
beathens round-about turned than-predecessors his-own more
 magisque terrificus subinde perseverabat. Et merito; quippe
and-more terrifying continually he-continued and deservedly since

qui nunquam linguam suam iudicio aut manus suas
who never tongue his-own with-judgment or hands his-own
 effusione sanguinis christiani commacularet praeter unam et
with-the-shedding of-blood Christian stained except one and
 ultimam quidem necessitatem. Quam prius enarrare non audeo,
last indeed necessity which before to-relate not I-dare
 quam aliquem parvulum Luthowicum vel Carolastrum vobis
than some little Louis or little-Charles to-you
 astantem video. Post quam tamen cedem nullo unquam modo
standing-by I-see after which yet slaughter in-no ever way
 compelli potuit, ut quempiam condemnaret ad mortem.
to-be-compelled he-could that anyone he-should-condemn to death
 Sed tamen hac districtione infidelitatis vel insidiarum
but yet with-this severity of-faithlessness or of-plots
 insimulatos coercere solebat, ut honoribus privatos,
accused to-restrain he-was-accustomed that of-honors deprived
 nulla unquam occasione vel temporis longitudine mollitus,
by-no ever occasion or of-time length softened
 ad pristinum gradum conscendere pateretur. Ad orationis
to the-former rank to-ascend he-allowed to the-zeal
 studium et devotionem ieiuniorum curamque servitii divini
of-prayer and the-devotion of-fasts and-the-care of-the-service divine
 supra omnes homines ita erat intentus, ut exemplo
above all men so was intent that by-the-example
 sancti Martini, quicquid aliud ageret, semper quasi praesenti
of-saint Martin whatever else he-did always as-if the-present
 Domino supplicare videretur. Carne et cibis lautioribus
Lord to-entreat he-seemed from-flesh and from-foods more-sumptuous
 diebus certis abstinuit. Tempore vero laetaniarum de palatio
on-days certain he-abstained in-the-time but of-the-litanies from the-palace
 discalciatiis pedibus usque ad ecclesiam pastorem vel ad
with-bared feet all-the-way to the-church pastoral or to

Sanctum Hemmerammum, si quidem esset Reganesburg,
Saint Emmeram if indeed he-was at-Regensburg
 crucem sequi solitus erat. In aliis vero locis commanentium
the-cross to-follow accustomed he-was in other but places of-those-dwelling
 consuetudinem non abnuebat. Oratoria nova ad Franconovurt
the-custom not he-refused chapels new at Frankfurt
 et Reganesburg admirabili opere construxit. Cumque ibi
and Regensburg with-admirable work he-built and-when there
 propter magnitudinem fabricae alii lapides non sufficerent,
on-account-of the-greatness of-the-building other stones not sufficed
 muros urbis destrui fecit. In quorum cavitatibus tantum
the-walls of-the-city to-be-destroyed he-caused in whose cavities so-much
 auri circa antiquorum ossa repperit, ut non solum eandem
of-gold around of-the-ancients the-bones he-found that not only the-same
 basilicam eodem adornaret sed et libros integros exinde
basilica with-the-same he-adorned but also books whole thence
 conscriptos thecis eiusdem materiae grossitudine prope digiti
written with-cases of-the-same material with-a-thickness nearly of-a-finger
 cooperiret. Nullus clericus, nisi legere doctus et canere, non
he-covered no cleric unless to-read taught and to-sing not
 solum cum eo manere sed ne in conspectum eius quidem
only with him to-stay but not into the-sight of-him even
 venire praesumpsit. Monachos vero voti sui praevaricatores
to-come presumed monks but of-vow their-own transgressors
 ita despexit, ut observatores omni affectu dilexit. Ita omni
so he-despised as the-keepers with-all affection he-loved so with-all
 iocunditate ac dulcedine plenus semper exstitit, ut, si quis ad
cheerfulness and sweetness full always he-was that if anyone to
 eum tristis adveniret, ex sola visione vel quantulacunque eius
him sad came from the-mere sight or however-small his
 allocutione laetificatus abscederet. Quodsi quid forte sinistrum
address gladdened he-went-away but-if anything perhaps untoward

vel ineptum in eius conspectu subito fieret vel eum aliunde
or foolish in his sight suddenly happened or him from-elsewhere
 comperisse contingeret, sola oculorum animadversione
to-have-learned it-happened by-the-mere of-the-eyes glance
 sic omnia correxerit, ut, quod de aeterno internoque iudice
so all-things be-corrected that what about the-eternal and-inner judge
 scriptum est: Rex, qui sedet in solio regni sui, intuitu
written is the-king who sits on the-throne of-kingdom his-own by-the-gaze
 vultus sui dissipat omne malum, supra fas mortalibus
of-face his-own scatters all evil beyond what-is-right to-mortals
 concessum in illo non ambigeretur inceptum. Haec
granted in him not it-could-be-doubted begun these-things
 breviter per excessum dixerim, vita comite propitiaque
briefly by digression I-would-say life accompanying and-propitious
 divinitate votum habens plurima de eo scribere.
divinity the-wish having very-many-things about him to-write

XII • MEASURED BY THE SWORD

When northern peoples raid, Charles has even the children measured against swords and those taller beheaded, and the memory later breaks a plot against his line. His hunchbacked son Pippin conspires against him and is sent to Saint Gall. Asked about a later conspiracy, Pippin, weeding his garden, answers only that he pulls up weeds, and Charles executes the plotters. Eisbere skewers Wends like frogs.

Ad propositum iam redeundum est. Inter ea cum imperator
to the-purpose now to-be-returned it-is among these-things when the-emperor
 Karolus propter adventantium frequentiam vel infestationem
Charles on-account-of of-the-arrivals the-frequency or the-attacks
 indomitissimorum Saxonum vel latrocinia pyratricamque
of-the-most-untamed Saxons or the-robberies and-piracy

Northmannorum sive Maurorum apud Aquasgrani paulo diutius
of-the-Northmen or of-the-Moors at Aachen a-little longer
 consedisset, bellum autem contra Hunos a filio eius Pippino
had-stayed the-war moreover against the-Huns by the-son of-him Pippin
 gereretur, exeuntes a septentrione barbarae nationes Noricum
was-being-waged going-out from the-north barbarous nations Noricum
 et orientalem Franciam magna ex parte depraedatae sunt.
and eastern Francia great from part plundered have
 Quod ille comperiens, per se ipsum ita omnes humiliavit, ut
whicb he learning by himself self so all humbled that
 etiam pueros et infantes ad spatias metiri praeciperet et,
even boys and infants by swords to-be-measured he-commanded and
 quicumque eandem mensuram excederet, capite plecteretur.
whoever the-same measure exceeded with-the-head should-be-punished
 De quo facto aliud multo maius et illustrius opus
from whicb deed another much greater and more-illustrious work
 excrevit. Cum enim sanctissimus avus imperii vestri vita
grew when for the-most-holy grandfather of-empire your from-life
 decederet, quidam gigantes — quales propter iracundiam
departed certain giants such-as on-account-of the-anger
 Dei per filios Seth de filiabus Cain narrat scriptura
of-God by the-sons of-Seth from the-daughters of-Cain tells scripture
 procreatos; spiritu superbiae inflati, eorum procul dubio
begotten by-the-spirit of-pride puffed-up of-them far from-doubt
 supparet, qui dixerunt: Quae nobis pars in David aut
the-equals who said what to-us part in David or
 quae hereditas in filio Isai? — eius prolem habitudinis
what inheritance in the-son of-Jesse his offspring of-condition
 optime despicientes, singuli sibi principatum regni
best despising each for-himself the-rule of-the-kingdom
 arripere et diadema portare conati sunt. Tunc quibusdam de
to-seize and the-diadem to-wear tried have then certain-ones of

mediocribus Dei instinctu protestantibus, quod inclitus
the-middling-men of-God at-the-prompting protesting that the-famous
 imperator Karolus hostes quondam christianorum metiretur
emperor Charles the-enemies formerly of-the-Christians measured
 ad spatam et idcirco, quam diu de progenie illius aliquis
by the-sword and therefore as long of the-offspring of-him anyone
 spatæ longitudinis inveniri posset, ille Francis immo
of-a-sword's length to-be-found could be over-the-Franks nay
 toti Germaniæ deberet imperare, factio illa diabolica, quasi
over-all Germany ought to-rule faction that diabolical as-if
 fulminis ictu percussa, est in diversa disiecta.
of-lightning by-a-stroke struck was in different-directions scattered
 Sed, extraneorum victor, Karolus a propriis est mira
but of-foreigners the-conqueror Charles by his-own was by-wonderful
 quidem sed cassa fraude circumventus. Nam de Sclavis ad
indeed but vain fraud circumvented for from the-Slavs to
 Reginam regressus, a filio, per concubinam progenito et
Regensburg having-retuned by a-son by a-concubine begotten and
 nomine gloriosissimi Pippini a matre ominaliter insignito,
with-the-name of-the-most-glorious Pippin by the-mother ominously marked
 pene captus et, quantum in eo fuit, est morti dampnatus.
almost captured and as-much-as in him lay was to-death condemned
 Quod hoc modo compertum est. Cum in ecclesia sancti
which in-this way discovered was when in the-church of-saint
 Petri, proceribus congregatis, de morte imperatoris consiliatus
Peter the-nobles gathered about the-death of-the-emperor taken-counsel
 fuisset, finito consilio, omnia tuta timens, iussit explorare,
he-had finished the-council all-things safe fearing he-ordered to-search
 si quis usquam in angulis aut subter altaribus fuisset
if anyone anywhere in corners or beneath altars had-been
 absconsus. Et ecce, ut timuerunt, invenerunt unum clericum
bidden and behold as they-feared they-found one cleric

subtus altare celatum; quem apprehendentes ad iusiurandum
under the-altar hidden whom seizing to an-oath
 compulerunt, ne proditor molitionis eorum fieret. Qui,
they-compelled lest the-betrayer of-the-plot of-them he-should-become who
 ne vitam perderet, ut dictaverunt, iurare non abnuit; sed
lest life he-should-lose as they-dictated to-swear not refused but
 illis recedentibus, iuramentum illud sacrilegum parvi pendens,
they withdrawing oath that sacrilegious at-little valuing
 ad palatium properavit. Cumque cum maxima difficultate
to the-palace hastened and-when with the-greatest difficulty
 per septem seras et ostia tandem ad cubiculum imperatoris
through seven bolts and doors at-last to the-bedchamber of-the-emperor
 penetrasset, pulsato aditu, vigilantissimum semper Karolum
he-had-penetrated knocked the-entrance the-most-watchful always Charles
 ad maximam perduxit admirationem, quis eo tempore
to the-greatest he-brought wonder who at-that time
 eum praesumeret inquietare. Praecepit tamen feminis, quae
him should-presume to-disturb he-commanded yet the-women who
 ad obsequium reginae vel filiarum eius eum comitari
for the-service of-the-queen or of-the-daughters of-him him to-accompany
 solebant, ut exirent videre, quis esset ad ianuam vel
were-accustomed that they-should-go-out to-see who was at the-door or
 quid inquireret. Quae, exeuntes cognoscentesque personam
what he-sought who going-out and-recognizing a-person
 vilissimam, obseratis ostiis, cum ingenti risu et chachinno
most-worthless bolted the-doors with huge laughter and cackling
 se per angulos, vestibus ora repressae, conabantur
themselves through corners with-garments the-mouths stifled tried
 abscondere. Sed sagacissimus imperator, quem nihil sub
to-bide but the-most-shrewd emperor whom nothing under
 coelo posset effugere, diligenter a mulieribus exquisivit, quid
heaven could to-escape diligently of the-women inquired what

haberent vel quis ostium pulsaret. Responsumque accipiens,
they-bad or who the-door was-knocking and-the-answer receiving
 quia quidam coctio derasus insulsus et insaniens, lineam
that a-certain rogue shaven witless and raving a-shirt
 tantum et femoralia indutus, se absque mora postulare
only and drawers clad himself without delay was-asking
 alloqui, iussit eum intromittere. Qui statim, corruens ad
to-address he-ordered him to-let-in who at-once falling at
 pedes illius, cuncta patefecit ex ordine. Nihil vero minus
the-feet of-him all-things disclosed in order nothing but less
 suspicantes, ante horam diei terciam omnes illi coniuratores
suspecting before the-hour of-the-day third all those conspirators
 dignissima poena vel exiliis deportati sunt aut puniti.
by-most-worthy punishment or into-exile deported were or punished
 Ipse quoque nanus et gibberosus Pippinus, inmanissime
he-himself also dwarfish and hunchbacked Pippin most-monstrously
 cesus et detonsus, ad cellam sancti Galli, quae cunctis
beaten and shorn to the-cell of-saint Gall which than-all
 locis imperii latissimi pauperior visa est et angustior,
places of-the-empire most-broad poorer seemed has and narrower
 castigandi gratia ad tempus aliquantulum destinatus est.
of-chastising for-the-sake for a-time a-while assigned was
 Nec multo post quidam de primoribus Francorum in regem
nor much afterward certain-ones of the-chief-men of-the-Franks on the-king
 manus mittere voluerunt. Quod cum eum minime lateret et
hands to-lay wished which when him by-no-means escaped and
 tamen non libenter eos perderet, quia, si bene voluissent,
yet not gladly them he-would-destroy because if well they-bad-wished
 magnum christianis munimen esse potuissent, direxit legatos
a-great for-Christians bulwark to-be they-could-have he-sent envoys
 suos ad eundem Pippinum; sciscitans ab eo, quid de
his-own to the-same Pippin asking of him what about

his fieri oporteret. Quem cum in orto cum senioribus
these to-be-done it-behooved whom when in a-garden with the-older
 fratribus, iunioribus ad maiora opera detentis, urticas et
brothers the-younger to greater works held-back nettles and
 noxia quaeque tridente extrahentem repperissent, ut usui
harmful every-thing with-a-hoe pulling-out they-had-found that for-use
 proficua vivacius excrescere valerent, indicaverunt ei
profitable-things more-vigorously to-grow might-be-able they-indicated to-him
 causam adventus sui. At ille, ex imis praecordiis
the-cause of-coming their-own but be from the-deepest heart
 suspiria trahens, ut omnes debiles animosiores sanis esse
sighs drawing as all the-weak more-spirited than-the-healthy to-be
 consueverunt, in haec verba respondit: Si Karolus consilium
are-accustomed in these words answered if Charles counsel
 meum dignaretur, non ad tantas me deponeret iniurias.
my deemed-worthy not to such me would-be-put-down injuries
 Ego nihil illi demando. Dicite illi, quid me agentem
I nothing to-him send-word tell him what me doing
 inveneritis. At illi, timentes ne sine certo aliquo responso ad
you-have-found but they fearing lest without sure some answer to
 formidabilem reverterentur imperatorem, iterum atque iterum
the-formidable they-should-return emperor again and again
 requirebant ab eo, quid domino renunciare deberent. Tunc ille
asked of him what to-the-lord to-report they-ought then he
 stomachando: Nihil inquit aliud ei demando, nisi quod
fuming nothing he-says else to-him I-send-word except what
 facio; inutilia recrementa extraho, ut holera necessaria liberius
I-do useless refuse I-pull-out that vegetables necessary more-freely
 excrescere valeant. Igitur illi tristes abscesserunt, quasi qui
to-grow may-be-able therefore they sad departed as-if men-who
 nihil rationabile reportarent. Venientes autem ad imperatorem
nothing reasonable were-bringing-back coming moreover to the-emperor

et requisiti, quid referrent, conquesti sunt, se tanto
and asked what they-reported complained have themselves with-so-great
 labore et itinere ne in uno quidem sermone certiorari.
labor and journey not in one even word to-be-informed
 Sagacissimo autem rege per ordinem interrogante, ubi eum
the-most-sbnewd moreover king in order asking where him
 vel quid agentem reppererint quidque responsi illis reddiderit,
or what doing they-had-found and-what of-answer to-them he-had-given
 dixerunt: In tripetio rusticano sedentem eum invenimus et
they-said on a-stool rustic sitting him we-found and
 tridente areolam holerum novellantem. Causamque itineris
with-a-hoe a-bed of-vegetables renewing and-the-cause of-journey
 nostri revolventes, hoc solum ab eo responsi magnis
our unfolding this only from him of-answer with-great
 flagitationibus extorquere potuimus: „Nichil“ aiente „aliud
importunings to-extort we-could nothing be-saying else
 ei demando, nisi quod facio; inutilia recrementa extraho,
to-him I-send-word except what I-do useless refuse I-pull-out
 ut holera necessaria liberius excrescere valeant“. His auditis,
that vegetables necessary more-freely to-grow may-be-able these heard
 astu non carens et sapientia pollens augustus, confricatis
of-cunning not lacking and in-wisdom strong augustus rubbed
 auribus et inflatis naribus, dixit ad eos: Rationabile responsum,
the-ears and puffed the-nostrils said to them a-reasonable answer
 optimi vassalli, reportastis. Illis itaque de periculo vitae
excellent vassals you-have-brought-back they and-so about the-danger of-life
 metuentibus, ipse, vim dictorum ad effectum perducens,
fearing he-himself the-force of-the-sayings to effect bringing
 cunctos illos insidiatores suos de medio viventium auferens,
all those plotters his-own from the-midst of-the-living removing
 fidelibus suis occupata ab infructuosis loca crescendi et
to-faithful-men his-own occupied by the-unfruitful places of-growing and

se extendendi causa concessit. Unum vero adversariorum,
themselves of-spreading for-the-sake granted one but of-the-adversaries
 qui excelsissimum in Francia collem et quaecunque de eo
who the-highest in Francia hill and whatever from it
 prospicere posset sibi in possessionem delegit, in eodem
to-see he-could for-himself into possession had-chosen on the-same
 colle altissimae trabi affixum iussit elevari. Pippinum vero
hill on-a-very-high beam fixed he-ordered to-be-raised Pippin but
 nothum suum praecepit eligere sibi, quomodo vitam degere
bastard his-own he-commanded to-choose for-himself how life to-spend
 voluisset. Qui, optione concessa, optavit locum in quodam
he-wished who the-option granted chose a-place in a-certain
 monasterio tunc nobilissimo, nunc autem, non incertum
monastery then most-noble now moreover not uncertain
 de qua causa, destructo; quam antea non absolvam, quam
for what cause destroyed which before not I-will-unfold than
 Bernhardulum vestrum spata femur accinctum conspiciam.
little-Bernard your with-a-sword on-the-thigh girded I-see
 Indignatus est autem magnanimus Karolus, quia ipse ad
indignant was moreover the-great-souled Charles because he-himself against
 barbaras illas nationes sit exire provocatus, cum quilibet
barbarous those nations has to-go-out been-provoked since any
 ducum suorum ad hoc videretur idoneus. Quod etiam ita esse,
of-dukes his-own for this seemed fit which also so to-be
 ex unius conprovincialium meorum facto probabo. Erat
from of-one of-fellow-provincials my the-deed I-will-prove there-was
 quidam vir de Durgowe iuxta nomen suum „magna pars
a-certain man from the-Thurgau according-to name his-own a-great part
 terribilis exercitus“, vocabulo Eishere, tantae proceritatis, ut
of-the-terrible army by-name Eishere of-such height that
 de Enachim stirpe ortus credi potuisset, nisi tantum
from of-Anak the-stock sprung to-be-believed he-could-have unless so-much

temporis ac locorum interesset. Qui, quotienscunque ad
of-time and of-places lay-between who whenever to
 fluvium Duram alpinis torrentibus tumefactum exundantemque
the-river Thur by-alpine torrents swollen and-overflowing
 venisset nec caballum maximum in eius ne dicam fluenta sed
he-had-come nor horse the-biggest into its not to-say floods but
 nec liquentia posset impellere, apprehensis habenis, fluitantem
not-even shallows could to-drive seized the-reins floating
 post se traxit, inquiens: Per dominum Gallum, velis
after himself he-dragged saying by lord Gall whether-you-will
 nolis me sequi debebis. Is itaque, cum in comitatu
or-not me to-follow you-will-be-bound he and-so when in the-retinue
 caesaris Bemanos Wilzos et Avaros in morem prati
of-the-caesar the-Bohemians the-Wilzi and the-Avars in the-manner of-a-meadow
 secaret et in avicularum modum de hastili suspenderet,
he-mowed and in the-manner of-little-birds from his-spear-shaft hung
 domum victor reversus et a torpentibus interrogatus,
home victor having-retuned and by the-sluggish asked
 qualiter ei in regione Winidum complaceret, illos dedignatus
how to-him in the-region of-the-Wends it-was-pleasing those disdaining
 hos indignatus, aiebat: Quid mihi ranunculi illi? Septem vel
these indignant he-said what to-me little-frogs those seven or
 octo vel certe novem de illis, hasta mea perforatos et quid
eight or at-least nine of them on-spear my pierced and something
 nescio murmurantes, huc illucque portare solebam. Frustra
I-know-not murmuring hither and-thither to-carry I-was-accustomed in-vain
 adversum tales vermiculos dominus rex et nos fatigati sumus.
against such little-worms lord king and we wearied have-been

As Charles finishes the war with the Huns, the Northmen attack Gaul. His expedition against them fails, a plague killing an abbot's fifty yoke of oxen in a night. While he is away King Godfred invades the Moselle district, until his own son cuts him in two as he takes his falcon from a duck. Charles laments that he did not fight them himself.

Eodem itaque tempore cum imperator Hunorum bello
at-the-same and-so time when the-emperor of-the-Huns to-the-war
 extremam manum imponeret et supra dictas gentes in
the-last hand was-putting and the-above mentioned peoples into
 deditionem suscepisset, exeuntes Northmanni Gallis et
surrender had-received going-out the-Northmen to-the-Gauls and
 Francis magnam inquietudinem fecerunt. Reversus autem
to-the-Franks great disquiet made having-returned moreover
 invictissimus Karolus itinere terrestri, quamvis multum
the-most-unconquered Charles by-a-route by-land although very
 angusto et invio, domi eos invadere molitus est. Sed vel
narrow and pathless at-home them to-attack undertook has but either
 Dei providentia prohibente, ut secundum scripturam in his
of-God by-the-providence forbidding that according-to scripture in these
 experiretur Israhel, vel peccatis nostris obsistentibus, cuncta
he-might-test Israel or by-sins our standing-in-the-way all
 illius temptamenta in irritum deducta sunt; in tantum, ut ad
his attempts into nothing brought were in so-much that for
 incommoda totius exercitus comprobanda de unius abbatis
the-losses of-the-whole army to-be-proved of one abbot's
 copiis in una nocte quinquaginta boum paria repentina peste
resources in one night fifty of-oxen pairs by-sudden plague
 numerarentur extincta. Sapientissimus igitur virorum Karolus,
were-counted dead the-most-wise therefore of-men Charles

ne scripturae inoboediens contra ictum fluvii conaretur,
lest to-scripture disobedient against the-stream of-the-river he-should-strive
 destitit ab incepto. Cum vero per non modicum
desisted from the-undertaking when but through not small
 tempus latissimum peragraret imperium, Gotefridus rex
time the-very-broad he-was-traveling-through empire Godfred king
 Northmannorum, absentia eius animatus, fines regni
of-the-Northmen by-the-absence of-him emboldened the-borders of-the-kingdom
 Francorum invasit Mosellanumque pagum in sedem sibi
of-the-Franks invaded and-the-Moselle district as seat for-himself
 delegit. Cum vero falconem suum de aneta vellet extrahere,
chose when but falcon his-own from a-duck he-wished to-draw-off
 consecutus eum filius suus, cuius nuperrime matrem repudians
having-overtaken him the-son his-own whose most-recently the-mother repudiating
 reliquit et alteram super eam duxit uxorem, per medium
he-left and another over her had-married as-wife through the-middle
 ense divisit. Quo facto, sicut quondam Holoferne perempto,
with-a-sword divided which done as once Holofernes slain
 nullus suorum in animis aut armis sed in solo fugae praesidio
none of-bis-men in courage or arms but in sole of-flight the-protection
 ausus est confidere; et ita, ne exemplo ingrati Israhelis
dared has to-trust and so lest by-the-example of-ungrateful Israel
 contra Deum gloriaretur, absque sua industria liberata est
against God it-should-boast without its-own effort freed was
 Francia. Invictus autem nec vincendus unquam Karolus de tali
Francia unconquered moreover nor to-be-conquered ever Charles for such
 quidem iudicio Deum glorificavit; sed plurimum conquestus
indeed judgment God glorified but very-much complained
 est, quod propter absentiam suam aliquis de illis evaserit:
has that on-account-of absence his-own anyone of them escaped

Heu proh dolor inquiens quia videre non merui, quomodo

alas oh grief saying that to-see not I-have-deserved how

christiana manus mea cum cynocephalis illis luserit.

Christian hand my with dog-heads those would-have-played

XIV · CHARLES WEEPS AT NARBONNE

At a coastal city of Narbonese Gaul, Charles recognizes Northmen ships that others take for merchants; they flee, hearing that Charles the Hammer is there. Charles stands at the window weeping: he does not fear those trifles, but grieves that they dare to touch his shore and foresees the evils they will do his descendants. The Monk prays that Charles the Fat may prevent it.

Contigit quoque, ad quandam maritimam Galliae Narbonensis

it-happened also to a-certain maritime of-Gaul Narbonese

urbem vagabundum Karolum inopinato venire. Ad cuius

city wandering Charles unexpectedly to-come to whose

portum, eo prandente sed ignorato, piraterium exploratores

harbor he dining but unknown a-pirate-raid the-scouts

Northmannorum fecerunt. Cumque, visis navibus alii Iudeos

of-the-Northmen made and-when seen the-ships some Jews

alii vero Africanos alii Brittanos mercatores esse dicerent,

others but Africans others British merchants to-be said

sapientissimus Karolus, ex instructione navium vel agilitate

the-most-wise Charles from the-fitting-out of-the-ships or the-agility

non mercatores sed hostes esse deprehendens, dixit ad suos:

not merchants but enemies to-be perceiving said to his-men

Non istae naves confertae mercimoniis, sed hostibus fetae

not these ships crammed with-merchandise but with-enemies teeming

sunt acerrimis. His sui auditis, alter alterum praevenire

are most-fierce these-things his-men heard one the-other to-forestall

cupientes, festine properabant ad naves. Sed frustra. Nam
desiring hastily hastened to the-ships but in-vain for
 comperto Northmanni, quod ibidem esset, ut ipsi eum
learned the-Northmen that there was as they-themselves him
 nuncupare solebant, Martellus Karolus, ne omnis armatura
to-call were-accustomed the-Hammer Charles lest all armor
 sua in illo aut retunderetur aut in minutissimas resoluta
their-own on him either should-be-blunted or into most-minute broken
 particulas disperiret, effugio satis incomparabili insequentium
particles should-perish by-a-flight quite incomparable of-the-pursuers
 non solum gladios sed et oculos evitaverunt. Religiosissimus
not only the-swords but also the-eyes they-escaped the-most-religious
 autem Karolus, iustus et timoratus, exurgens de mensa,
moreover Charles just and God-fearing rising from the-table
 ad fenestram orientalem constitit; et inestimabilibus lacrimis
at the-window eastern stood and with-inestimable tears
 diutissime perfusus, cum nullus eum compellare praesumeret,
very-long bathed since no-one him to-address presumed
 tandem aliquando ipse, bellicosissimis proceribus suis de
at-last at-length he-himself to-the-most-warlike nobles his-own about
 tali gestu et lacrimatione satisfaciens: Scitis inquit o
such behavior and weeping giving-satisfaction do-you-know he-says O
 fideles mei, quid tantopere ploraverim? Non hoc ait timeo,
faithful my why so-much I-have-wept not this he-said I-fear
 quod isti nugae et nihili mihi aliquid nocere praevaleant; sed
that these trifles and nothings to-me anything to-harm may-prevail but
 nimium contristor, quod me vivente ausi sunt litus istud
too-much I-am-saddened that me living dared they-have shore that
 attingere; et maximo dolore torqueor, quia praevideo,
to-touch and with-the-greatest grief I-am-tormented because I-foresee
 quanta mala posteris meis et eorum sunt facturi subiectis.
how-great evils to-descendants my and of-them they-are about-to-do to-subjects

Quod ne adhuc fiat, Christi domini nostri tutela
which lest still it-happen of-Christ the-Lord our the-guardianship
 prohibeat, et gladius vester, in sanguine Nordostranorum
may-forbid and sword your in the-blood of-the-Nordostrani
 duratus, obsistat; adiuncto sibi mucrone Karlomanni fratris
hardened may-withstand joined to-itself the-blade of-Carloman brother
 vestri, tincto quidem in eorundem cruore, sed nunc non
your stained indeed in of-the-same the-gore but now not
 propter ignaviam sed propter inopiam rerum angustiamque
on-account-of sloth but on-account-of the-want of-things and-the-narrowness
 terrarum fidelissimi vestri Arnoldi ita in rubiginem versus,
of-lands of-most-faithful your Arnulf so into rust turned
 ut tamen iussu et voluntate potentiae vestrae haut
that yet by-the-order and will of-power your not
 difficulter possit ad acumen et splendorem perduci.
with-difficulty it-may to sharpness and brightness to-be-brought
 Hic enim solus ramusculus cum tenuissima Bennolini
this for alone little-branch with the-slenderest of-Bennolin
 astula de foecundissima Hludowici radice sub singulari
shoot from the-most-fertile of-Louis root under the-singular
 cacumine protectionis vestrae pullulascit. Interim ergo de
top of-protection your sprouts meanwhile therefore about
 proatavo vestro Pippino in historiam vestri cognominis
great-great-grandfather your Pippin into the-history of-your namesake
 aliquid inseratur, quod, concedente clementia divina, mox
something let-be-inserted which granting the-clemency divine soon
 futurus Karolaster aut Lothowiculus vester imitetur.
the-future little-Charles or little-Louis your may-imitate

When the Lombards harass Rome, Pippin subdues them and enters the city as victor. Hearing that his nobles mock him, he sets a lion on a bull, and when none dares separate them, cuts through both necks with one stroke. At Aachen, bathing in the hot springs, he drives his sword through a demon in human form and orders the fouled water let out.

Longobardis vel caeteris hostibus Romanos infestantibus,
the-Lombards or the-other enemies the-Romans harassing
 miserunt legatos suos ad eundem Pippinum, ut propter
sent envoys their-own to the-same Pippin that on-account-of
 amorem sancti Petri sibi quantocius in auxilium venire
the-love of-saint Peter to-them as-quickly-as-possible into help to-come
 dignaretur. Qui, absque mora subiugatis hostibus, orationis
he-might-deign who without delay subjugated the-enemies of-prayer
 tantum gratia Romam victor ingreditur et a civibus
only for-the-sake Rome victor enters and by the-citizens
 hac laude suscipitur: Cives apostolorum et domestici
with-this praise is-received fellow-citizens of-the-apostles and household
 Dei advenerunt hodie, portantes pacem et illuminantes
of-God have-come today bringing peace and illuminating
 patriam, dare pacem gentibus et liberare populum Domini.
the-homeland to-give peace to-the-nations and to-free the-people of-the-Lord
 Cuius vim carminis et originem quidam ignorantes, hoc
whose force of-song and origin certain-men not-knowing this
 in nataliciis apostolorum canere consueverunt. Ipse
on the-feasts of-the-apostles to-sing have-become-accustomed he-himself
 vero, invidiam Romanorum, immo ut verius loquar
but the-envy of-the-Romans nay that more-truly I-may-speak
 Constantinopolitanorum, declinans, mox in Franciam revertitur.
of-the-Constantinopolitans avoiding soon into Francia returns

Comperto autem, quod primates exercitus eum clanculo
learned moreover that the-chief-men of-the-army him secretly
 despicientes carpere solerent, praecepit adduci taurum
despising to-carp were-accustomed he-commanded to-be-brought a-bull
 magnitudine terribilem et animis indomabilem, leonemque
in-size terrible and in-spirit untamable and-a-lion
 ferocissimum in illum dimitti. Qui, impetu validissimo in
most-ferocious on it to-be-let-loose which with-onset most-powerful upon
 eum irruens, apprehensa cervice tauri, proiecit in terram.
it rushing seized the-neck of-the-bull threw onto the-ground
 Tunc rex dixit ad circumstantes: Abstrahite leonem a
then the-king said to those-standing-around drag-away the-lion from
 tauro vel occidite eum super illum. Qui, spectantes ad
the-bull or kill it over that who looking at
 alterutrum congelatisque praecordiis pavefacti, vix haec
each-other and-with-frozen hearts terrified scarcely these-things
 singultando musitare potuerunt: Domine, non est homo sub
sobbing to-mutter could lord not is a-man under
 coelo, qui hoc audeat attemptare. Quo ille confidentior,
heaven who this would-dare to-attempt whereupon he more-confident
 exurgens de throno, et extracta spata per cervicem
rising from the-throne and drawn the-sword through the-neck
 leonis cervicem tauri divisit ab armis; et spata in
of-the-lion the-neck of-the-bull severed from the-shoulders and the-sword into
 vaginam remissa, consedit in solio: Videtur vobis, inquires
the-scabard returned sat-down on the-throne does-it-seem to-you saying
 utrum dominus vester esse possim? Non audistis, quid
whether lord your to-be I-can not you-have-heard what
 fecerit parvus David ingenti illi Goliath vel brevissimus
did little David to-huge that Goliath or very-short
 Alexander procerissimis satellitibus suis? Tunc, quasi tonitru
Alexander to-very-tall attendants his-own then as-if by-thunder

perculsi, ceciderunt in terram, dicentes: Quis nisi insaniens,
struck they-fell to the-ground saying who unless mad
 dominationem vestram mortalibus imperare, detrectet?
lordship your over-mortals to-rule would-refuse
 Nec solum contra bestias et homines talis exstitit, sed etiam
nor only against beasts and men such he-stood-out but also
 contra spiritalis nequitas inauditum certamen exercuit. Nam
against spiritual wickednesses an-unheard-of contest he-waged for
 cum apud Aquasgrani, thermis nondum aedificatis, calidi
when at Aachen the-baths not-yet built hot
 saluberrimique fontes ebullirent, iussit camerarium suum
and-most-healthy springs bubbled-up he-ordered chamberlain his-own
 praevidere, si fontes purgati essent et ne quis ignotus ibi
to-see-to-it if the-springs cleansed were and lest anyone unknown there
 dimitteretur. Quod cum factum fuisset, assumpto rex gladio,
should-be-let-in which when done had-been taken the-king a-sword
 in linea et subtalaribus properavit ad balneum, cum repente
in shirt and slippers hastened to the-bath when suddenly
 hostis antiquus eum quasi perempturus aggreditur. Rex
the-enemy ancient him as-if about-to-kill attacks the-king
 autem, crucis signo munitus, nudato gladio, umbram in
moreover of-the-cross with-the-sign protected bared the-sword the-shade in
 humana advertens effigie, invincibilem gladium ita terre
human noticing form the-invincible sword so into-the-earth
 infixit, ut diutino luctamine vix eum revocaret. Quae tamen
fixed that with-long struggling scarcely it he-drew-back which yet
 umbra tantae crassitudinis erat, ut cunctos illos fontes tabo
shade of-so-great thickness was that all those springs with-gore
 et cruore abhominandaque pinguedine deturparet. Sed nec
and blood and-abominable fat it-defiled but not-even
 his motus, insuperabilis Pippinus dixit ad cubicularium: Non
by-these moved the-insuperable Pippin said to the-chamberlain not

sit tibi cura de talibus. Fac effluere infectam illam aquam;
let-be to-you concern about such-things cause to-flow-out infected that water
 ut in ea, quae pura manaverit, sine mora lavari debeam.
that in that which pure shall-have-flowed without delay to-be-washed I-should

XVI · DIGRESSIONS

The Monk had meant to tell only of Charles the Great, but has had to recall Louis the German, Louis the Pious, and Pippin the Younger, about whom the moderns are silent; Bede has written enough of the elder Pippin. Now he returns to Charles, but must first tell something of his wars before coming to his daily life, and will be as brief as he can.

Proposueram quidem, o imperator auguste, de solo proavo
I-had-proposed indeed O emperor augustus about only great-grandfather
 vestro Karolo, omnia vobis scientibus quaecunque fecit, brevem
your Charles all-things you knowing whatever he-did a-brief
 narratiunculam texere; sed cum ita se optulerit occasio, ut
little-narrative to-weave but since so itself has-offered the-occasion that
 necessario memoria fiat gloriosissimi patris vestri Hludowici
necessarily memory be-made of-the-most-glorious father your Louis
 cognomento illustris, et religiosissimi avi vestri Hludowici
by-surname illustrious and of-the-most-religious grandfather your Louis
 agnomine pii, vel bellicosissimi proatavi vestri
by-additional-name pious or of-the-most-warlike great-great-grandfather your
 Pippini iunioris, de quibus propter ignaviam modernorum
Pippin the-younger about whom on-account-of the-sloth of-the-moderns
 grande silentium est, omnia intacta praeterire nefarium iudicavi.
great silence is all-things untouched to-pass-over wicked I-judged
 Nam de maiore Pippino integrum pene librum doctissimus
for about the-elder Pippin an-entire almost book the-most-learned

Beda in ecclesiastica procudit historia. His ita per excessum
Bede in the-ecclesiastical hammered-out history these so by digression
 commemoratis, ad cognominem vestrum illustrem Karolum
recalled to namesake your illustrious Charles
 olorinus iam redeat natatus. Sed si bellicis rebus ab eo
swan-like now let-return the-swimming but if from-the-warlike affairs by him
 gestis aliquid non subtraxerimus, nunquam ad cottidianam
done something not we-shall-have-withdrawn never to the-daily
 eius conversationem revolvendam perducimur. Quapropter, quae
his manner-of-life to-be-unfolded we-are-brought wherefore what
 concurrunt in praesenti, quam strictissime potuero, memorabo.
concur in the-present as most-briefly I-shall-be-able I-will-recall

XVII · THE IRON CHARLES

When Desiderius rebels at Pavia, Otter watches Charles approach from a tower, telling the king again and again that the army is not yet Charles, until a dark cloud rises and Charles appears clad all in iron. He builds a chapel in a day and takes the city. At Friuli a dying patriarch leaves his see to God's judgment, and Charles mocks his nobles' ruined silks after a hunt.

Post mortem victoriosissimi Pippini cum iterato Longobardi
after the-death of-the-most-victorious Pippin when again the-Lombards
 Romam iam inquietarent, invictus Karolus, quamvis in
Rome already were-disturbing the-unconquered Charles although in
 cisalpinis partibus nimium occupatus esset, iter in Italiam
cisalpine parts too-much occupied he-was the-route into Italy
 haut segniter arripuit. Et incruento bello sive spontanea
not sluggishly took-up and in-bloodless war or by-spontaneous
 deditione humiliatos, in servitium accepit Longobardos;
surrender humbled into servitude received the-Lombards

et firmitatis gratia, ne unquam a regno Francorum
and of-firmness for-the-sake lest ever from the-kingdom of-the-Franks
discederent vel terminis sancti Petri aliquam irrogarent
they-should-depart or on-the-borders of-saint Peter any should-inflict
iniuriam, filiam Desiderii Longobardorum principis duxit
injury the-daughter of-Desiderius of-the-Lombards prince he-married
uxorem. Qua non post multum temporis, quia esset
as-wife whom not after much of-time because she-was
clinica et ad propagandam prolem inhabilis, iudicio
bedridden and for propagating offspring unfit by-the-judgment
sanctissimorum sacerdotum relicta velut mortua, iratus pater,
of-the-most-holy priests left as-if dead the-angry father
iuramento sibi provinciales astringens ipseque in muris
by-oath to-himself the-provincials binding and-himself in the-walls
Ticinensibus se concludens, invincibili Karolo rebellare
of-Pavia himself shutting-up against-the-invincible Charles to-rebel
disposuit. Quod ille pro certo comperiens, illuc iter
arranged which he for certain learning thither the-march
acceleravit. Contigit autem ante aliquot annos, quendam de
hastened it-happened moreover before some years a-certain of
primis principibus nomine Otkerum offensam terribilissimi
the-first princes by-name Otker the-offense of-the-most-terrible
imperatoris incurrere et ob id ad eundem Desiderium
emperor to-incur and for this to the-same Desiderius
confugium facere. Audito autem iam proximo adventu
refuge to-make heard moreover now close the-arrival
metuendi Karoli, ascenderunt in turrim eminentissimam, unde
of-the-fearsome Charles they-ascended into a-tower most-lofty whence
longe lateque prospicere venientem potuissent. Apparentibus
far and-wide to-see-out-for the-coming-one they-could appearing
vero impedimentis, quae expeditiora Darii vel Iulii
but the-baggage-trains which more-mobile of-Darius or of-Julius

fuissent expeditionibus, dixit Desiderius ad Otterum:
would-have-been than-the-expeditions said Desiderius to Otter
 Estne Karolus in tanto exercitu? At ille respondit: Non
is Charles in so-great an-army but he answered not
 adhuc. Videns vero exercitum popularium de latissimo
yet seeing but the-army of-the-common-people from the-very-broad
 imperio congregatum, diffinite pronuntiavit ad Otterum: Vere
empire gathered definitely he-pronounced to Otter truly
 in his copiis Karolus exultat. Respondit Otterus: Set non
in these forces Charles exults answered Otter but not
 adhuc neque adhuc. Tunc aestuare coepit et dicere: Quid
yet nor yet then to-seethe he-began and to-say what
 faciemus, si plures cum eo venerint? Dixit Otterus: Videbis,
shall-we-do if more with him shall-have-come said Otter you-will-see
 qualis ille veniat. De nobis autem nescio quid fiat.
what-sort he may-come about us moreover I-do-not-know what may-happen
 Et ecce ista sermocinantibus apparuit scola, vacationis
and behold these-things to-the-conversing appeared the-school of-leisure
 semper ignara. Quam videns Desiderius stupefactus: Iste
always ignorant which seeing Desiderius astounded this-one
 est inquit Karolus. Et Otterus: Non inquit adhuc neque
is he-says Charles and Otter not he-says yet nor
 adhuc. Post hanc cernuntur episcopi abbatesque et clerici
yet after this are-seen the-bishops and-abbots and the-clerics
 capellani cum comitibus suis. Quibus aspectis, haec
chaplains with counts their-own whom seen these-things
 vix egre iam lucis inimicus mortisque desiderius
scarcely with-difficulty already of-light an-enemy and-of-death desirous
 singultando blateravit: Descendamus et abscondamur in
sobbing he-babbled let-us-go-down and be-bidden in
 terra a facie furoris adversarii tam inmanis. Ad
the-earth from the-face of-the-fury of-an-adversary so monstrous to

quae retulit extimescens Otkerus, rerum et apparatus
which replied fearing Otker of-the-affairs and equipment
 incomparabilis Karoli quondam expertus et in meliori
of-incomparable Charles formerly having-experienced and in better
 tempore assuetissimus: Quando videris inquiring segetem
time most-accustomed when you-shall-see saying a-crop
 campis inhorrescere ferream Padumque et Ticinum marinis
on-the-fields to-bristle iron and-the-Po and the-Ticino with-sea
 fluctibus ferro nigrantibus muros civitatis inundantes, tunc
waves with-iron blackening the-walls of-the-city flooding then
 est spes Karoli venientis. His necdum finitis, primum ad
there-is hope of-Charles coming these not-yet finished first to
 occasum circio vel borea coepit apparere quasi nubes
the-west by-the-northwest or north began to-appear as-if a-cloud
 tenebrosa, quae diem clarissimam horrentes convertit in
dark which the-day most-bright shuddering turned into
 umbras. Sed propiante paululum imperatore, ex armorum
shadows but drawing-near a-little the-emperor from of-the-arms
 splendore dies omni nocte tenebrosior oborta est inclusis.
the-gleam a-day than-every night darker arisen was for-the-shut-in
 Tunc visus est ipse ferreus Karolus, ferrea galea
then seen was he-himself iron Charles with-an-iron helmet
 cristatus, ferreis manicis armillatus, ferrea torace ferreum
crested in-iron sleeves braceleted with-an-iron breastplate the-iron
 pectus humerosque Platonicos tutatus; hasta ferrea
breast and-shoulders Platonic having-protected with-a-spear iron
 in altum subrecta sinistram implevit, nam dextra ad
into the-height raised the-left he-filled for the-right to
 invictum calibem semper erat extenta; coxarum exteriora,
the-unconquered steel always was stretched of-the-thighs the-outsides
 quae propter faciliorem ascensum in aliis solent lorica
which on-account-of easier mounting in others are-wont of-mail

nudari, in eo ferreis ambiebantur bratteolis. De ocreis quid
to-be-bared in him with-iron were-surrounded plates about the-greaves what
 dicam? Quae et cuncto exercitui solebant ferreae semper
shall-I-say which also for-the-whole army were-accustomed iron always
 esse usui. In clipeo nihil apparuit nisi ferrum. Caballus
to-be in-use on the-shield nothing appeared except iron the-horse
 quoque illius animo et colore ferrum renitebat. Quem
also of-him in-spirit and color iron shone-back which
 habitum cuncti praecedentes, universi ex lateribus ambientes
dress all going-before all on the-sides surrounding
 omnesque sequentes et totus in commune apparatus iuxta
and-all following and the-whole in common equipment according-to
 possibilitatem erat imitatus. Ferrum campos et plateas
possibility had imitated iron the-fields and squares
 replebat; solis radii reverberabantur acie ferri; rigido
filled of-the-sun the-rays were-thrown-back by-the-edge of-iron to-rigid
 ferro honor a rigidiori deferebatur populo. Splendidissimum
iron honor by the-more-rigid was-paid people the-most-splendid
 ferrum horror expalluit cloacarum. O ferrum, heu ferrum!
iron the-horror grew-pale of-the-sewers O iron alas iron
 clamor confusus insonuit civium. Ferro contremuit
the-cry confused resounded of-the-citizens before-iron trembled
 firmitas murorum, et iuvenum consilium ferro deperiit
the-firmness of-the-walls and of-the-young-men the-counsel before-iron perished
 seniorum. Haec igitur, quae ego balbus et edentulus,
of-the-old-men these therefore which I the-stammerer and toothless
 non ut debui, circuitu tardiore diutius explicare temptavi,
not as I-ought with-circuit slower longer to-unfold have-tried
 veridicus speculator Otkerus celerrimo visu contuitus,
the-truth-telling watchman Otker with-swiftest glance having-beheld
 dixit ad Desiderium: Ecce habes Karolum, quem tantopere
said to Desiderius behold you-have Charles whom so-much

perquisisti; et haec dicens, pene exanimis cecidit. Sed quia
you-have-sought and these-things saying almost lifeless he-fell but because
 ipso die vel propter amentiam vel propter aliquam
on-that-very day either on-account-of madness or on-account-of some
 spem resistendi cives urbici eum suscipere noluissent,
hope of-resisting the-citizens of-the-city him to-receive had-been-unwilling
 dixit artificiosissimus Karolus ad suos: Faciamus hodie aliquid
said the-most-ingenuous Charles to his-men let-us-make today something
 memoriale, ne diem istum otiosi transegisse vituperemur.
memorial lest day this idle to-have-spent we-be-reproached
 Acceleremus efficere unum oratoriolum, in quo, si nobis
let-us-basten to-make one little-chapel in which if to-us
 cicius apertum non fuerit, divinis servitiis insistere
more-quickly opened not it-shall-have-been to-divine services to-attend
 debeamus. Et hac emissa voce, alius alio discurrentes,
we-should and with-this uttered word one another-way running-about
 calcem et lapides, alii vero ligna vel pigmenta congregantes
lime and stones others but wood or paints gathering
 artificibus semper eum comitantibus attulerunt. Qui a
to-the-craftsmen always him accompanying brought who from
 quarta diei hora ante duodecimam talem basilicam muris
the-fourth of-the-day hour before the-twelfth such a-basilica with-walls
 et tectis, laquearibus et picturis, auxiliante tyronum manu
and roofs ceilings and paintings helping of-the-recruits the-band
 militumque construxerunt, ut nulli adhuc eam cernenti nisi
and-of-the-soldiers built that to-no-one still it beholding except
 per annum integrum fieri potuisse credatur. Postera
in a-year whole to-be-made to-have-been-able it-is-believed on-the-next
 vero die quanta facilitate — quibusdam civium sibi
but day with-how-great ease some of-the-citizens to-him
 aperire volentibus, quibusdam licet frustra rebellare vel, ut
to-open wishing others although in-vain to-rebel or as

verius dicam, se includere volentibus — absque cruoris
more-truly I-may-say themselves to-shut-in wishing without of-blood
 effusione sola tantum industria civitatem superaverit ceperit
shedding by-sole only diligence the-city he-overcame took
 possederit, illis scribendum relinquo, qui non aliquo amore
possessed to-those to-be-written I-leave who not from-some love
 sed questus tantum gratia vestram celsitudinem comitantur.
but of-gain only for-the-sake your highness accompany
 Exin ad ulteriora progressus, venit religiosissimus Karolus
thence to the-farther-parts having-advanced came the-most-religious Charles
 ad urbem Friulanam, quam, qui sibi scioli videntur,
to the-city Friulian which those-who to-themselves wise seem
 Forum Iuliensem nuncupant. Contigit autem, ut eodem
Forum Iulii call it-happened moreover that at-the-same
 tempore episcopus civitatis illius aut, ut modernorum loquar
time the-bishop city of-that or as of-the-moderns I-may-speak
 consuetudine, patriarcha occasui vitae propinquaret. Ad
in-the-custom patriarch to-the-setting of-life was-drawing-near to
 quem cum religiosissimus Karolus visitandi gratia properaret,
whom when the-most-religious Charles of-visiting for-the-sake hastened
 ut successorem suum ex nomine designare deberet, ille
that successor his-own by name to-designate he-should he
 religiose admodum, ex imis praecordiis suspiria trahens:
religiously very from the-deepest heart sighs drawing
 Domine inquit episcopatum istum, diu sine aliqua utilitate
lord he-says bishopric this long without any usefulness
 vel profectu spiritali retentum, iudicio divino et vestrae
or profit spiritual held to-the-judgment divine and to-your
 dispositioni relinquo; ne ad cumulum peccatorum, quem
disposition I-leave lest to the-heap of-sins which
 vivens exaggeravi, etiam mortuus aliquid superinicare apud
living I-have-piled-up even dead something to-throw-on before

inevitabilem et incorruptendum iudicem deprehendar. Quod

the-inescapable and incorruptible judge I-be-found which

sapientissimus Karolus ita accepit, ut eum antiquis patribus

the-most-wise Charles so received that him to-the-ancient fathers

non inmerito coaequandum iudicaverit.

not undeservedly to-be-equaled be-judged

Cum autem in eadem regione aliquantis per demoratus fuisset

when moreover in the-same region for-a-while stayed he-had

exercitatissimus exercitatissimorum Francorum Karolus, donec

the-most-practiced of-the-most-practiced Franks Charles until

episcopo decedente dignum ei successorem substitueret,

the-bishop dying a-worthy to-him successor he-should-substitute

quadam festiva die post missarum celebrationem dixit ad

on-a-certain festive day after of-the-masses the-celebration he-said to

suos: Ne otio torpentes ad ignaviam perducamur, eamus

his-men lest in-idleness growing-sluggish to sloth we-be-brought let-us-go

venatum, donec aliquid capiamus; et singuli in eodem habitu

hunting until something we-catch and each in the-same dress

pergamus, quo nunc induti sumus. Erat autem ymbrifera

let-us-go in-which now clothed we-are was moreover a-rainy

dies et frigida. Et ipse quidem Karolus habebat pellicium

day and cold and he-himself indeed Charles had a-skin-coat

berbicinum non multo amplioris precii, quam erat roccus

of-sheepskin not much of-greater value than was frock

ille sancti Martini, quo pectus ambitus nudis brachiis

that of-saint Martin in-which the-breast girt with-bare arms

Deo sacrificium obtulisse astipulatione divina comprobatur.

to-God the-sacrifice to-have-offered by-confirmation divine is-proved

Caeteri vero, utpote feriatis diebus — et qui modo de

the-others but as on-feast days and who just-now from

Papia venissent, ad quam nuper Venetici de transmarinis

Pavia had-come to which lately the-Venetians from overseas

partibus omnes orientalium divitias advectassent — Phenicum
parts all of-the-easterners the-riches had-brought of-Phoenician
 pellibus avium, serico circumdatis, et pavonum collis cum
with-skins of-birds with-silk bordered and of-peacocks with-necks with
 tergo et clunis mox florescere incipientibus, Tyria purpura
back and haunches soon to-blossom beginning with-Tyrian purple
 vel diacedrina littea decoratis, alii de lodicibus quidam de
or citron-colored borders adorned others in coverlets some in
 gliribus circumamicti procedebant; saltusque peragran-
dormouse-fur wrapped went-forth and-the-woods traversing
 temis arborum spinisque et tribulis lacerati vel imbribus
by-the-branches of-the-trees and-by-thorns and briars torn or by-rains
 infusi, tum etiam sanguine ferarum pelliumque volutabro
soaked then also by-the-blood of-wild-beasts and-of-skins by-the-wallowing
 foedati, remeabant. Tunc astutissimus Karolus dixit: Nullus
befooled returned then the-most-cunning Charles said no-one
 nostrum pellicium suum extrahat, donec cubitum eamus; ut
of-us skin-coat his-own let-take-off until to-bed we-go so-that
 in nobis ipsis melius siccari possint. Quo iusso, singuli,
on us ourselves better to-be-dried they-may-be-able which ordered each
 corpora magis quam indumenta curantes, usque quaque
the-bodies more than the-garments caring all-the-way everywhere
 focos inquirere et caleferi studebant. Ac mox reversi
fires to-seek and to-be-warmed were-eager and soon having-returned
 et in ministerio eius usque ad profundam noctem
and in service his all-the-way to the-deep night
 persistentes, ad mansiones remittebantur. Cumque tenuissimas
persisting to the-lodgings they-were-sent-back and-when the-most-delicate
 illas pelliculas vel tenuiores brandeas extrahere coepissent,
those little-skins or the-thinner silks to-take-off they-had-begun
 rugarum et contractionum rupturas, quasi virgarum in
of-the-wrinkles and of-the-sbrinkings the-cracks as-if of-twigs in

ariditate fractarum, procul audiri fecerunt; gementes et
dryness broken far-off to-be-heard they-caused groaning and
 suspirantes conquerentesque, tantum se pecuniae sub una
sighing and-complaining so-much themselves of-money in one
 die perdisse. Praeceptum vero ab imperatore susceperant,
day to-have-lost the-command but from the-emperor they-had-received
 ut in eisdem pellibus crastina die se illi praesentarent.
that in the-same skins on-the-next day themselves to-him they-should-present
 Quod cum factum fuisset, et omnes non induviis
which when done had-been and all not with-garments
 resplenderent sed potius pannis et decolori foeditate
shone but rather with-rags and with-discolored foulness
 horrerent, dixit industria plenus Karolus ad cubicularium
bristled said of-diligence full Charles to chamberlain
 suum: Tere illud pellicium nostrum inter manus, et affer in
his-own rub that skin-coat our between the-hands and bring into
 conspectum nostrum. Quo integerrimo et candidissimo allato,
sight our which most-whole and most-white brought
 assumens illud inter manus et cunctis astantibus ostendens,
taking it between the-hands and to-all standing-by showing
 haec pronuntiavit: O stolidissimi mortalium! Quod pellicium
these-things pronounced O most-stupid of-mortals which skin-coat
 modo preciosius et utilius est, istudne meum uno solido
now more-precious and more-useful is this-one mine for-one shilling
 comparatum an illa vestra non solum libris sed et
bought or those of-yours not only for-pounds but even
 multis coempta talentis? Tunc, vultibus in terram declinatis,
for-many bought talents then with-faces to the-ground cast-down
 terribilissimam eius animadversionem sustinere nequibant.
the-most-terrible his reproof to-endure they-could-not

Quod exemplum religiosissimus pater vester non semel sed
which example the-most-religious father your not once but
 per totam vitam suam ita imitatus est, ut nullus, qui eius
through the-whole life his-own so imitated has that no-one who of-his
 agnitione et doctrina dignus videbatur, aliquid in exercitu
acquaintance and teaching worthy seemed anything in the-army
 contra hostem nisi tantum arma miliciae et lanea vestimenta
against the-enemy except only the-arms of-service and woolen garments
 cum lineis portare praesumeret. Quodsi quisquam inferiorum,
with linens to-carry presumed but-if anyone of-the-lower-men
 disciplinae illius ignarus, aliquid de serico auro vel argento circa
of-the-discipline of-him ignorant something of silk gold or silver about
 se habens eum forte incurrisset, his verbis increpatus
himself having him by-chance had-run-into with-these words rebuked
 et melioratus immo sapientior effectus abscessit: O te bis
and improved nay wiser made he-went-away O you twice
 aureum eccum! o te argenteum! o te totum coccineum! Miser
golden behold O you silver O you all scarlet wretch
 et infelix, non tibi sufficit, ut tu solus vel sorte belli
and unhappy not to-you it-suffices that you alone even by-chance of-war
 intereas; quin etiam et res, quibus anima tua redimi
should-perish nay also and the-things by-which soul your to-be-redeemed
 valeret, in manus hostium tradas, ut de eis simulacra
could into the-hands of-the-enemies you-hand-over that from them the-images
 gentium adornentur. Quantum vero a primeva aetate
of-the-beatthens may-be-adorned how-much but from earliest age
 usque ad septuagesimum annum ferro gauderet invictissimus
all-the-way to the-seventieth year in-iron rejoiced the-most-unconquered
 Hludowicus, quantum ante Northmannorum legatos spectaculum
Louis how-much before of-the-Northmen the-envoys a-display
 de ferro faceret, melius hoc vobis scientibus replicabo.
of iron he-made better this to-you knowing I-will-unfold

When the Northmen's kings send gold, silver, and swords in submission, Louis the German has the money thrown on the floor and trampled, and tests the swords. One breaks in his hands; an envoy offers his own, and Louis bends it from tip to hilt like a withy and lets it spring back. The envoys wish their own princes held gold as cheap and iron as precious.

Cum reges Northmannorum singuli pro devotione sua
when the-kings of-the-Northmen each for devotion his-own
 aurum vel argentum et pro sempiterna subiectione vel
gold or silver and for perpetual subjection or
 deditione gladios suos ipsi dirigerent, praecepit rex: ut
surrender swords their-own to-him sent commanded the-king that
 pecunia quidem in pavementum proiceretur et a nullo nisi
the-money indeed onto the-pavement should-be-thrown and by no-one except
 indignanter aspiceretur, sed potius ab omnibus velut lutum
indignantly be-looked-at but rather by all like mud
 conculcaretur. Gladios vero, in sublimi solio residens, sibi
be-trampled the-swords but on lofty throne sitting to-himself
 attemptandos iussit afferri. Porro legati, metuentes ne
to-be-tried he-ordered to-be-brought further the-envoys fearing lest
 quid sinistrae suspicionis contra eos posset oriri, eo modo,
any of-sinister suspicion against them might to-arise in-that way
 quo solent ministri dominis suis cultellos de summis
in-which are-wont servants to-lords their-own knives by the-very
 oris praebere, ita spatas imperatori cum sui periculo
points to-offer so the-swords to-the-emperor with of-themselves danger
 porrigebant. Quarum ille cum unam de capulo acceptam et
held-out of-which he when one by the-hilt taken and
 ab extremitate ultima ad summum curvare niteretur, inter
from the-tip last to the-top to-bend strove between

fortiores ferro manus disrupta est. Tunc unus de missis
stronger than-iron the-hands broken it-was then one of the-envoys
 suam de vagina protrahens ministrantiumque more
his-own from the-scabard drawing and-of-servants in-the-manner
 ad ipsius obsequelam protendens: Domine inquit ut credo,
for his service holding-out lord he-says as I-believe
 et flexibilis et rigida invenietur ista spata ad votum
both flexible and rigid will-be-found this sword to the-wish
 victoriosissimae dexteræ vestrae. Qua caesar accepta — et
of-most-victorious right-hand your which the-caesar received and
 vere caesar iuxta vaticinium Isaiae prophetae: Adtendite ad
truly caesar according-to the-prophecy of-Isaiah the-prophet look to
 petram, unde excisi estis, de tota Germaniae populositate
the-rock whence hewn you-are from the-whole of-Germany populousness
 singularis divinitatis opificio in antiquos hominum artus
of-singular of-divinity by-the-workmanship into the-ancient of-men limbs
 et animos exurgens — ab ora ultima capulotenus in modum
and spirit rising from the-tip last as-far-as-the-bilt in the-manner
 viminis contraxit et sensim ad statum pristinum redire
of-a-withy drew-together and gently to the-state former to-return
 permisit. Tunc legati semet aspectantes et ad alterutrum
allowed then the-envoys each-other looking-at and at each-other
 obstupescentes: O utinam inquit principibus nostris tam
astonished O would-that they-say to-princes our as
 vile videretur aurum et argentum, et ferrum tam preciosum.
cheap might-seem gold and silver and iron as precious

The Northmen honor Louis the Pious, and their envoys accept baptism; more come every Easter for the white robes and Frankish clothes rather than for Christ. Once fifty come, and shirts must be cut up and stitched together. An old Northman says he has been washed here twenty times, and this sack befits swineherds; but for shame he would leave the emperor his cloak and his Christ.

Et quia de Northmannis mentio incidit, quanti fidem
and because of the-Northmen mention has-fallen how-much faith
 habeant et baptismum, de rebus avi vestri temporibus
they-hold and baptism from the-things of-grandfather your in-the-times
 gestis paucis evolvam. Ut post mortem bellicosissimi David
done in-few I-will-unfold as after the-death of-the-most-warlike David
 multo tempore finitimae gentes, manu fortissima subiugatae,
for-much time the-neighboring peoples by-hand most-strong subjugated
 eius filio Salomoni pacifico tributa dependerunt, ita
of-him to-the-son Solomon the-peaceful tributes paid so
 propter timorem et tributa, augustissimo imperatori Karolo
on-account-of the-fear and the-tributes to-the-most-august emperor Charles
 persoluta, filium eius Hludowicum gens immanissima
paid the-son of-him Louis the-people most-monstrous
 Northmannorum simili veneratione solebat honorare.
of-the-Northmen with-like veneration was-accustomed to-honor
 Quorum legatos religiosissimus imperator tandem aliquando
whose envoys the-most-religious emperor at-last at-length
 miseratus, interrogatos si christianam religionem suscipere
having-pitied asked if the-Christian religion to-take-up
 vellent, et responso accepto, quia semper et ubique atque in
they-wished and the-answer received that always and everywhere and in
 omnibus essent oboedire parati, iussit eos in eius nomine
all-things they-were to-obey ready he-ordered them in his name

baptizari, de quo doctissimus ait Augustinus: Si non esset
to-be-baptized of whom the-most-learned says Augustine if not there-were
 trinitas, non dixisset veritas: „Ite docete omnes gentes,
a-trinity not would-have-said the-Truth go teach all nations
 baptizantes eos in nomine Patris et Filii et Spiritus
baptizing them in the-name of-the-Father and of-the-Son and of-the-Spirit
 sancti“. Qui, a primoribus palatii quasi in adoptionem
holy who by the-chief-men of-the-palace as-if into adoption
 filiorum suscepti, de camera quidem caesaris candidatum,
of-sons taken-up from the-chamber indeed of-the-caesar a-white-robe
 a patrinis vero suis habitum Francorum in vestibus
from godfathers but their-own the-dress of-the-Franks in garments
 preciosis et armis caeterisque ornatibus acceperunt. Quod cum
precious and arms and-the-other adornments received which when
 diutius actitaretur, et non propter Christum sed propter
longer it-was-done and not on-account-of Christ but on-account-of
 commoda terrena ab anno in annum multo plures iam non
advantages earthly from year to year much more now not
 ut legati sed ut devotissimi vasalli ad obsequium imperatoris
as envoys but as most-devoted vassals to the-service of-the-emperor
 in sabbato sancto paschae festinarent occurrere, contigit, ut
on Saturday holy of-Easter hastened to-come it-happened that
 quodam tempore usque ad quinquaginta venissent. Quos
at-a-certain time all-the-way to fifty had-come whom
 imperator interrogatos, si baptizari votum haberent, et
the-emperor asked if to-be-baptized a-wish they-had and
 confessos iussit aqua sacrata sine mora perfundi.
having-confessed he-ordered with-water consecrated without delay to-be-drenched
 Cumque tot lineae vestes non essent in promptu, iussit
and-when so-many linen garments not were at hand he-ordered
 incidi camisilia et in modum sepium consui vel in
to-be-cut-up shirts and in the-manner of-hedges to-be-sewn or in

modum vitium pastinari. Quarum cum una cuidam seniorum
the-manner of-vines to-be-staked of-which when one to-a-certain of-the-elders
 illorum repentino fuisset imposita, et ille eam curiosioribus
of-them suddenly had-been put-on and he it with-more-curious
 oculis ex tempore contemplatus fuisset, iamque indignatione
eyes from the-moment contemplated had and-now with-indignation
 non modica mente concepta, dixit ad imperatorem: Iam
not moderate in-mind conceived he-said to the-emperor already
 vices hic lotus sum et optimis candidissimisque
twenty-times here washed I-have-been and with-the-best and-whitest
 vestibus indutus; et ecce talis saccus non milites sed subulcos
garments clothed and behold such a-sack not soldiers but swineherds
 addecet. Et nisi nuditatem erubescerem, meis privatus nec
befits and unless at-nakedness I-blushed of-mine deprived nor
 a te datis contextus, amictum tuum cum Christo tuo tibi
by you given covered cloak your with Christ your to-you
 relinquerem. Tanti pendunt hostes Christi, quod ait apostolus
I-would-leave so-much they-value enemies of-Christ what says the-apostle
 Christi: Omnes, qui in Christo baptizati estis, Christum
of-Christ all who into Christ baptized you-are Christ
 induistis, et illud: Quicumque baptizati sumus in Christo
you-have-put-on and that whoever baptized we-are into Christ
 Iesu, in morte ipsius baptizati sumus, et quod maxime contra
Jesus into the-death of-him baptized we-are and what chiefly against
 contemptores fidei violatoresque sacramentorum vigilat:
the-despisers of-the-faith and-violators of-the-sacraments watches
 Rursum crucifigentes sibi filium Dei et ostentatui
again crucifying for-themselves the-son of-God and to-display
 habentes. Quod utinam apud gentiles tantum et non etiam
holding which would-that among the-beathens only and not also
 inter eos, qui Christi nomine censentur, sepius inveniretur!
among those who of-Christ by-the-name are-reckoned more-often should-be-found

Louis the Pious, free from wars, devotes himself to prayer, alms, and justice, and is so skilled in judgment that when Anselm, a jurist trusted by all, tries to deceive him, Louis replies with a kindly face that he would dare say Anselm does not walk a straight path. From that day Anselm is held of no account.

Adhuc referendum est de bonitate Hludowici prioris, et sic
 still to-be-related it-is about the-goodness of-Louis the-former and so
 ad Karolum remeandum. Quietissimus imperator Hludowicus,
 to Charles to-return the-most-peaceful emperor Louis
 a cunctis hostium incursionibus immunis, religiosus tantum
 from all of-the-enemies attacks free at-religious only
 operibus, orationibus scilicet elemosinis causisque audiendis
 works prayers namely alms and-causes to-be-heard
 et iustissime determinandis, insudabat. In quo negotio
 and most-justly to-be-determined labored in which business
 tantum et ingenio et usu exercitatus erat, ut, cum
 so-much both in-intelligence and in-practice trained he-was that when
 ei quidam, in similitudine Achitofel pro angelo habitus a
 him a-certain-one in the-likeness of-Athithophel for an-angel held by
 cunctis, illudere temptavisset, huiusmodi responsum comi
 all to-mock had-tried of-this-kind an-answer with-kindly
 vultu blandissimaque voce sed mente aliquantulum commota
 face and-most-gentle voice but in-mind somewhat moved
 rependeret: O sapientissime Anshelme, si fas sineret, dicere
 he-repaid O most-wise Anselm if right allowed to-say
 auderem, quia tramite non recto incedis. Ex qua die idem
 I-would-dare that by-path not straight you-walk from which day the-same
 iuridicus ab universis est pro nihilo deputatus.
 jurist by all was for nothing reckoned

Louis the Pious entrusts the justice of the poor to a crippled but spirited man among them. On the eve of Easter he gives gifts to everyone in the palace, while the poor sing his praises, and a jester says only Atto has clothed more that day. Louis gives his clothes away every Saturday; robbers attack a glassmaker who has received them, and the text breaks off.

Elemosinis vero ita intentus erat misericordissimus Hludowicus,
 to-almś but so intent was the-most-merciful Louis
 ut eas non solum in conspectu suo sed et per se
 that them not only in sight his-own but also through himself
 ipsum fieri maluisset. Insuper, et ubi ipse absens
 self to-be-done he-preferred moreover also where he-himself absent
 fuisset, ita pauperum causas moderari decrevit, ut uni ex eis,
 had-been so of-the-poor the-cases to-regulate he-decided that to-one of them
 qui ex omni parte debilis sed animosior ceteris videbatur,
 who in every part crippled but more-spirited than-the-others seemed
 ipsorum commissa, furtorum redditiones, iniuriarum vel
 of-them offenses of-thefts the-restitutions of-injuries or
 lesionum taliones, in maioribus etiam commissis membrorum
 of-hurts the-retaliations in greater even offenses of-limbs
 abscisiones aut truncationes capitum nec non et suspensiones
 the-cuttings-off or the-loppings of-heads nor not also the-hangings
 corporum per eum fieri praeciperet. Qui, constitutis
 of-bodies through him to-be-done he-commanded who established
 ducibus tribunis et centurionibus eorumque vicariis, rem
 dukes tribunes and centurions and-their deputies the-task
 sibi delegatam haut segniter implevit. Ipse autem
 to-himself delegated not sluggishly fulfilled he-himself moreover
 clementissimus augustus, in cunctis illis dominum Christum
 the-most-merciful augustus in all those the-Lord Christ

veneratus, eis alimenta, et quibus tegerentur, impendere
having-revered to-them food and with-what they-might-be-clothed to-bestow
 nunquam destitit; et praecipue in illa die, qua Christus,
never ceased and especially on that day on-which Christ
 mortali tunica exutus, incorruptibilem resumere parabat. In
the-mortal tunic stripped-off the-incorruptible to-resume was-preparing on
 qua etiam cunctis in palatio ministrantibus et in curia regia
which also to-all in the-palace ministering and in the-court royal
 servientibus iuxta singulorum personas donativa largitus est;
serving according-to of-each the-persons gifts bestowed he-has
 ita ut nobilioribus quibuscunque aut balteos aut fascilones
so that to-the-nobler whatever either belts or arm-bands
 preciosissimaeque vestimenta, a latissimo imperio perlata,
and-most-precious garments from the-very-broad empire brought
 distribui iuberet; inferioribus vero saga Fresonica omnimodi
to-be-distributed he-ordered to-the-lower but cloaks Frisian of-every-kind
 coloris darentur; porro custodibus equorum pistoribusque
color should-be-given further to-the-keepers of-horses and-to-the-bakers
 et coquis indumenta linea cum laneis semispatiisque, prout
and cooks garments linen with woolen and-half-swords as
 opus habebant, proicerentur. Cumque — iam nullo indigente
need they-had should-be-thrown and-when now none needing
 secundum actus et dicta apostolica — esset in omnibus
according-to the-acts and words apostolic there-was in all
 gratia magna, quando et pauperes pannosi, iocundissime
grace great when also the-poor ragged most-pleasantly
 dealbati, Kirieleyson Hludowico beato per latissimam curtem
made-white Kyrie-eleison to-Louis blessed through the-very-broad court
 et curtículas Aquarumgrani, quas Latini usitatius porticum
and little-courts of-Aachen which the-Latins more-usually of-porticoes
 nomine vocant, usque ad coelos voces efferrent, et qui
by-the-name call all-the-way to the-heavens voices raised and those-who

poterant de militibus, pedes imperatoris amplectentibus, aliis
could of the-soldiers the-feet of-the-emperor embracing others
 vero minus adorantibus, iam caesare ad ecclesiam procedente,
but from-afar adoring now the-caesar to the-church proceeding
 quidam de scurris ioculariter inquit: O te, beate Hludowice,
a-certain-one of the-buffoons jestingly he-says O you blessed Louis
 qui tot homines una die vestire potuisti! Per Christum,
who so-many men in-one day to-clothe have-been-able by Christ
 nullus in Europa plures hodie vestivit quam tu praeter
no-one in Europe more today has-clothed than you except
 Attonem. Cumque imperator ab eo quaereret, quomodo
Atto and-when the-emperor of him asked how
 ille plures vestire potuisset, mimus, quasi gaudens se
he more to-clothe had-been-able the-mime as-if rejoicing himself
 imperatorem in admirationem vertisse, cum chachinno intulit:
the-emperor into wonder to-have-turned with cackling put-in
 Hodie inquit ille nova indumenta largitus est plurima. Quod
today saying he new garments bestowed has very-many which
 imperator blande pro ludo et ineptiis, ut erat vultu dulcissimi
the-emperor gently as joke and foolery as he-was in-face of-most-sweet
 gestus, percipiens, humili devotione ecclesiam intravit, in
bearing taking with-humble devotion the-church entered in
 qua ita timorate se gessit, quasi ipsum dominum Iesum
which so fearfully himself he-conducted as-if the-very Lord Jesus
 Christum prae oculis corporalibus habere videretur.
Christ before eyes bodily to-have he-seemed
 Qui etiam omni tempore, non pro aliqua necessitate sed
who also at-every time not for some necessity but
 pro largiendi occasione, singulis sabbatis balnari et cuncta,
for of-bestowing the-occasion on-each Saturday to-bathe and all-things
 quae deposuerat, praeter gladium et balteum apparitoribus
which he-had-taken-off except the-sword and belt to-attendants

suis dare consueverat. Quae eius liberalitas usque ad
his-own to-give was-accustomed which his generosity all-the-way to
 infimos etiam pervenit; adeo ut Stracholfo vitreario, servo
the-lowest even reached so that to-Stracholf the-glassmaker servant
 Sancti Galli, totam vestituram suam tunc sibi servienti
of-Saint Gall the-whole clothing his-own then to-himself serving
 praeciperet dari. Quod cum erronei militum vassalli
he-commanded to-be-given which when wandering of-soldiers vassals
 cognovissent, ei iuxta viam insidias ponentes, spoliare
learned for-him beside the-road ambushes laying to-rob
 moliti sunt. Quibus cum idem diceret: Quid facitis,
attempted have to-whom when the-same said what are-you-doing
 vitreario caesaris vim inferentes? responderunt: Officium
to-the-glassmaker of-the-caesar violence bringing they-answered the-office
 quidem tuum habere te permittimus * * *
indeed your to-have you we-allow (lacuna)
